



The Book of Mormon

Plain and Precious Truths

About

I grew up in a church where leaders instilled a black-and-white worldview regarding the Latter Day Saint movement. They insisted that their narrative of Joseph Smith, the First Vision, the Book of Mormon, the priesthood, and the Latter Day Saint movement as a whole was either 100% literal history or all of it was a worthless fraud. After I found that my childhood church's truth claims couldn't stand up to scrutiny, I did what I was taught to do: view all of the Latter Day Saint movement, including the Book of Mormon, as an utterly useless fraud.

I spent the next several years distancing myself from The Book of Mormon. I came to believe that it was a book that was written in 1829 and fraudulently claimed to be a direct translation of a non-existent language from a non-existent civilization. I still believe these things, but my perspective on what the text is and what it means to me has continued to evolve.

J.R.R. Tolkien presented "The Lord of the Rings" and "The Hobbit" as a translation of a book called "[Red Book of Westmarch](#)" which was written by characters within the novels. Edgar Rice Burroughs presented the Tarzan novels in a very similar way. This is a fairly common literary device called "[Pseudepigrapha](#)", which is when the texts whose claimed author is not the true author. Oftentimes, the literary work's story takes place in antiquity, but touches on contemporary issues. Despite this literary device being used, many people are able to find value in these literary works. In my opinion the Book of Mormon should appropriately be viewed as having been written by Joseph Smith, making it a pseudepigrapha, in the late 1820's for the late 1820's.

Many people question what Smith's motivations were to write the book. I believe that [Historian Dan Vogel put it best](#) when he described The Book of Mormon as a "pious fraud". Joseph Smith's era was rife with theological contentions among the different sects. He believed that he could put an end to the contention and unite the Christian world by bringing forth a new book of scripture. The Book of Mormon touched on many, many issues that were *highly* relevant to the 1820's/1830's. Alexander Campbell, who was an influential contemporary of Joseph Smith and former spiritual leader of Sidney Rigdon, [said this about The Book of Mormon in 1831](#):

"This prophet Smith, through his stone spectacles, wrote on the plates of Nephi, in his book of Mormon, every error and almost every truth discussed in New York for the last 10 years. He decides all the great controversies - infant baptism, ordination, the trinity, regeneration, repentance, justification, the fall of man, the atonement, transubstantiation, fasting, penance, church government, religious experience, the call to the ministry, the general resurrection, eternal punishment, who may baptize, and even the question of freemasonry, republican government, and the rights of man ... he is better skilled in the controversies in New York than in the geography or history of Judea."

There are 4 chief ways to interpret scripture of any kind: literal/historical, tropological (figurative that stresses morality), allegorical (delivers broader messages about real-world issues), and anagogical (higher spiritual meaning; alludes to the Divine/afterlife). Once people discover that

The Book of Mormon is a pseudepigrapha and its stories are not literally true, many tend to have very little interest in the other possible interpretations. People have told me that this book represents all the negative teachings and practices of the church that I grew up in and any moral value in the book can be found elsewhere and without the baggage.

I absolutely see why some people would want to distance themselves from that church and thus The Book of Mormon. However, to me, this book transcends that church. The Book of Mormon is something that represents my heritage's and my ancestors' spiritual journey. My parents, grandparents, great-grandparents, great-great-grandparents, et cetera, all looked into this book to find themselves and to find the Divine. I feel a connection to them when I attempt to also find myself and the Divine through this text. These are real and valuable spiritual experiences to me, and I am having them in a way that feels familiar and comfortable to me.

Instead of abandoning the Book of Mormon altogether, I am choosing to breathe new life into it and interpret it in new ways. I see no reason why I can't accept The Book of Mormon as a pseudepigraphical literary work from the 1820's. Doing so allows me to explore scripture to find the Divine through an allegorical, tropological, and/or anagogical lens, without needing it to double as a history book; it allows me to connect to my ancestors who also treasured it; It allows me to explore what I believe is useful, truthful, and moral today in a familiar and comfortable way. It is refreshing to be able to have a relationship with my heritage, ancestors, and traditions on my own terms.

Frequently Asked Questions

I have, for years, been working with The Book of Mormon in one form or another. In this version, my goal is to create an idiomatic “translation” of The Book of Mormon. That is to say, bring the original source language into contemporary language expression. I am doing this to make the lessons and stories within the Book of Mormon more easily accessible to folks who otherwise wouldn’t read it.

Do keep in mind that this project is chiefly my own personal interaction with this text. It is how I have interpreted the stories. My interpretation is not a right or a wrong one, because like all art, interpretation is subjective.

There are a couple of unique things that I have chosen to do with my version of this text, and have answered them in a Q&A format:

1. What chapter and verse system is used?

The original chapters of the Book of Mormon have been retained. Many churches in the Latter Day Saint movement, such as the LDS church, decided to shorten the chapters in [1879](#). However, most others from the 1844 Sucessionist Crisis kept the chapters in their original form, including Community of Christ.

The versing systems between those who moved west and those who stayed east developed independent of each other, which also accounts for those differences.

[Here](#) is a cross reference guide to help look up verses across the different chapter systems.

2. Do you have chapter overviews?

Instead of chapter overviews, I have chosen to use subheadings and sub-subheadings. I feel they are much more thorough than chapter headings and help indicate when and where key parts of the story is happen. I have used several other versions of the BoM as reference for my version, including the [LDS's 1879 version's subheadings](#), “the Book of Mormon Central Edition” which can be found on the [ScripturePlus app](#), and the “[Structured Edition](#)” by Nathan Richardson.

3. Why and how is the text broken up into paragraphs?

The Book of Mormon, in its first English form, was a spoken dictation. The Book of Mormon was likely written down in 5-15 word chunks so the scribes could keep up as they transcribed it. However, as it was transcribed, neither the Original Manuscript or the Printer’s Manuscript had any indication of paragraph breaks or even punctuation. When John Gilbert, the original printer

of The Book of Mormon, set the type for the printing of The Book of Mormon he created the original paragraphs and punctuations.

Recently professor Royal Skousen, professor of linguistics and English at Brigham Young University, released his decades-long work, which is entitled "[The Book of Mormon: The Earliest Text](#)". His goal was to create a version of the Book of Mormon which most closely resembles what Joseph Smith dictated to his scribes. Part of this included breaking up the text in into more natural paragraphs.

The paragraphing system presented in this work doesn't exactly follow Professor Skousen's paragraphs, but is greatly influenced by his work.

The paragraphs help break up the story a little more and help it flow more naturally.

4. Why isn't God referred to as He/Him?

Gender is a human-centric concept and I highly doubt that the Divine is either a man or a woman. To help facilitate this view of Divinity, I have changed all references to the Divine to be gender neutral unless it is specifically the incarnate Jesus Christ being referenced. [Community of Christ's Policy of Inclusive Language](#) gave many different gender-neutral names for the Divine, and many of them have been incorporated into this version of the Book of Mormon.

5. Why isn't hell referred to as a permanent destination?

In 1829 the price of \$3,000 (equivalent of \$85,000 in 2021) had already been agreed upon with the printer, E. B. Grandin, to publish The Book of Mormon. The only hold up was the funding, which was to be provided by Martin Harris.

Harris was a Universalist and was troubled by some of the anti-universalistic rhetoric in the BoM and was considering withholding his funding from the project. This was also an especially large decision, since the price tag would require him to essentially mortgage all of the property that he owned in order to fund the publication.

A revelation (CoC D&C 18, LDS D&C 19) was given which addresses Harris's universalistic concerns. It states that "Eternal punishment" actually means "God's punishment", since "eternal" is just another name for God. It also explains that this phrasing is used to scare people straight.

In light of this, I have decided to omit all references of Hell being a permanent destination and try to lean into the eschatological belief that Hell is a place where you come to understand the consequences of your negative actions and make up for them, and then when you're ready you move on to Heaven.

6. Why are the Amalekites now called Amlicites?

In the Book of Mosiah the "Amlicites" are a people who were followers of Nehor and broke off from the Nephites and later allied with the Lamanites. In the Book of Alma a people called the "Amalekites" are introduced, and they are also followers of Nehor who broke off from the Nephites and later allied with the Lamanites.

These traditionally have been thought of as two different people in the BoM. However, professor Royal Skousen has poured over the textual variations of the Original and Printer's Manuscripts of the Book of Mormon and theorizes that these are actually meant to be the same group of people, but Oliver Cowdery was inconsistent with the spelling.

I also find it unlikely that they would be two different people, considering the similarities both in background and spelling. I have decided to standardize it to "Amlicite" since their leader after Nehor was named "Amlici".

7. Why is some of the text different colors?

The text has been changed to a different color anytime someone speaks.

If the narrator is speaking the text is black. [If humanity is directly speaking or quoting humanity the text is blue.](#) [If humanity is quoting or paraphrasing the Divine the text is purple.](#) [If the Divine is directly speaking the text is red.](#)

This, even at a glance, helps show where someone is speaking and how long they speak for.

8. Why do some characters have names when they didn't originally?

The original Book of Mormon only lists 8 women and most of them are unnamed. I think this is a shame and that women should get more representation within scripture. I decided to start a tradition of giving some nameless women in the Book of Mormon a name, [which is common with unnamed characters in the Bible.](#)

I thought it would be cool to name these women after some women I greatly admire within the Restoration. These previously unnamed women are referred to in this version as:

- Emma, wife of Ishmael; named after Emma Smith
- Jane, daughter of Ishmael, wife of Zoram; named after [Jane M. Gardner](#), first woman Community of Christ Evangelist
- Carol, daughter of Ishmael, wife of Nephi; named after [Carol Lynn Pearson](#), poet, author, screenwriter, playwright, feminist, and LGBTQI+ ally.

- Gail, daughter of Ishmael, wife of Sam; named after [Gail E. Mengel](#), first woman Community of Christ apostle
- Pamela, daughter of Ishmael, wife of Laman; named after Pamela Calkins, member of [RCJC](#), only known married Mormon LGBT non-monogamist
- Lindsay, daughter of Ishmael, wife of Lemuel; named after [Lindsay Hansen Park](#), feminist blogger, [podcaster](#), and the Executive Director of [the Sunstone Education Foundation](#)
- Fawn, priest who questions Abinadi in Mosiah 7:76-80; named after [Fawn McKay Brodie](#) who was an influential historian
- Queen Majorie, wife of King Lamoni; named after [Majorie Troeh](#), CoC feminst who pushed for women's ordination within Community of Christ
- Queen Mangel, wife of King King Francis (see below) as well as mother of King Lamoni; Named after [Brittany Mangelson](#), CoC feminist, queer ally, Latter Day Seeker minister, and a personal friend of the author.

Additionally anytime a family is called by the patriarch's name (Adam, Ishmael's household, tent of my father), the matriarch has been rightly added along side him (Adam and Eve, Emma and Ishmael's household, tent of my mother and father)

There are some male characters that are unnamed as well, and I have likewise decided to name them:

- Francis, King of the Lamanites in the Book of Alma; named after Community of Christ Apostle Francis Henry Edwards, who was noteworthy for his pacifist ideology.
- Mahonri Moriancumer, the brother of Jared in the Book of Ether; [said to be the name of the brother of Jared by Joseph Smith in 1834.](#)

9. Do you have a commentary?

I have tried to keep my own commentary to a minimum in the actual text. However, I will be keeping an accompanying blog which speaks about parts of the text that fascinate me or I think are important interpretations. More on this soon!

10. What is the "Mythological Introduction"?

While I believe that the Book of Mormon was written by Joseph Smith Jr., the myth which was created about its origin is itself a fascinating story. It speaks to the environment in which The Book of Mormon was written.

However, over the centuries the narrative has undergone many revisions to appeal more modern cultural sensibilities, and many of the more mystical and magical parts of the myth have largely been removed and/or forgotten.

I highly recommend reading Mark Elwood's graphic novel entitled "The Glass Looker" as an introduction to this magical worldview. The Mythological Introduction introduces Elwood's work.

11. What works did you reference while creating this?

This work stands on the shoulders of many giants, and I feel a need to thank them for their work.

- [Scriptures.Guide](#), a website that has 15+ versions of The Book of Mormon. It was invaluable being able to quickly flip through different interpretations of the text. Many of the other references are included on this website.
- "[The Book of Mormon: The Earliest Text](#)" by Prof. Royal Skousen
- "[Book of Mormon - Revised Authorized Version](#)" by Community of Christ
- "[The Book of Mormon: for the Least of These, Volume 1](#)" by Fatimah Salleh and Margaret Olsen Hemming
- "[The Book of Mormon: brief theological introductions](#)" by various authors
- "[Structured Edition](#)" by Nathan Richardson
- "[The Book of Mormon: Another Testament of Jesus Christ \(2013 Edition\)](#)" by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints
- [The Book of Mormon Central Edition](#)
- "[A Plain English Reference to the Book of Mormon](#)" by Timothy B. Wilson
- "[The Street-Legal Version of Mormon's Book](#)" by Michael Hicks
- "[Book of Mormon \(1879 Edition\)](#)" by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints
- "[28 page summary](#)" by an unknown author
- "[The Book of Mormon: A Reader's Edition](#)" by Grant Hardy
- "[The Short Book of Mormon](#)" by Verda Bryant
- "[Mormon Studies](#)" by MormonThink
- [BibleHub.com](#) for the sections that are from the Bible

12. How is content released?

Each book within The Boom of Mormon will be released in its entirety. However, due to the length of The Book of Alma I may release that in several sections.

13. Can I buy a physical copy?

As of right now I do not have physical copies. However, I am starting the process of reaching out to publishers. In the mean time I hope you enjoy this free digital version!

As a side note, a condition I have as author of this work for any future publishers is that a digital version always remain free. There should not be a dollar sign in front of God's word.

14. Can I link to a specific verse?

Unfortunately you are not able to link to a specific verse at this time.

15. What is this font that you are using?

It is "Apollo ASM" by Peter Wiegel. You can find out more about it [here](#).

Have Questions or Comments? Email Me

This work is largely being done by one passionate person who is by no means an expert on anything. If you think the text could be improved somehow please email me at Gileriodekel@Gmail.com.

Mythological Introduction

Much of the myth surrounding the origin of The Book of Mormon has changed since it was first written in the late 1820s. Each generation has tweaked the myth to fit their own worldview. There is nothing wrong with this; in fact I think you'll find that it happens in every religion in the world. However, with each generation it means that the myth is further and further disconnected from its original form. In addition to finding modern applications for this book of scripture, I also believe there is value in trying to understand the day and age which produced it.

The day and age that produced this book was quite different than the world that we are familiar with today; it had magic everywhere you looked! There was ancient buried treasure everywhere, and many of them were protected by guardian spirits. This treasure could be located with tools such as divining rods and seer stones and the spirits could be trapped or expelled through elaborate rituals. Joseph Smith Jr. was fond of these tools and rituals in his youth.

This can be difficult for many of us to visualize since we have never heard of these tools and rituals, let alone used or engaged in them. Luckily, graphic novelist Mark Elwood has created a wonderful resource called "The Glass Looker" which lovingly portrays this part of our history. This graphic novel has been critically acclaimed by many noteworthy people throughout the restoration.

"I've known Mark Elwood for many years as he's been researching and creating an amazing new series of graphic novels about Joseph Smith Jr's early life as a treasure seer, entitled "The Glass Looker." I've just read the first volume and it actually exceeded my expectations which were already extremely lofty, given my knowledge of Mark's artistic talent and the thoroughness of his research. I think this is an amazing resource for understanding the enchanted/magical worldview of the young Joseph Smith - I also think this should become a resource for young members of Community of Christ (and members of any age) who are interested in grappling with the complexities of Restoration origins.

"★★★★★" Highly recommended!"

- John Hamer, Community of Christ Seventy, historian, and pastor of the Toronto, Canada congregation

"Just put in my order. Can't wait! Adding to <https://cesletter.org/resources> 🙌 ..."

- Jeremy Runnells, author of the CES Letter

“Mark Elwood is a gifted artist and storyteller. I have one of his prints hanging in my office.

If you want a literary take on Joseph Smith that is well researched and beautiful to look at, check out this killer graphic novel.”

- Lindsay Hansen Park, executive director of the Sunstone Symposium

“Purchased 5.

Creatively rendered and meticulously researched. Well done, Mark!”

- Brent Metcalfe, historian.

I would also like to extend my recommendation for this work if you are interested in understanding the original myth of the origin of The Book of Mormon. You can learn more about "The Glass Looker" [here](#).

The First Book of Nephi

Chapter 1

Nephi's Preface

¹ I, Nephi, was born into a family with good parents, and was more-or-less taught by them to also be a good person. I have seen many hardships in my life, but this hasn't been an indication of a lack of love from the Divine. On the contrary, because I know a great deal about the mysteries of God, I believe that the Spirit has been quite fond of me. This is why I wanted to make a record of my life. I make this record in the language of my father, which consists of the education of the Jewish people in the language of the Egyptians. ² I know that the record which I make is true, because I am writing it myself and it's about my life. If there are mistakes, they are my own.

Lehi and Sariah's Family in Jerusalem

Lehi's Visions

³ My family has always lived together in Jerusalem, and at the beginning of the first year of the reign of King Zedekiah of Judah there were many prophets that were prophesying that the inhabitants of Jerusalem needed to turn away from their wicked ways and seek reconciliation or their city would be destroyed. ⁴ This is why my father, Lehi, prayed to the Divine with all his heart for his people. ⁵ As he prayed, a pillar of fire shot down to a rock near him. My father saw and heard many other things which caused him to shake with fear.

⁶ He returned to his house in Jerusalem. He was overwhelmed with the Spirit and the things which he had seen, so he threw himself upon his bed. ⁷ While he laid in bed he drifted off and had a vision where he saw the heavens open and he thought he saw God sitting upon a throne surrounded with numberless concourses of angels who were singing and praising their God.

⁸ He saw a man come out of heaven who softly glowed brighter than the noon-day sun. ⁹ My father also saw twelve others following him, but they weren't as bright as the first man; they were a little brighter than stars. They all came down from heaven and went to earth. ¹⁰ The first man came and gave my father a book and asked him to read it. ¹¹ As my father read, he was filled with the Spirit, but he was also filled with dread. ¹² He read about many things that would happen to Jerusalem because of its wickedness. The city would be destroyed, many of its inhabitants would be killed, and many others would become Babylonian captives.

¹³ When my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he exclaimed many things to the Divine, such as [“Great and marvelous is your work! You are high in the heavens and your power, goodness, and mercy touch everyone on earth. Since you are merciful you will not allow those who strive to have a relationship with you to die!”](#) ¹⁴ My father shouted these things because his heart and soul were filled with joy from the things the Divine showed him!

¹⁵ I won't write everything that was in my father's visions and dreams, because he wrote a lot about them. ¹⁶ He also wrote quite a bit about the things that he prophesied to children, but I won't rewrite them all here. I want to mostly focus on my own life experiences. ¹⁷ I will summarize my father's life, and then continue on with my own account.

The People of Jerusalem Reject Lehi

¹⁸ After my father's vision of the destruction of Jerusalem, due to its wickedness, he went to the city and told people about his vision. He also spoke plainly of the glowing man, and how he would be the Messiah who would free the world. ¹⁹ The Jewish people became angry with him and mocked him because he called out their wickedness and ²⁰ spoke about his vision of the coming Messiah and Emancipator of the world. ²¹ They were so angry with him that they wanted to exile, stone, and kill him like the prophets of old. ²² They wanted to kill my father! ²³ However, I will show you how God protects those that willingly enter a faith journey with the Divine. They are shown tender mercies and are empowered to survive the harshness and unfairness of this life.

Lehi and Sariah's Family Flee From Jerusalem

²⁴ The Divine spoke to my father in a dream, and said to him, "You are blessed, Lehi, because of the things you have done. ²⁵ You did what I told you to do by telling the people of Jerusalem about their impending destruction, and because of that they wanted to kill you." ²⁶ The Creator told my father in this dream to take his family and flee into the wilderness; we would become refugees.

²⁷ My father did as the Divine told him; ²⁸ he departed into the wilderness. ²⁹ He left behind his house, homeland, gold, silver, and many other precious things. He took nothing with him when he fled except the necessities: his family, supplies, and tents.

³⁰ He took us down into the wilderness near the Red Sea. ³¹ It is here that we traveled. ³² My father took his family which included my mother Sariah and my elder brothers Laman, Lemuel, and Sam, and myself, and fled into the wilderness for safety.

³³ When he had traveled for three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by a river. ³⁴ He made an altar out of stones and sacrificed some of our food as a way to show our thanks to God.

³⁵ My father named the river, which emptied into the Red Sea, after my brother Laman. The valley was on the beach near the mouth of the river. ³⁶ When my father saw that the river emptied into the Red Sea, he said to Laman, "My son, you can live your life just like this river: flowing into righteousness." ³⁷ He also said to Lemuel: "My son, you can live your life just like this valley: firm, steadfast, and immovable when it comes to doing God's will."

³⁸ My father said these things to Laman and Lemuel because they complained about our father, who they believed was crazy for having visions, and they struggled to leave their homeland,

gold, silver, and many other precious things to seemingly die in the wilderness. ³⁹ They said our father was crazy because of his visions. ⁴⁰ This is how my older brothers complained about our father. ⁴¹ They didn't realize that this was part of God's plan. ⁴² They also said that they didn't believe the prophets, including our own father, when they said that Jerusalem could be destroyed. ⁴³ They were like the Jewish people in Jerusalem who wanted to kill my father.

⁴⁴ My father was filled with the Spirit and chastised them with such Divine authority that they ended up shaking with fear. ⁴⁵ They dared not speak out against him again, and they did what he told them to do.

⁴⁶ My mother and father lived in a tent.

Divine Makes A Promise With Nephi

⁴⁷ I was very young, but still very big. I was like my brothers and struggled and doubted why our father had us leave our homeland. ⁴⁸ I prayed to the Divine for the answers to my questions and doubts. The Divine came and visited me and helped me understand everything my father had told us. This is why I did not rebel against him like my brothers. ⁴⁹ I spoke to my brothers and told them everything that was shown me by the Holy Spirit. Sam believed me, ⁵¹ but Laman and Lemuel wouldn't even listen. Having them not even listen to me was difficult, so I prayed to God again for them.

⁵³ The Divine spoke to me, saying, "You are blessed, Nephi, because of your faith. You have diligently sought answers from me with a humble heart. ⁵⁴ As long as you take my advice, you will prosper and be led to a land of promise. I prepared this land for you, and it is better than any on Earth. ⁵⁵ As long as your brothers rebel against you, they rebel against me. ⁵⁶ As long as you take my advice, you will be a leader and teacher to your brothers. ⁵⁷ When they rebel against me their relationship with me will suffer. This weak relationship would make it so they and their descendants will have no power over your descendants, unless you and your descendants also rebel against me. ⁵⁸ If your brothers and their descendants do end up rebelling against me, your brothers and their descendants will be a scourge to you and your descendants, which will cause you to remember righteousness."

The Brass Plates

Call to Return For The Brass Plates

⁵⁹ I returned to my mother and father's tent after speaking with the Divine. ⁶⁰ My father said to me: "I had a vision where the Divine told me to tell you and your brothers to return to Jerusalem. ⁶¹ Laban has the history and genealogy of our ancestors engraved upon plates of brass. ⁶² The Divine wants you to go to Laban's house, find the records, and bring them back here in the wilderness.

⁶³ Your brothers complain by saying that I have required them to perform a difficult task, but I have not required it of them; God has. ⁶⁴ Go and do this without complaining, my son, and you will be blessed.”

⁶⁵ I said to my father, “I will go and do the things which the Divine has asked, because I know that the Divine doesn’t tell us to do something unless a way has been prepared for us to accomplish it.” ⁶⁶ When my father heard me say this he was happy, because he knew I was blessed.

1st Attempt to Retrieve the Brass Plates: Asking

⁶⁷ I and my brothers started our journey into the wilderness with our tents to go back to the land of Jerusalem. ⁶⁸ When we arrived we consulted with each other and decided to flip a coin to determine who would go to Laban’s house and ask for the plates of brass. ⁶⁹ Laman lost the coin flip, and so he went to Laban’s house and sat and talked with him. ⁷⁰ He asked Laban for the history and genealogy of our ancestors which were engraved upon the plates of brass. ⁷¹ Laban became angry and threw him out from his house without the records. ⁷² Laban said to him, “You are a robber and I will kill you!” ⁷³ Laman ran away and told us the things which Laban had done. ⁷⁴ We started to get discouraged and my brothers were about to return to my father in the wilderness without the records.

⁷⁵ I persuaded my brothers to stay and obtain the records by saying to them, “As long as we and the Divine live, we will not return to our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished our goal of getting the plates of brass. ⁷⁶ Let’s keep trying to get them. ⁷⁷ Let’s return to our father’s house where he left his gold, silver, and all of his other riches. ⁷⁸ He didn’t bring them with him because the Divine told him to leave them there. ⁷⁹ Our father knew that the city would be destroyed because of the wickedness of its inhabitants, especially after many prophets told them to change their ways. ⁸⁰ If our father had stayed in Jerusalem after he had been told to flee, he would have also died. ⁸¹ That is why he fled out of the land. ⁸² With these things in mind, we should realize that God has a reason for us to obtain these records. God knows that we will be able to use the records of our ancestors to teach our descendants how to read. ⁸³ With these particular records we would also be able to teach our descendants all of the lessons of the prophets. These lessons began at the beginning of time and continue today, and were taught to the prophets by the spirit and power of God.” ⁸⁴ This persuaded my brothers to try again.

2nd Attempt to Retrieve the Brass Plates: Buying

⁸⁵ We went down to our home and gathered together our gold, silver, and precious things ⁸⁶ and then went back to Laban’s house. ⁸⁷ We asked Laban to give us the records, which were engraved upon the plates of brass, in exchange for our gold, silver, and all our precious things. ⁸⁸ When Laban saw our property, and the great value that it had, he lusted after it. He threw us out of his house and sent his slaves to kill us so that he could keep our property. ⁸⁹ We fled from Laban’s slaves, but we were forced to leave our property behind. Laban’s slaves brought all of our riches back to him.

⁹⁰ Laban's slaves weren't able to capture us because we fled into the wilderness and hid in the cavity of a rock. ⁹¹ Laman and Lemuel were filled with rage and directed it at me, Sam, and my father. ⁹² They said many harsh things to us as they beat us with a stick. ⁹³ As they beat us, an angel came and stood in front of them, and spoke to them saying, "Why do you beat your younger brothers with a stick? ⁹⁴ Don't you realize that Nephi has been leading you, because you haven't been able to let go of the wickedness in Jerusalem? ⁹⁵ Here's what you are going to do: go back to Jerusalem again. The Divine will deliver Laban into your hands." ⁹⁶ Just as quickly as the angel arrived, it was gone.

⁹⁷ After the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to complain, saying, "How is it possible that the Divine will deliver Laban into our hands? ⁹⁸ He is a strong man who commands fifty soldiers and could kill fifty people on a whim. Why would he not kill us?" ⁹⁹ I spoke to my brothers, saying, "Let's go back to Jerusalem again and get the plates of brass. God is stronger than the whole earth, why would the Divine not be mightier than Laban and his fifty soldiers? Wouldn't God still be stronger than Laban even if he had tens of thousands of soldiers?"

¹⁰⁰ Let's go back to Jerusalem. Let's be strong like Moses! He spoke to the Red Sea and it was divided in two and our ancestors escaped from slavery in Egypt on dry ground. However, the armies of Pharaoh followed and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea. ¹⁰¹ You know this and an angel has spoken to you. How can you still doubt that we can get the plates of brass? ¹⁰² The Divine is able to help us destroy Laban as the Divine destroyed the Egyptians for our ancestors."

3rd Attempt to Retrieve the Brass Plates: Taking and the Murder of Laban

¹⁰³ After I said this to them they were still angry with me and continued to complain. Regardless they followed me until we came to the outside of the walls of Jerusalem. ¹⁰⁴ It was night; and I had my brothers hide on the outside of the city walls.

¹⁰⁵ After they had hid themselves, I crept into the city, and went towards Laban's house. ¹⁰⁶ I didn't know what I was going to do, but trusted that the Spirit would lead me. ¹⁰⁷ As I got close to Laban's house I saw a man drunk and passed out on the ground.

¹⁰⁸ When I came close to him I found that it was Laban. ¹⁰⁹ I saw his sword, and I drew it from its sheath. The hilt was made of pure gold and the workmanship was exceedingly fine. I saw that the blade was made of the most precious steel.

¹¹⁰ Suddenly the Spirit told me to kill Laban. ¹¹¹ I said in my heart, "I have never killed anyone." I started to walk away because I did not want to kill him. ¹¹² The Spirit said to me again, "The Divine put him here for you to kill." I knew that Laban had tried to kill me. I knew that Laban wouldn't listen to what God was telling him. I knew that Laban had stolen our property. ¹¹³ The Spirit again said to me, "Kill him. The Divine put him here for you to kill him. ¹¹⁴ The Divine kills the wicked in order to do righteous things. ¹¹⁵ It is better for one man to die than for a nation to shrink and die in unbelief."

¹¹⁶ When I had heard these words, I remembered what the Divine had told me in the wilderness: “As long as you listen to what I tell you, you will prosper and be led to a land of promise.” ¹¹⁷ I also thought about how my descendants could not take God’s advice unless they had the records where that advice was made known to Moses. ¹¹⁸ Those records were on the plates of brass. ¹¹⁹ I knew that the Divine had put Laban into my hands so I could obtain the records as I had been told to do.

¹²⁰ That is why I obeyed the voice of the Spirit. I grabbed Laban by his hair and cut his head off with his own sword. ¹²¹ Afterwards, I took every piece of Laban’s clothing and armor and put them on my own body.

¹²² After I had done this, I went to Laban’s treasury. ¹²³ As I went toward the treasury I saw Laban’s slave who had the keys to the treasury. ¹²⁴ I impersonated Laban and ordered him to go with me into the treasury. He believed I was Laban because he saw me in Laban’s clothes and his sword was at my waist. ¹²⁵ He spoke to me about the elders of the Jewish people, because he knew that Laban had been out with them that night. ¹²⁶ I spoke to him as if I were Laban. ¹²⁷ I told him that I was going to carry the plates of brass to my elder brothers who were outside the city walls ¹²⁸ and told him to follow me. ¹²⁹ Since he believed I was Laban, whom I had killed, he assumed that I was talking about the brothers in the church, so he followed me. ¹³⁰ He spoke many times about the elders of the Jewish people as we went towards my brothers outside the walls.

¹³¹ When Laman, Lemuel, and Sam saw me, they were exceedingly frightened. ¹³² They ran away from me because they thought that I was Laban. They thought Laban had killed me and was coming to kill them as well.

¹³³ I called to them and they heard that it was me, Nephi, so they stopped running. ¹³⁴ When Laban’s slave saw my brothers instead of the elders of the Jewish people, he began to shake with fear and was about to run back to Jerusalem. ¹³⁵ Now I, being a big guy, grabbed Laban’s slave and prevented him from fleeing.

¹³⁶ I told him that he had no reason to fear, and as long as he listened to me we wouldn’t kill him. ¹³⁷ We promised that we would free him from slavery and he would have a place among us if he came with us. ¹³⁸ I said to him “The Divine told us to obtain these plates and we were willing to do anything to get them. ¹³⁹ If you come with us you will have a place with us.”¹⁴⁰ He was relieved that we weren’t going to immediately kill him. ¹⁴¹ We learned that his name was Zoram. ¹⁴² He promised that he would travel with us from that point on. ¹⁴³ We wanted him to do so because we did not want him to tell the Jewish people that I had killed Laban and fled into the wilderness with the brass plates, because they would likely hunt us down and kill us. ¹⁴⁴ We were relieved when Zoram made this promise. ¹⁴⁵ We embarked back into the wilderness with Zoram and the plates of brass and journeyed back to our parents.

Return to Lehi and Sariah In The Wilderness

¹⁴⁶ When we returned to our mother and father's tent they were filled with joy. Our mother was especially glad, because she believed we had died in the wilderness and was mourning our loss. ¹⁴⁷ She complained about our father while we were gone, and called him a crazy and visionary man, saying, "You have taken us from our home and now my sons are dead! Now we will die in the wilderness!" ¹⁴⁸ That is the sort of thing she was saying to my father.

¹⁴⁹ My father responded to her by saying, "I know that I am an eccentric and visionary man. However, if God had not shown me the impending destruction of Jerusalem in a vision, we would have died there with everyone else. ¹⁵⁰ Instead, God has promised us a good land, which should make us happy! ¹⁵¹ I know that the Divine will protect our sons and guide them back to us in the wilderness." ¹⁵² This is how my father showed my mother understanding and compassion as he comforted her while my brothers and I were in the wilderness.

¹⁵³ When we returned to my mother and father's tent they were full of joy, and my mother was relieved. ¹⁵⁴ She spoke, saying, "Now I am convinced that God told my husband to flee into the wilderness. ¹⁵⁵ I am also convinced that God protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban. My sons were given the ability to accomplish the thing they were asked to do." ¹⁵⁶ This is how my mother gained her faith in God.

¹⁵⁷ Our parents were very happy and sacrificed some of our food as a way to show our thanks to God.

Lehi Studies the Brass Plates

¹⁵⁸ After they had given thanks to God, my father Lehi took the records which were engraved upon the plates of brass and read them from cover-to-cover. ¹⁵⁹ He found that they contained the five books of Moses (Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy) which told the story about the creation of the world, ¹⁶⁰ Adam and Eve who were our first ancestors, ¹⁶¹ the history of the Jewish people from the beginning till the reign of King Zedekiah of Judah, ¹⁶² prophecies from many prophets (including Jeremiah), ¹⁶⁴ and the genealogy of his ancestors. ¹⁶⁵ He found that he was a descendant of Joseph who was the son of Jacob and Rachel. This is the same Joseph who was sold as a slave into Egypt, was protected by the Divine, and in turn protected his family from dying because of the famine. ¹⁶⁶ This same family was led out of slavery in Egypt by that same God who had protected them from the famine. ¹⁶⁷ My father learned about his family's history. ¹⁶⁸ My father also discovered that Laban was also a descendant of Joseph, which is why he and his ancestors had kept the records.

¹⁶⁹ When my father had read and learned all these things he was filled with the Spirit and began to prophesy many things about his descendants. The writings on the plates of brass would be known to all of his descendants, regardless of what language they spoke. ¹⁷⁰ He said that is why the plates must be protected and never destroyed. They should be read and never forgotten. ¹⁷¹ My father made many prophecies regarding his future descendants. ¹⁷² So far my father, mother, and I had obeyed God. ¹⁷³ We had obtained the records, read them, and learned just how valuable they are to us; we now had the ability to teach our children the ways of God. ¹⁷⁴ The

Divine was very wise to have us take the brass plates on the journey in the wilderness toward the land of promise.

Chapter 2

Nephi Explains His Intent For Writing

¹ Now I will not repeat my genealogy, because my father put it in his record. ² Suffice it to say that we are descendants of Joseph. ³ I want to leave room to write about the things of God, which is why I'm not giving a full account of my father's life when he has already written his record. ⁴ My intent is to help people become more familiar with the Divine and be freed. ⁵ I don't write entertaining stories for the world, I write things that bring you closer to the Divine. ⁶ To my future descendants, I give a commandment: do not waste space on these plates with worthless writings.

Emma and Ishmael's Family Joins Lehi and Sariah's Family in the Wilderness

⁷ After my father, Lehi, finished prophesying about his descendants, the Divine spoke to him again and said that it was not right for him to take his family into the wilderness alone. His sons should find wives so they could raise families in the land of promise. ⁸ The Divine told him that my brothers and I should return again to the land of Jerusalem, and bring Emma, Ishmael, and their family down into the wilderness with us.

⁹ I, along with my brothers, journeyed once more into the wilderness to go back to Jerusalem. ¹⁰ We went to Emma and Ishmael's house and they liked us so much that we told them everything that the Divine had told us. ¹¹ The Spirit helped them understand and believe what we had told them. They decided to travel with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our mother and father.

¹² As we journeyed in the wilderness, Laman, Lemuel, two of the daughters of Emma and Ishmael (Pamela and Lindsay), and the two sons of Emma and Ishmael and their families rebelled against myself, Nephi, Sam, their father Ishmael and mother Emma, and Ishmael and Emma's three other daughters (Jane, Carol, and Gail). ¹³ These rebels wanted to return to the land of Jerusalem.

¹⁴ It was difficult for me, Nephi, to see them rebel like this. I spoke to my brothers, Laman and Lemuel, saying, "You are my older brothers! How is it that you are so stubborn that you can't see what is happening? Why is it that I, your younger brother, need to set you straight and be an example for you? ¹⁵ How is it that you have not listened to anything the Divine has said? ¹⁶ How is it that you have forgotten that you have seen an angel? ¹⁷ How is it that you have forgotten how amazing it is that we were able to safely obtain the record from Laban? ¹⁸ How is it that you have forgotten that the Divine is able to do anything for humanity as long as humanity works with the Divine? Let's take the Divine's advice! ¹⁹ If we trust the Divine we will obtain our land of promise. Someday you will know that Jerusalem has been destroyed. ²⁰ Everything the Divine

has said about the destruction of Jerusalem will happen ²¹ The Spirit will soon cease to strive in Jerusalem ²² because they reject the prophets and have thrown Jeremiah into prison. ²³ They wanted to kill my father, and he had to flee from his home for safety.²⁴ I am telling you now: if you return to Jerusalem you will also die with them. ²⁵ The Divine urges me to tell you ‘if you have any choice at all, choose to remember what I said to you and go to the land of promise. If you go back to Jerusalem, you will also die.’”

²⁶ When I said these things to my brothers they were angry with me. ²⁷ They grabbed me, tied me up with rope, and intended to leave me in the wilderness to be eaten by wild beasts. ²⁸ I prayed to God, saying, “I trust you, God. Will you deliver me from the hands of my brothers ²⁹ and give me strength to break these ropes?” ³⁰ When I had said these words the ropes were loosened from my hands and feet. I stood in front of them and spoke to them again.

³¹ They were angry with me again, and wanted to beat me. ³² However, Carol, her mother Emma, and one of the sons of Ishmael pleaded with my brothers until they showed enough compassion to not kill me.

³³ They were discouraged because they recognized their wickedness. They bowed down in front of me. They begged me for forgiveness. ³⁴ I frankly forgave them for everything that they had done. I encouraged them to pray to the Divine for forgiveness, ³⁵ and they did so.

³⁶ After they had prayed, we kept traveling toward the tent of our mother and father. ³⁷ I, my brothers, and all of Emma and Ishmael’s family safely arrived at the tent of my mother and father. ³⁹ We sacrificed some of our food as a way to show our thanks to God. ⁴⁰ We were also thankful that we were able to gather seeds of every kind; both grains and fruit.

Lehi’s Dream

⁴¹ One day, while we were living in the wilderness, my father spoke to us by saying, “I had a dream. I had a vision! ⁴² This vision made me happy for Sam and Nephi and many of their descendants. I have reason to believe that they will be close with God. ⁴³ However, I am filled with fear because of you, Laman and Lemuel. In my dream I saw you in a dark and dreary wilderness.

Wilderness

⁴⁴ I saw a man dressed in a white robe who came and stood in front of me. ⁴⁵ He asked me to follow him. ⁴⁶ As I followed him I found myself in a dark and dreary wasteland. ⁴⁷ I traveled here, in the dark, for many hours. Finally I decided to pray to God for help, because I know that God protects those that willingly enter a faith journey with the Divine.

Tree and River

⁴⁸ And after I had prayed to the Lord, I beheld a large and spacious field. ⁴⁹ And I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

⁵⁰ I went forth and partook of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet above all that I ever before tasted. ⁵¹ And I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

⁴⁸ After I finished my prayer I saw a large field. ⁴⁹ In this field I saw a tree whose fruit made you happy. ⁵⁰ I went to the tree and ate the fruit, and found that it was the most wonderful thing I had ever tasted! ⁵¹ When I looked at the fruit I saw that it was the whitest thing I had ever seen. ⁵² This fruit filled me with overwhelming joy.

⁵³ This was the best fruit I had ever tasted and I wanted my family to have it as well. ⁵⁴ As I looked around for my family I saw a river which ran near the tree. ⁵⁵ I looked upstream and was able to see the head of the river. ⁵⁶ It was here that I saw your mother Sariah as well as Sam and Nephi. They looked as if they were lost. ⁵⁷ I shouted to them to tell them to come to me and eat the fruit. ⁵⁸ They came to me and also ate the fruit.

⁵⁹ I wanted Laman and Lemuel to eat the fruit with us as well. ⁶⁰ I looked towards the head of the river hoping that they would be there as well and they were. ⁶¹ I saw them, but they refused to come to me and eat the fruit.

Rod and Mist

⁶² I saw a handrail made out of iron along the bank of the river. ⁶³ The rod of iron had a straight and narrow path along it which led to the tree. ⁶⁴ It led along the head of the river and into the field that looked so large it was as if that was all there was in the world.

⁶⁵ I saw a seemingly infinite amount of people who tried to get to the tree. ⁶⁶ Many started on the path, but they were enveloped in a mist of darkness. ⁶⁷ This darkness caused many to lose their sense of where the tree was. ⁶⁸ I saw some who continued to move forward, and they held onto the iron rod. ⁶⁹ They moved through the darkness while holding onto the rod and eventually were able to come and eat the fruit from the tree.

Great and Spacious Building

⁷⁰ However, there were some who, after eating the fruit, looked around and felt ashamed. ⁷¹ I looked around for what was causing this shame and found a huge building on the other side of the river. ⁷² This building seemed to be floating high in the air. ⁷³ It was filled with every kind of person: young, old, men, women, etc. ⁷⁴ They were all wearing very expensive clothes. ⁷⁵ They were mocking and pointing fingers at the people who were at the tree and eating the fruit. ⁷⁶ Many of the people at the tree, after having eaten the fruit, felt shame because of this mocking. They often left and got lost on paths which lead to nowhere.”

Conclusion

⁷⁷ I won't repeat my father's whole story, ⁷⁸ so suffice it to say that he saw entire crowds of people walking toward the tree while holding onto the handrail of iron; when they arrived at the tree they ate the fruit. ⁷⁹ He saw others move toward that great and spacious building. ⁸⁰ Some people fell into the river and drowned. ⁸¹ There were others who wandered down strange roads and he couldn't see anymore.

⁸² There were so many people who entered that strange building. ⁸³ After they entered it they would point fingers and mock those who were at the tree eating the fruit. However, we didn't pay them any attention. ⁸⁴ My father said "Those who listened to those in the great and spacious building ended up joining them. Laman and Lemuel listened to the people in the building and refused to eat the fruit."

⁸⁶ After my father told us of his vision he said he worried about Laman and Lemuel. ⁸⁷ He was worried that they would reject God, and God would not walk with them. ⁸⁸ He begged them, with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would listen to what he told them. He wanted God to be a part of their lives. ⁸⁹ My father tried to explain all of these things. ⁹⁰ After he explained these things and prophesied about many other things he told them to take the Divine's advice. ⁹¹ Then he stopped speaking to them about these things. ⁹² My father had his visions and said these things while he lived in a tent in the valley of Lemuel. He said many other things, but they can't be written upon these plates.

Explanation of the Two Sets of Plates

⁹³ The plates that I am writing on are not the plates which have a full history of my people. ⁹⁴ The plates which have that history I have named "Nephi". ⁹⁵ I named them after myself and they are called "The Large Plates of Nephi". ⁹⁶ I was also told by the Divine to make a set of plates to write out the ministry of my people. ⁹⁷ The Large Plates of Nephi should be set aside for history of the kings, wars, and contentions of my people. ⁹⁸ The Small Plates of Nephi should be set aside for our dealings with the Divine. ⁹⁹ I'm sure that the Divine had me make these plates for a good reason, but I'm not sure what that reason is. ¹⁰⁰ The Divine knows everything from beginning to end, ¹⁰¹ so I'm sure these plates will help accomplish the Divine work. The Divine always has the power to fulfill Their words. ¹⁰² This is how it is.

Chapter 3

Lehi's Prophecies

The Messiah

¹ I will write the history of my life, reign and ministry upon these plates. Before I begin my account, I must speak a little bit more about my father and brothers. ² After my father finished telling us about his vision and begging Laman and Lemuel to live a good life, he spoke to them about the Jewish people. He said that Jerusalem would be destroyed and many would be carried away as captives into Babylon. ³ However, one day the Jewish people would be brought out of captivity and return to their homeland, Jerusalem. ⁴ Six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem, the Prophet, Messiah, and Emancipator of the world would come among the Jewish people in Jerusalem.

⁵ My father also spoke about the prophets. Many of them have prophesied about the Emancipator. ⁶ All of humanity will likely get lost and confused at some point and could stay like that forever. However, this Emancipator will find those that are lost and teach them.

⁷ He also spoke about a prophet who would come before the Messiah. He would prepare people to understand and accept the Divine in mortality. ⁸ This prophet would go into the wilderness and yell things like [“Clear the road and get ready to meet the Divine in mortality! ⁹ You won't recognize the Divine, because They are already here. They are greater than I am. They are so great that I would feel uncomfortable even untying Their shoes.”](#) ¹⁰ My father talked a lot about this. ¹¹ The messiah would be baptized in water by this prophet at Bethabara, which is beyond Jordan. ¹² After this baptism the prophet would tell people that he baptized the Lamb of God, who would make the mistakes of the world disappear.

The Gathering of Israel

¹³ After my father said these things he spoke to my brothers about how the gospel would be preached among the Jewish people ¹⁴ but they would not accept it. ¹⁵ After the Jewish people killed the Messiah, the Messiah would rise from the dead and come to the non-Jewish people through the power of the Holy Ghost. ¹⁶ My father talked a lot about the non-Jewish people and the family of Israel. Our family, who is a part of the family of Israel, would be like an olive tree whose branches would be broken off and should be scattered all over the Earth. ¹⁷ My father said that both our family and the non-Jewish people would be led as one people to the land of promise. Since we are a part of the family of Israel, we would be fulfilling the prophecy that the family would be scattered. ¹⁸ Eventually the family of Israel would be gathered back together. ¹⁹ The family of Israel will be gathered when the non-Jewish people receive the gospel. They will become like a new olive tree after they learned the ways of God and the teachings of prophets. The branches of the old olive tree, the scattered remnants of the family of Israel, will be

gathered again and grafted back onto the new tree. We will come to know the Messiah and Emancipator.

²⁰ These are the sorts of things that my father prophesied of and spoke to my brothers about. ²¹ He said many other things, but I won't write them here because they are written on my other plates. ²² All these were talked about while we still lived in tents in the valley of Lemuel.

Nephi Seeks Confirmation of Lehi's Prophecies

²³ After I heard everything my father saw in his vision, ²⁴ as well as the things he talked about with the power of the Holy Ghost which he received because he trusted the Son of God ²⁵ who was the Messiah who would one day join humanity, ²⁶ I wanted to see, hear, and know these things for myself. My father was able to have these visions and prophecies because of the power of the Spirit, whom my father trusts. This knowledge is a gift from God that is given to everyone that wants it. ²⁷ It was like this before the world was formed, in times of old, it is like that now, and it will be like that in the future. ²⁸ All you have to do is give up wickedness and instead willingly enter a faith journey with the Divine. ²⁹ Those that diligently seek answers will find them. ³⁰ Mysteries will be shown to those seekers by the power of the Spirit, just as it was done in times of old; ³¹ this will also be the case in the future. ³² In this way, God's interactions are like a cycle.

³³ I urge you to remember that there are consequences for your actions. ³⁴ If you behave badly in this life, the Divine will not want to live with you in the afterlife ³⁵ and you'll go somewhere else until you two would get along. ³⁶ The Holy Ghost tells me to not deny these things, but to speak about them.

Nephi's Visions Of The Tree And Of The Future

³⁷ I wanted to know these things and knew that the Divine would show them to me, ³⁸ which is why I sat and meditated on this. As I meditated I was caught away in a vision and was on a very tall mountain, which I had never seen before.

³⁹ The Spirit said to me, "What do you want, Nephi?" ⁴⁰ I said, "I want to see, hear, and know the things that my father saw in his vision." ⁴¹ The Spirit said to me, "Do you believe that your father saw the tree that he spoke of?" ⁴² I said, "You already know that I believe everything my father says."

⁴³ When I said this the spirit shouted with joy "Praise the God of Heaven and Earth! ⁴⁴ You are blessed because of your faith journey with the Divine, Nephi, and will be shown the things you want to see. ⁴⁵ After you see the tree with the fruit that your father ate you will see a man come out of Heaven. You will see that this is the Divine as a human."

The Jewish people

The Tree: The Divine's Mortal Birth

⁴⁶ The Spirit said to me, “**Look!**” I looked and saw the tree which my father had seen. It was whiter than snow and was the most beautiful thing I’d ever seen.

⁴⁷ After I had seen the tree, I said to the Spirit, “**You have shown me things that are more precious than anything else.**” ⁴⁸ The Spirit said to me, “**What do you want?**” ⁴⁹ I said, “**I want to know what this tree means.**” ⁵⁰ The Spirit took the form of a person and I spoke to the Spirit the same way as you would talk to any other person.

⁵¹ The spirit said to me, “**Look!**” I turned to look at the Spirit, but They had disappeared. ⁵² Instead I saw, among several others, the great city of Jerusalem. ⁵³ I also saw the city of Nazareth, and in this city I saw a virgin.

⁵⁴ I saw the heavens open and an angel came down and stood in front of me. The angel said to me, “**Nephi, what do you see?**” ⁵⁵ I said to Them, “**The most beautiful virgin**” ⁵⁶ The angel said to me, “**Do you know why God will come to Earth and join humanity?**” ⁵⁷ I said, “**I know that God loves all of humanity, but I don’t know everything.**” ⁵⁸ The Spirit said to me, “**She is the human mother of God.**”

⁵⁹ I saw that she had an encounter with the Spirit, ⁶⁰ and she had been carried away in the Spirit for a time the angel spoke to me, saying, “**Look!**” ⁶¹ I looked and saw that she was now holding a baby. ⁶² The angel said to me, “**This is the Lamb of God. This is the Divine made human!**” ⁶³ **Do you now know the meaning of the tree which your father saw?**” ⁶⁴ I answered, saying, “**The tree represents God’s love, which sheds its leaves all over the hearts of humanity. The tree is the best thing.**” ⁶⁵ The angel said to me, “**It also fills your soul with joy!**”

The Rod: The Divine's Moral Ministry

⁶⁶ After the angel had said these words, it said to me, “**Look!**” I looked, and I saw the Son of God going about his life among humanity. ⁶⁷ Many people fell down at his feet and worshiped him.

⁶⁸ I saw the handrail made out of iron which ran along the river and led to the tree of life. This handrail represents Divine advice. ⁶⁹ The tree represents God’s loves.

⁷⁰ The angel said to me again, “**Look and watch the Divine become human!**” ⁷¹ I looked and saw the Emancipator of the world that my father, Lehi, had spoken about. ⁷² I also saw the prophet who would prepare humanity for the Emancipator. ⁷³ The Lamb of God went and was baptized by him. ⁷⁴ After the baptism I saw that the Heavens opened and the Holy Ghost came down in the form of a dove and was with him.

⁷⁵ I saw him helping people, which was powerful and glorious. ⁷⁶ Crowds gathered together to hear him teach. ⁷⁷ I saw him be rejected by his people and run out of town. ⁷⁸ I also saw twelve others following him, ⁷⁹ but I wasn’t able to see their faces.

⁸⁰ The angel spoke to me again, saying, “Look!” I looked and saw the heavens open again. ⁸¹ Angels were coming to help humanity.

⁸² The angel spoke to me again, saying, “Look!” I saw the Lamb of God among humanity. ⁸³ I saw whole crowds of people who were sick and haunted by devils. ⁸⁴ The angel showed them to me. ⁸⁵ They were all healed by the Lamb of God.

The Building: The End Of The Divine’s Mortality And The Persecution Of The Apostles

⁸⁶ The angel spoke to me again, saying, “Look!” I saw that the Lamb of God was put on trial. ⁸⁷ I saw that they executed Him on a cross, and He died for humanity.

⁸⁸ After he was killed I saw whole nations come together to fight against his twelve apostles. ⁸⁹ The whole earth seemed to be gathered together! ⁹⁰ I saw that they were in a large building like what my father saw in his vision. ⁹¹ The angel spoke to me again, saying, “This is the ‘wisdom’ that many people have. ⁹² Even the family of Israel has gathered together to fight the apostles.” ⁹³ The building in my father’s dream represented this pride in the world. ⁹⁴ It eventually fell, and it was a great relief when it did.

Lehi and Sariah’s Descendants

The Mist: Darkness Before Christ's Coming

⁹⁵ The angel said to me, “This will be the destruction of all the nations, families, and languages that fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb. ⁹⁶ Look and see your descendants, and also the descendants of your brothers!” ⁹⁷ I looked and saw the land of promise. ⁹⁸ There were many people in this land; as many as grains of sand in the sea. ⁹⁹ I saw them gather together to battle each other. I saw wars, rumors of wars, and great massacres among my people. ¹⁰⁰ I saw many generations pass away because of these wars. ¹⁰¹ I saw too many cities to count.

¹⁰² I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise. ¹⁰³ There was lightning, thunder, earthquakes, and many loud noises. ¹⁰⁴ I saw the earth be torn apart! ¹⁰⁵ I saw mountains tumbled to pieces! ¹⁰⁶ I saw plains be broken up! ¹⁰⁷ I saw many cities were sink! ¹⁰⁸ I saw many cities burn! ¹⁰⁹ I saw many cities tumble to the ground because of earthquakes! ¹¹⁰ After the vapor of darkness left I saw how many had passed away in the destruction. ¹¹¹ I saw how many people had died because the Divine reviewed their lives and assessed them and determined that they were evil. ¹¹² The Divine had shown Themselves to them.

¹¹³ I also saw and I bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others, and they were ordained of God, and chosen to lead. ¹¹⁴ Again the angel spoke to me, saying, “These are the twelve disciples of the Lamb who are chosen to minister to your descendants. ¹¹⁵ Do you remember what the twelve apostles of the Lamb do? They are the judges of the twelve tribes of Israel. ¹¹⁶ The twelve ministers that are your descendants will be judged by the original twelve, because they are a part of the family of Israel. These twelve ministers that you see will judge

your descendants. ¹¹⁷ They are righteous because the Lamb of God makes them blameless because of his sacrifice.”

¹¹⁸ The angel said to me, “**Look!**” I looked and watched three generations come and go while living righteous lives. ¹¹⁹ The angel said to me, “**They are blameless because of their faith in the Divine**”. ¹²⁰ Many of a fourth generation also passed away while living righteous lives.

The River: Dwindling In Unbelief

¹²¹ I saw a crowd of people gathered together. ¹²² Then the angel said to me, “**These are your descendants, and also the descendants of your brothers.**” ¹²³ I looked and saw that they were gathered for battle.

¹²⁴ The angel spoke to me, saying, “**The dirty river which your father saw and spoke of represents the depths of hell. The river is in a wide canyon that separates the large and spacious building from the tree of life, and represents God’s justice.** ¹²⁵ The mist of darkness represents the temptations of the devil, which blinds the eyes and hardens the hearts of humanity in order to get them lost so they die.

¹²⁶ The great and spacious building represents the prideful fantasies of humanity. ¹²⁷ A large canyon divides those that are at the tree from those that are in the building.”

¹²⁸ As the angel said all these things I watched them happen. ¹²⁹ I saw my prideful descendants get lost and be overpowered by my brother’s descendants in war.

¹³⁰ I saw my brothers’ descendants survive this war and take over all of the land. ¹³¹ They gathered together ¹³² and there were wars and rumors of wars amongst themselves, and I saw many die because of this.

¹³³ The angel said to me, “**These survivors, your brother’s descendants, will live their lives and pass away without ever knowing the Divine.**” ¹³⁴ I saw my descendants live their lives in an eternal war and then be exterminated in a genocide by killers that would never even know God! I hate their skin and their traditions! They are a filthy and lazy people who do evil!

The Non-Jewish People

The Great and Abominable church

¹³⁵ Then the angel spoke to me, saying, “**Look!**” I looked and saw many nations and kingdoms. ¹³⁶ The angel said to me, “**What do you see?**” ¹³⁷ I said, “I see many nations and kingdoms.” ¹³⁸ The angel said to me, “**These are the nations and kingdoms of the non-Jewish people.**” ¹³⁹ Among these nations of the non-Jewish people I saw the foundations of a great church. ¹⁴⁰ The angel said to me, “**Look at the foundation of this church, which is more abominable than any other church! It binds, enslaves, tortures, and kills the righteous!**” ¹⁴¹ I saw this great and abominable church, and saw how the devil was the foundation of it. ¹⁴² I also saw gold, silver, silks, scarlets, fine twined linen, and many other precious clothes. ¹⁴³ The angel spoke to me,

saying, “Look at these things; they are the desires of this great and abominable church. ¹⁴⁴ They kill and enslave the righteous to get the praise of the world.”

Non-Jewish People Kill Lehi and Sariah’s Descendants

¹⁴⁵ I looked and saw oceans that divided the non-Jewish people from the descendants of my brothers. ¹⁴⁶ The angel said to me, “God is unhappy with the descendants of your brothers!” ¹⁴⁷ I looked and saw a man among the non-Jewish people who was separated from the descendants of my brothers by an ocean. He traveled over the ocean to the promised land where the descendants of my brothers lived. ¹⁴⁸ I saw many more people leave their oppressive homelands for the promised land. I believe they were led by God.

¹⁴⁹ Many crowds of non-Jewish people came and lived upon the land of promise. ¹⁵⁰ The non-Jewish people killed and scattered the descendants of my brothers to enforce God’s wrath.

¹⁵¹ The non-Jewish people had white skin, just like my people did before they were exterminated by my brothers’ descendants. These non-Jewish people prospered in the land and made the promised land their new homeland. I believe that this prosperity and land was given to them by God.

¹⁵² Then I saw that the non-Jewish people who had come to the promised land humbled themselves before the Divine. ¹⁵³ I saw the homeland of the non-Jewish people gather together upon the land and fight those in the promised land. ¹⁵⁴ I saw that the power of God was with those in the promised land, and the wrath of God was upon those from the homeland. ¹⁵⁵ I saw that the non-Jewish people were saved from their homeland and all other nations by the power of God. ¹⁵⁶ I saw them prosper in the land.

Development of the Bible

¹⁵⁷ I also saw a book that was carried by the non-Jewish people. ¹⁵⁸ The angel said unto me, “Do you know what that book is?” ¹⁵⁹ I replied, “I do not.” ¹⁶⁰ The angel said, “Look: the book is a record of the Jewish people”, and I saw the book. ¹⁶¹ The angel continued, “This book, which was written by the Jewish people, contains the promises that the Divine has made to the family of Israel. ¹⁶² It also contains the prophecies of the holy prophets. ¹⁶³ The writings which are on the brass plates are included among these records. ¹⁶⁴ This book is very valuable to the non-Jewish people.

¹⁶⁵ When the Jewish people wrote this record it contained the plain and simple gospel of the Divine. The twelve apostles also taught the plain and simple gospel as given by the Lamb of God. ¹⁶⁶ These pure teachings were taught by the Jewish people to the non-Jewish people, just as God wanted them to.

¹⁶⁷ After the gospel went from the twelve apostles to the Jewish people, it went to the non-Jewish people. It is here that you start to see the foundation of a great and abominable church. ¹⁶⁸ The non-Jewish people took parts of this plain and precious gospel and threw them

away. ¹⁶⁹ The non-Jewish people also threw out many of the promises that the Divine had made. ¹⁷⁰ They wanted to pervert the Divine ways in order to blind people and fill them with hate.

¹⁷¹ You have seen how the great and abominable church corrupted that book. ¹⁷² It was only then that the book went to all of the nations of the non-Jewish people. ¹⁷³ The book went to all the non-Jewish people nations, including across the ocean where the non-Jewish people have gone forth out of captivity. ¹⁷⁴ You saw how this book had many plain and precious things removed from it. These things helped humanity understand the Divine. ¹⁷⁵ Many will struggle because these things have been removed, and Satan has great power over them.

¹⁷⁶ Regardless, you can see how the non-Jewish people who have come out of captivity have been lifted up by Divine power above all other nations upon the land, which is a better land than all others. ¹⁷⁷ This is the same land that the Divine promised your father for his descendants' homeland. The Divine will not kill all of your descendants because They will also be among your brother's descendants. ¹⁷⁸ The Divine will not allow your brothers' descendants to be completely destroyed either. ¹⁷⁹ The Divine will also not allow the non-Jewish people to remain spiritually blind forever. They are only blind because the great and abominable church has removed the plain and precious truths from the book of the lamb. ¹⁸⁰ That is why the Divine will show them mercy."

Development of the Book of Mormon

¹⁸¹ The angel spoke to me again and said "The Divine says 'After I have visited the descendants of your father (who are the remnant of the family of Israel); ¹⁸² after I have reviewed their lives and assessed them; after they are killed by the non-Jewish people; ¹⁸³ and after the non-Jewish people struggle because plain and precious parts of the gospel have been removed by the great and abominable church I will be merciful to the non-Jewish people. I will be merciful enough to let them bring forth my plain and precious gospel. ¹⁸⁴ I will show myself to your descendants and they will write about how I minister to them. These writings will be plain and precious!

¹⁸⁵ These writings will remain hidden until after your and your brothers' descendants have been killed and are spiritually lost. The writings will then come forth by the gift and power of the Lamb. ¹⁸⁶ In these writings you will find my gospel, rock, and salvation. ¹⁸⁷ Those who seek to create Zion in that day will be blessed, because they will have the gift and the power of the Spirit. ¹⁸⁸ If they endure to the end, they will be lifted up and freed at the last day in the everlasting realm of the Lamb. ¹⁸⁹ How beautiful upon the mountains are those who teach peace and joy!"

¹⁹⁰ I saw the record of the Jewish people be given to my brothers' descendants by the non-Jewish people. ¹⁹¹ After this I saw other books come forth with the help of the Divine. These books went to the non-Jewish people and then to the descendants of my brothers. The purpose of this book was to convince the non-Jewish people, my brothers' descendants, as well as the Jewish people who were scattered around the earth that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles is true.

The Fate of the Righteous and the Wicked

¹⁹² The angel spoke to me, saying, “These last records which you saw among the non-Jewish people will establish the truth of the first records, which were written by the twelve apostles of the Lamb. This record will show the plain and precious things which have been taken away. ¹⁹³ Both of these records will show all of humanity that the Lamb of God is the son of the Eternal Creator and the Emancipator of the world; and that everyone must come to him or they cannot be freed; ¹⁹⁴ and they must come according to the teachings of the Lamb. ¹⁹⁵ The teachings of the Lamb will be made known in the records of your descendants, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. ¹⁹⁶ They teach the same things ¹⁹⁷ because there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

¹⁹⁸ The time will come that the Divine will come to all nations. First the Divine, in mortality, will chiefly come to the Jewish people, but then also the non-Jewish people. ¹⁹⁹ Then the Divine will chiefly come to the non-Jewish people, but then also the Jewish people. ²⁰⁰ The last shall be first, and the first shall be last. ²⁰¹ If the non-Jewish people listen to the Divine, in that day, whether by words or actions, the Divine will take away their stumbling blocks; ²⁰² and they will be considered members of the family of Israel as your father’s descendants ²⁰³ and they will be a blessed people in the promised land forever. ²⁰⁴ They will no longer be oppressed by other nations ²⁰⁵ and the family of Israel will no longer be confounded. ²⁰⁶ The huge pit which was dug by the great and abominable church (which was founded by the devil and his children to lead the souls of humanity down to hell) ²⁰⁷ for the destruction of humanity will be filled by those who dug it! ²⁰⁸ Those who dug this pit will be destroyed in mortality, but not their souls. They will be thrown into hell, which is endlessly large. ²⁰⁹ Hell will be reserved for the devil and to enact the justice of God upon those who assisted the Devil.

²¹⁰ You have seen that if the non-Jewish people seek reconciliation, then their lives will be better. ²¹¹ You also know about the Divine’s promises with the family of Israel. ²¹² You have been taught that those who doesn't seek reconciliation will die. ²¹³ Therefore, woe be to the non-Jewish people if they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God. ²¹⁴ ‘The time will come,’ says the Lamb of God, ‘that I will work a great and a marvelous work among humanity—²¹⁵ a work which, one way or another, will last forever. ²¹⁶ It will either convince people to engage in peace and life eternal or it will lead them to captivity to the Devil and destruction, both temporally and spiritually, because of their hard hearts and blind minds.’”

Two Churches

²¹⁷ When the angel had spoken these words, I was asked, “Do you remember the promises that the Divine has made to the family of Israel?” ²¹⁸ I responded, “Yes.” ²¹⁹ Then the angel said to me, “Look and see the great and abominable church, which is the creator of abominations and whose founder is the devil.” ²²⁰ The angel said to me, “There are ultimately only two churches: ²²¹ the church of the Lamb of God and the church of the Devil. ²²² Those who don’t belong to the Divine’s church belongs to the church of the Devil. ²²³ The church of the devil is a terrible church on the earth.”

²²⁴ I looked and saw the church of the Devil all over the earth. ²²⁵ It was among all the oceans and among all humanity. It had many, many members. ²²⁶ I also saw the church of the Lamb of

God, but it had fewer members. ²²⁷ Member's of God's church were found all over the earth, ²²⁸ but its numbers were far fewer because the church of the Devil was so widespread.

Fighting the Divine

²²⁹ I also saw that the great creator of abominations gathered among all the nations of the non-Jewish people to fight against the Lamb of God. ²³⁰ I saw that the power of the Lamb of God was with the saints of the church of the Lamb, who were scattered upon all over the earth; ²³¹ they were armed with the righteousness, power, and glory of God.

²³² I saw that the Divine was angry with the great and abominable church. There were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations of the earth which were started by the creator of abominations. ²³³ When these wars and rumors of wars started, the angel spoke to me, saying, ²³⁴ "Look! The Divine is angry with the great and abominable church. ²³⁵ You can see these things for yourself. ²³⁶ Once the Divine decides to fight this church, ²³⁷ then a Divine work will start. This work will prepare a way for all of the Divine's promises to the family of Israel to be fulfilled."

²³⁸ The angel spoke to me again, saying, "Look!" I looked and saw a man dressed in a white robe. ²³⁹ The angel said to me, "This is one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb! He will have the same vision that you have had. ²⁴⁰ He will write about everything that you have also seen, ²⁴¹ plus many more things. He will write about the things of the past ²⁴² and about the end of the era.

²⁴³ The things which he will write are good and true. ²⁴⁴ The things which he will write will be in the book which will be written by the Jewish people. ²⁴⁵ When the Jewish people wrote this book it was plain, precious, pure, and easy to understand. ²⁴⁶ This apostle will write many of the things which you have seen ²⁴⁷ and will see. ²⁴⁸ However, the Divine only wants him to write the things which you will see. ²⁴⁹ There are others who were shown everything and they have also written about their experiences. ²⁵⁰ These records have been protected and are uncorrupted, and will be brought forth to the family of Israel when the time is right." ²⁵¹ The angel also told me that this apostle's name will be John. ²⁵² I am forbidden from writing the rest of this vision; what I have written is good enough. ²⁵³ What I have written is only a small part of the vision ²⁵⁴ An angel showed me the same vision that my father had. ²⁵⁵ Now I finish talking about this Divine experience. ²⁵⁶ If the apostle John doesn't write more about this vision, at least this much is written about it.

Chapter 4

Nephi Explains His Vision To His Brothers

¹ After I had been carried away in a vision by the Spirit, and had seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my mother and father. ² I saw my brothers fighting with each other about the things my father had told them. ³ These things were important, but difficult to understand unless you asked the Divine for their meaning. ⁴ My brothers were stubborn which is why they didn't ask the Divine for help.

⁵ I was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts. I was grieved because of the future destruction of my descendants. I was grieved because of the inevitable wickedness I had seen.

⁶ I was overwhelmed with this grief, and considered this knowledge too much to bear.

⁷ Once I had the motivation to do so, I asked my brothers why they were fighting. ⁸ They said, "We don't understand the things our father told us about the olive tree and the non-Jewish people." ⁹ I asked them, "Have you asked the Divine for help to understand these things?" ¹⁰ They said, "We have not because the Divine wouldn't tell us anyway." ¹¹ I said to them, "Why do you never take the Divine's advice? ¹² Would you rather die than ask the Divine for help? ¹³ Don't you remember that the Divine said 'As long as you don't harden your hearts and instead ask me for help, trust me, and take my advice then I will give you the knowledge you look for'?"

The Olive Tree

¹⁴ The Spirit told our ancestors that the family of Israel is like an olive tree. ¹⁵ You realize that we are part of this tree, but a broken off branch, right? ¹⁶ This is what our father was talking about when he mentioned grafting an olive tree. Many generations after the Messiah visits humanity our descendants won't believe in God. ¹⁷ At that day our descendants will know that they are a part of the family of Israel. They will know that they are a part of the Divine's people. ¹⁸ They will discover and learn about their ancestors. They will come to know the Divine's gospel which was given to their ancestors by the Emancipator. ¹⁹ They will become intimately familiar with the Divine's doctrine and know how to embrace the Divine and gain freedom.

²⁰ What do you think will happen then? Do you think they'll be happy that they found the Divine, who is their rock and their freedom? ²¹ Do you think they'll be spiritually fulfilled? ²² Do you think they'll be a part of God's people? ²³ Obviously, yes. They'll be counted as the family of Israel once again. ²⁴ In other words, the broken off branches of the olive tree, us and our descendants, will be grafted back onto the olive tree they came from, the family of Israel. ²⁵ This is what our father means.

²⁶ These things won't happen until after our descendants are scattered by the non-Jewish people. ²⁷ Since the Jewish people and the family of Israel will reject the mortal Divine, the gospel will be entrusted to the non-Jewish people in a powerful way. ²⁸ However, when our

father talked about the promises that would be fulfilled in the future he wasn't only talking about our descendants, but the whole family of Israel. ²⁹ Didn't the Divine say to Abraham 'Every family on earth will be blessed because of your descendants'?

³⁰ I had to explain all of these things to them. ³¹ I explained that the family of Israel would reclaim their homelands. ³² I read the words of Isaiah to them, because he spoke about how the Jewish people will reclaim their homeland. ³³ Once they had their homeland again they would never lose it and be scattered again. ³⁴ When I had explained all of these things they were pacified and humbled.

Meanings in Lehi's Vision

³⁵ Later they asked me, "We have a question regarding father's dream. ³⁶ What does the tree from our father's dream mean?" ³⁷ I said to them, "It was a representation of the tree of life." ³⁸ Then they asked me, ³⁹ I told them "It represents the word of God. Whoever holds to it will never die ⁴⁰ or be overpowered, blinded, and led to hell by the adversary." ⁴¹ I encouraged them to listen to the Divine. ⁴² I mustered all the energy that I could to urge them to listen to the Divine and take Their advice.

⁴³ Then they asked me, "What does the river of water mean?" ⁴⁴ I told them that the water which my father saw was hell, ⁴⁵ but he was so focused on other things that he didn't really notice it. ⁴⁶ I told them the river was in a wide canyon which separated evil people from the righteous people at the tree of life. ⁴⁷ This awful gulf was prepared for the wicked. ⁴⁸ I told them that our father also saw that the the justice of God also divided the wicked from the righteous. ⁴⁹ This hell, which is as bright as a fire, is where God enacts justice. This canyon will ascend up to God forever and ever.

⁵⁰ They asked me, "Does this mean that we are punished in this life or in another?" ⁵¹ I told them that it was both. ⁵² I explained that one day they will stand before the Divine and their mortal lives will be reviewed. ⁵³ If they die while they had been living wicked lives they will be kept away from spiritual and righteous things. ⁵⁴ They will stand before God and have the lives that they lived be reviewed and assessed. ⁵⁵ If they lived wicked lives then that means they are wicked. ⁵⁶ If they are wicked then they can't live in the Divine's realm. ⁵⁷ If they did that would mean that the Divine's realm would also be wicked. ⁵⁸ No evil can enter the Divine's realm. ⁵⁹ This is why another place was prepared for things which are wicked. ⁶⁰ This is the hell that I spoke of and the devil is it's founder. ⁶¹ The final state of humanity's souls is to dwell in the Divine's realm, but they may spend some time in hell. ⁶² Evil folks are separated from the righteous folks and the tree of life, whose fruit is more precious and desirable than all other fruits and represents God's love. ⁶³ This love is the greatest gift!

Chapter 5

Traveling To The Land of Promise

Laman and Lemuel Can't Bear Nephi's Words

¹ After I said all of these things to my brothers they exclaimed to me "You've spoken very harshly, and we can't stand the things you've told us!"

² I told them "I have only spoken the truth; that can make evildoers feel guilty. I defended the righteous and said that they will be saved on the last day. Only the guilty think that these things are hard to hear, because it cuts them to their core. ³ My brothers, if you were righteous you would be willing to listen to and accept the truth. By living a moral life you would have no reason to complain about the truths I have spoken."

⁴ I urged my brothers to take the Divine's advice, ⁵ and they humbled themselves before the Divine. It made me happy and gave me hope that they would live righteous lives.

⁶ Now all these things were said and done as my mother and father dwelt in a tent in the valley which they called "Lemuel".

Departing from the Valley of Lemuel and Discovery of the Liahona

⁷ While we were in the Valley of Lemuel I married Carol, one of the daughters of Emma and Ishmael. Laman married Pamela, Lemuel married Lindsay, Sam married Gail, and Zoram married Jane - all daughters of Emma and Ishmael. ⁸ My father did everything that the Divine asked. ⁹ I was very blessed.

¹⁰ The voice of the Divine then spoke to my father at night and told him to start traveling in the wilderness again in the morning. ¹¹ In the morning, when my father woke up, he stepped out of his tent and was amazed to find a round, brass ball of curious workmanship on the ground. ¹² Within the ball were two spindles, one of which pointed where we should travel in the wilderness. ¹³ We gathered together the things we wanted to take with us on this journey, including our remaining provisions. ¹⁴ We also took every kind of seed we could with us.

Arrival in Shazer

¹⁵ We packed up camp and started our journey back into the wilderness by crossing the river Laman. ¹⁶ We traveled in roughly a south-southeast direction for four days before we set up camp again. ¹⁷ We called the name of this place "Shazer". We wanted to find food for our families, so we took our bows & arrows to go hunting. We had a successful hunt!

¹⁸ We started traveling again in roughly a south-southeast direction and stayed in the most fertile parts of the wilderness near the Red Sea. ¹⁹ We traveled for many days and hunted along the

way with our bows & arrows and stones & slings. ²⁰ We followed the directions which were on the Liahona, which directed us to those more fertile parts of the wilderness.

Nephi Breaks His Bow, Learns How Liahona Works

²¹ After we had traveled for many days, we set up camp again so we could find food for our families. ²² As I was just starting to hunt my steel bow broke. The loss of my bow meant that we weren't able to get food for our families, which made my brothers angry with me. ²³ We were forced to return to families without food. ²⁴ Our families were very tired and hungry because of our journey.

²⁵ Then Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Emma and Ishmael began to complain because of all the things they suffered from and were afflicted with while they traveled in the wilderness. They were sorrowful and blamed God for all of these hardships. Even my father began to complain about how God put us through these trials.

²⁶ Since my bow was broken and my brothers' bowstrings lost their spring, we weren't able to successfully hunt. Our situation was becoming dire. ²⁷ I had to talk to my brothers because their solution was to harden their hearts again and blame God for our situation.

²⁸ My solution was to make a bow out of wood and an arrow out of a straight stick. I armed myself with this makeshift bow & arrow and also my sling & stones. ²⁹ Then I asked my father, "Where should I go to hunt for food?" ³⁰ My family had humbled themselves after I spoke to them.

³¹ My father was chastised by the Divine because he had blamed God for their lack of food and he regretted his actions. ³² The Divine told him, "Look at the Liahona; your answer is written there." ³³ When my family read what was on the Liahona they were scared straight.

³⁴ I looked at the needle of the brass compass, which is known as the Liahona. I discovered that the Liahona only worked if we intended on taking the advice that the Divine gives us. ³⁵ The Liahona had new directions written on it that were very easy to understand. When we no longer wanted to take the advice the writing would change. ³⁶ The Divine meets us where we are at, no matter how small, so that we can accomplish great things.

³⁷ The Liahona told me to go to the top of a mountain and I did so. ³⁸ It was here that I was able to successfully hunt food for our families. ³⁹ I returned to our camp with the animals I had hunted. ⁴⁰ Everyone was filled with joy! ⁴¹ They humbled themselves and thanked the Divine for the food.

Ishmael's Death in Nahom

⁴² We began our journey again and kept traveling in the same direction. ⁴³ After we had traveled for many days, we set up camp again and intended to stay here for a while. ⁴⁴ It was during this time that Ishmael died. We buried him in a place we named Nahom.

⁴⁵ The daughters of Emma and Ishmael mourned because of the loss of their father and their hardships in the wilderness. ⁴⁶ They blamed my father and I for these hardships, and said we forced them to leave Jerusalem. They said, “Our father is dead and we have wandered in the wilderness for years. We have suffered many hardships, including hunger, thirst, and fatigue. After we have endured all of this we will die in the wilderness from starvation!” ⁴⁷ This is how they said that they wanted to go back to Jerusalem.

⁴⁸ Laman fomented anger and violence to Lemuel, and also to the sons of Emma and Ishmael, by saying “Let’s kill our father Lehi and our brother Nephi. Nephi has declared himself our ruler and our teacher, but we are his elder brothers! ⁴⁹ Now he says that the Divine speaks to him and angels help him. ⁵⁰ However, we know he is very cunning and deceiving, and that he is lying to us. He wanted to isolate us in some strange wilderness! ⁵¹ He did this so that he can declare himself our king and ruler and do whatever he wants to us.” ⁵² This is how my brother Laman radicalized the others into wanting violence.

⁵³ However, the Divine was with us and spoke to them and chastised them. ⁵⁴ They let go of their anger and gave up their evil ways. The Divine blessed us with food and we didn’t starve.

Arrival in Bountiful

⁵⁵ We started our journey again, and traveled nearly east from that time forward. ⁵⁶ As we traveled we endured many hardships, including our wives giving birth to our children. ⁵⁷ However, we strived to take all of the Divine’s advice, and life was good. The Divine blessed us with food, and our wives were able to nurse our children. Our wives showed incredible strength both physically and mentally. ⁵⁸ We saw how taking the Divine’s advice benefitted us. ⁵⁹ If humanity takes the Divine’s advice they will be nourished, strengthened, and will have the ability to accomplish what they have been asked to do. ⁶⁰ The Divine provided for us while we traveled in the wilderness.

⁶¹ We traveled in the wilderness for eight years. ⁶² Then we came to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its abundance of fruit and honey. ⁶³ The Divine prepared this place for us to survive. ⁶⁴ We saw the sea, which we named Irreantum, which means “many waters.” ⁶⁵ We set up camp on the beach. ⁶⁶ We were filled with joy to be here after we had suffered so many hardships - too many to write about! ⁶⁷ Our land of bountiful was very fruitful.

Nephi Builds a Ship

Command To Build A Ship

⁶⁸ After I had been in the land of Bountiful for many days, the Divine spoke to me and said “Get up and climb the mountain.”, ⁶⁹ so I got up and climbed the mountain. When I got there, I prayed to the Divine for further instruction. ⁷⁰ The Divine said to me, “I want you to build a ship so I can carry your people across the sea. I will show you how to build it.” ⁷¹ I responded by saying, “Where should I go to find ore to smelt in order to make tools to build the ship?” ⁷² Then the Divine told me where I could find this ore.

⁷³ I made bellows out of animal skins to blow the fire for smelting. ⁷⁴ Then I struck two stones together to make a fire. ⁷⁵ The Divine didn't want us to have fire while we had journeyed in the wilderness. ⁷⁶ The Divine had told us, "I will make your food become sweet so you don't have to cook. ⁷⁷ I will also be your light in the wilderness. ⁷⁸ I will lead you through the path I have prepared for you; all you have to do is take my advice. ⁷⁹ If you do so, you will arrive in the promised land and know that I had led you there. ⁸⁰ You will know that I am the Divine. ⁸¹ You will know that I saved you from the destruction. ⁸² This destruction would have happened when Jerusalem was destroyed." ⁸³ That is why I wanted to take the Divine's advice and tried to get my brothers to do so as well.

Laman and Lemuel Mock Nephi

⁸⁴ I was able to successfully make tools out of ore. ⁸⁵ When my brothers saw that I was about to build a ship, they began to mock me, saying, ⁸⁶ "Our brother is an idiot if he thinks that he can build a ship ⁸⁷ and sail it across the sea." ⁸⁸ They didn't want to help build the ship because they didn't believe I could. ⁸⁹ They also didn't believe that the Divine was teaching me how to build it.

⁹⁰ The things they said hurt my feelings and discouraged me. ⁹¹ When they saw how their words hurt me they were filled with joy. They told me ⁹² "We knew that you couldn't build a ship, because you're too stupid. There's no way you could finish such a big project. ⁹³ You are like our crazy father, who is led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart. ⁹⁴ He has led us out of the land of Jerusalem to wander in the wilderness for many years. ⁹⁵ Our wives have worked so hard even while they were pregnant and giving birth. They have endured everything but death! ⁹⁶ It would have been better for them to die in Jerusalem than endure all of these hardships. ⁹⁷ At least then we could have enjoyed our possessions, homeland, and have been happy.

⁹⁸ We know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were righteous people. ⁹⁹ We know this because they took all of the Divine's advice according to the Law of Moses. They were good people! ¹⁰⁰ Our father misjudged them and, since we listened to him, he has taken us from our home! ¹⁰¹ You are just like him." ¹⁰² This is how my brothers complained about my father and I.

Nephi Recounts the Miracles of the Exodus

¹⁰³ I spoke to them, saying, "Our ancestors, the descendants of Israel, were slaves to the Egyptians and were treated very poorly. ¹⁰⁴ Do you think that they would have been freed from slavery if the Divine hadn't told Moses what to do? Do you think they would have been freed from Egyptian slavery if they hadn't taken the Divine's advice? ¹⁰⁵ You know our ancestors were enslaved and did hard labor. ¹⁰⁶ You know that their freedom was a good thing.

¹⁰⁸ and you know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided, and they passed through on dry ground. ¹⁰⁹ But you know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

¹⁰⁷ You know that Moses was commanded by the Divine to do that great work. ¹⁰⁸ You know that the Red Sea was split when he told it to and our ancestors walked through the Red Sea on dry

ground. ¹⁰⁹ You also know that the Egyptian armies of Pharaoh drowned. ¹¹⁰ After that our ancestors were fed with manna in the wilderness. ¹¹¹ When they were thirsty Moses smote a rock, and water gushed out of it. ¹¹² The Divine, their Emancipator, led them by day and gave them light in the night. In spite of these things our ancestors had hard hearts and blind minds and hated Moses and the Divine. ¹¹³ Since our ancestors were stubborn, they passed away in the wilderness. ¹¹⁴ The Divine led our ancestors! ¹¹⁵ The Divine took complete care of everything for them! ¹¹⁶ Nothing happened without the Divine's help.

¹¹⁷ The next generation was permitted to cross the river Jordan. They were made strong and were able to exile the former inhabitants of that land, who had exiled the Israelites' ancestors. ¹¹⁸ Do you think these former inhabitants would have been exiled from the land of promise if they were righteous? Obviously, no. ¹¹⁹ Do you think our ancestors would be given preferential treatment over the former inhabitants if the former inhabitants had been righteous? ¹²⁰ Obviously, no.

¹²¹ The Divine treats all of humanity equally. However, the Divine's favorites are the righteous. ¹²³ Those who were driven out of the promised land were full of evil that couldn't be ignored anymore. ¹²⁴ The land was cursed for those people and led to their destruction. ¹²⁵ Conversely, the land was blessed for our ancestors and they were able to take control of it.

¹²⁶ The Divine created the earth for us to live on. ¹²⁷ We were created to live on the earth. ¹²⁸ Righteous nations are protected, while evil nations are destroyed. ¹²⁹ Righteous people are brought into precious lands, while evil people have their lands cursed. ¹³⁰ The Divine abides in the heavens; the earth is simply a foot stool.

¹³¹ The Divine loves those that want to have a relationship with Divinity. ¹³² The Divine loved our ancestors, and even made a promise with them through Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. These promises won't be forgotten. ¹³³ That is why the Israelites were brought out of Egypt, and while they were in the wilderness, they were turned from wicked to righteous. The Israelites were as wicked as you are now. ¹³⁴ The Divine sent fiery-flying serpents among the Israelites to bite them. After they were bitten the Divine prepared a simple way for everyone to be healed: ¹³⁵ just look at a serpent on a pole. ¹³⁶ People thought that this was too easy and many refused to do so, and so they died because of their stubbornness. ¹³⁷ The Israelites continued to do things like this for years, but were nonetheless led by the Divine into the land of promise.

¹³⁸ Today the Israelites are full of evil again, and God can't ignore this evil much longer. ¹³⁹ I don't know when it will happen, but they are about to be destroyed. ¹⁴⁰ The only exception will be those who will be enslaved. ¹⁴¹ That is why the Divine had us flee into the wilderness!

¹⁴² The Jewish people wanted to kill him for the things he said. YOU wanted to kill him for the things he said. ¹⁴³ You are just as much murderers in your hearts as they are. You are just like them! ¹⁴⁴ You are quick to engage in evil, but you take your time remembering the Divine. ¹⁴⁵ You have seen and spoke with an angel! You have heard the voice of the Divine! ¹⁴⁶ The Spirit has spoken to you with a still, small voice, but apparently you were unable to hear or feel it. ¹⁴⁷ That is why the Divine now needs to use thunder and earthquakes to get your attention.

¹⁴⁸ You know that the Divine could destroy the whole earth if They wanted to. ¹⁴⁹ The Divine could make rough places to be smooth or break up smooth places. ¹⁵⁰ You know this, so why are you still so stubborn!? ¹⁵¹ My heart breaks with anguish for you, because I am worried that you will be kept out of the Divine's realm! ¹⁵² I am full of the Spirit of God, and have no strength of my own."

The Power of God Shakes Laman and Lemuel

¹⁵³ When I had said these things they were angry with me and wanted to throw me into the bottom of the sea. ¹⁵⁴ As they came to grab me, I said to them, "In the name of the Almighty God, I command you to not touch me! I am so filled with the power of God that my body is nearly burned up! ¹⁵⁵ God will kill whoever touches me, because they are nothing compared to Divine power! They will wither like dry grass and die!"

¹⁵⁶ I told them to stop complaining about our father and to stop refusing to help me build the ship. ¹⁵⁷ I said to them, "I can do anything God tells me to do. ¹⁵⁸ If I were told to tell the sea to be land, it would turn into land. ¹⁵⁹ If the Divine is this powerful, and has performed so many of these miracles throughout humanity, why could the Divine not show me how to build a ship?"

¹⁶⁰ I said many things to my brothers, who were dumbstruck by it all. They didn't dare fight me. ¹⁶¹ They were also scared to grab, or even touch me then and for many days afterwards. ¹⁶² They were worried that the Divine would kill them.

¹⁶³ The Divine said to me, "Stretch your hand out towards your brothers. They won't die, but I will shock them to show them that I am their God." ¹⁶⁴ I stretched my hand out and they didn't die, but were shocked, just as the Divine said would happen. ¹⁶⁵ My brothers then said to me "The Divine has shocked us! Now we know that the Divine is with you!" ¹⁶⁶ They fell to the ground to worship me, but I wouldn't let them. I said to them "Don't worship me; I am you younger brother! ¹⁶⁷ Worship the Divine, treat mom and dad with respect, and you will live a long and happy life in our land of promise."

The Ship is Built by Revelation; Sailing to the Promised Land

¹⁸⁰ After we had loaded our supplies into the ship and climbed aboard ¹⁸¹ we set sail onto the sea and were driven by the wind toward the promised land! ¹⁸² The wind carried us toward the promised land for many days. One day my brothers, along with the sons and daughters of Emma and Ishmael, danced, sang, and said many rude things. ¹⁸³ They seemed to forget that the Divine had helped them get to this point. ¹⁸⁴ They were very rude.

¹⁸⁵ I was worried that the Divine would be angry with us and see us as a lost cause and just sink our ship. ¹⁸⁶ That is why I came to my brothers and told them what I was feeling. ¹⁸⁷ They became angry with me and said, "We will not allow our younger brother to rule us!" ¹⁸⁸ Laman and Lemual grabbed me, tied me up, and beat me. ¹⁸⁹ The Divine let this happen in order to show that at a certain point evil can't be ignored. ¹⁹⁰ After they had tied me up so I couldn't move the Liahona stopped working. ¹⁹¹ They didn't know where to steer the ship. While we were lost at

sea a great and terrible storm arose. ¹⁹² We were driven back for three days. ¹⁹³ Those that had tied me up began to worry that they would drown in the sea, ¹⁹⁴ but they refused to free me.

¹⁹⁵ On the fourth day that we were driven back, the tempest was raging particularly hard and ¹⁹⁶ we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. ¹⁹⁷ It was only then that my brothers began to see that the Divine wasn't able to ignore their wicked ways anymore and they would die unless they turned away from them. ¹⁹⁸ When they realized this they came and freed me. My wrists and ankles were extremely sore and swollen from where the ropes were. ¹⁹⁹ Regardless, I still looked to the Divine and was thankful. I did not blame the Divine for my hardships.

²⁰⁰ My mother and father said many things to my brothers and the sons of Emma and Ishmael, but anyone who tried to defend me was threatened. ²⁰¹ My parents were very old and were filled with grief because of the contention in their family. ²⁰² This grief caused them both to lie on their deathbeds and almost sent them to meet the Divine. ²⁰³ Their gray hairs were about to be brought to lie down in the dust. ²⁰⁴ They would have had a sorrowful and watery grave. ²⁰⁵ My younger brothers Jacob and Joseph were still young and needed their mother, and were grieving her impending death. ²⁰⁶ My wife Carol's tears would not persuade them to free me, and neither did my children's tears.

²⁰⁷ There was nothing that would convince my brothers to give up their evil ways and free me except the threat of watery death from the Divine. ²⁰⁸ When they saw their impending death at sea they sought reconciliation for the things that they had done and freed me.

²⁰⁹ After they freed me, I took the Liahona and it worked whenever I desired it. ²¹⁰ I prayed to the Divine, and the winds and storms ceased and there was a great calmness. ²¹¹ I guided our ship towards the promised land again.

Arrival in the Promised Land

²¹² After we had sailed for many days we arrived at the promised land. ²¹³ We disembarked our ship and pitched our tents. We called the land "The Promised Land". ²¹⁴ Then we began to farm the earth by planting the seeds we had brought from Jerusalem. ²¹⁵ Our crops grew and we were blessed with a bountiful harvest.

²¹⁶ As we journeyed in the wilderness in the promised land we found many animals, including cows, oxen, donkeys, horses, goats, and many others that were very useful for us. ²¹⁷ We also found many ores, including gold, silver, and copper.

Nephi is Commanded to Make Metal Plates To Write Out History

²¹⁸ The Divine asked me to make a large set of plates so I could record the history of my people.

²¹⁹ Upon these plates I recorded my mother and father's journey through the wilderness. I also

wrote the prophecies of my father and my own prophecies here. ²²⁰ I didn't know when I was making those plates that the Divine also wanted me to make these smaller plates. ²²¹ My father's history and genealogy are written upon those other plates. ²²² The things that happened before I made these plates are written about in greater detail in the first plates.

²²³ After I made things plates as the Divine asked, the Divine told me to reserve the smaller plates for ministry, prophecies, and plain and precious writings. ²²⁴ These things would be kept to teach those who live in the promised land. There are many other wise purposes that the Divine has in mind for these writings. ²²⁵ The larger plates would be reserved for wars, conflicts, and genocides. ²²⁶ I have written those things in their respective books, and have ordered future generations to do the same. I also told them that these plates should be handed down from generation to generation and from prophet to prophet until the Divine says otherwise.

²²⁷ I will tell how I made the plates, ²²⁸ and then continue on with my history. I do this so more people will know about these sacred stories. ²²⁹ However, I do not write anything upon plates unless I think it is sacred.

²³⁰ If I make mistakes, then I am no different than the prophets of old. ²³¹ I don't say this to justify my mistakes, but to show that people aren't perfect. ²³² There are some things that people find very valuable for their body and soul, while others think it is worthless. ²³³ Many people even think the advice the Divine gives is worthless. ²³⁴ When I say "worthless", but there may be a better way of conveying what I mean. ²³⁵ Perhaps a better term would be "uninterested" in both the Divine and Divinity's advice.

Prophets Testify of Christ

²³⁶ An angel told me that the Divine will join humanity six hundred years from the time my mother and father left Jerusalem. ²³⁷ During the Divine's time as a mortal, He will be judged as worthless. They will torture Him, but He will endure it. They will kill Him, but He will endure it. ²³⁸ They will spit on Him, but He will endure it. He will do this because He is filled with love, kindness, and patience. ²³⁹ The God who freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and then preserved them in the wilderness ²⁴⁰ - the Hod of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob - will die by the hands of wicked men, just as the prophet Zenock prophesied. ²⁴¹ The prophet Neum prophesied that the Divine will be crucified. ²⁴² When the prophet Zenos prophesied about three days of darkness he also prophesied that the Divine would be buried in a tomb. ²⁴³ These three days of darkness would be a sign for the inhabitants of the isles of the sea, ²⁴⁴ especially the remnant of the family of Israel.

²⁴⁵ The prophet Zenos said, "The Divine will visit all of the family of Israel on that day. ²⁴⁶ Some will be filled with joy and freedom because of their righteousness when they hear His voice. ²⁴⁷ Others will be met with thunder, lightning, storms, fire, smoke, darkness, earthquakes which tear apart the earth, and raising new mountains. ²⁴⁸ All these things will come to pass. ²⁴⁹ Rocks will rip apart! ²⁵⁰ The earth will groan loud enough that the Spirit of God will work with many of the kings of the isles of the sea to exclaim, 'The God of nature suffers!'.

²⁵¹ Those in Jerusalem that will crucify the Divine will be hated by everyone. They hardened their hearts and rejected the signs, wonders, power, and glory of the Divine. ²⁵² Because of this they will wander all over the earth, die, become a bad word, and be hated by every nation.

²⁵³ Nevertheless, when the day comes that they soften their hearts and accept the Divine, then the Divine will remember the promises which were made to their ancestors. ²⁵⁴ The Divine will then remember the isles of the sea. ²⁵⁵ The Divine said: 'I will gather everyone who is a part of the family of Israel from the four quarters of the earth.' ²⁵⁶ In that day all the earth will see Divine freedom. ²⁵⁷ Every nation, family, language, and people will be blessed!"

²⁵⁸ I have written these things to my people that perhaps I might persuade them to remember the Divine, their Emancipator. ²⁵⁹ If they read this, I also speak to all the family of Israel. ²⁶⁰ I have worked with the spirit so much that I am tired and my joints ache for those who are in Jerusalem. ²⁶¹ If the Divine had not shown me what would happen to the city, I would have likely gone back and died as well. ²⁶² The Divine has certainly shown similar things to the prophets of old; ²⁶³ they were likely even shown our day. ²⁶⁴ We know about their experiences because they are written upon the plates of brass.

Chapter 6

¹ I taught my brothers these things. ² I read these things which were on the brass plates so they would know about how the Divine has interacted with many different people from many different ages. ³ I read them things which were written in The Book of Moses and the writings of Isaiah. ⁴ I did all of this to persuade them to build a relationship with the Divine. ⁵ I compared all of the scriptures that we read to our own lives so we could understand them a little better.

⁶ I spoke to them, saying, “Hear the words of the prophet which were written to all of the family of Israel. You are a remnant of the family of Israel; a branch that has been broken off. When you hear these teachings compare them to your own life. ⁷ This is what the prophet Isaiah has written:

Nephi Quotes Isaiah

The Divine Laments Israel’s Stubbornness (Isaiah 48:1-11)

⁸ “Listen to this, family of Jacob, Israel, and Judah; those who invoke the Divine’s name when making promises but don’t tell the truth! ⁹ Listen to this, those who call themselves citizens of the holy city and say they rely on the Divine!

¹⁰ ‘I foretold past events since the beginning! These prophecies came out of my mouth and I showed them suddenly! ¹¹ I did this because I knew how stubborn you are. ¹² I have told you these things since the beginning! I told you things would happen before they did. I did this because I was worried you would say that your idol had done and commanded it.

¹³ You have seen and heard all of these things, so why not admit it? ¹⁴ From now on I will only tell you about new things and not something that was said a long time ago. This way you can’t say that you had heard them before. ¹⁵ You have never heard or knew of these things since the day you were born. I knew you would be treacherous because you were all rebels from birth...

¹⁶ Regardless, to save my reputation I am not going to angrily destroy you. I would rather have my reputation be one of restraint and mercy. ¹⁷ I have refined you in the furnace of affliction. ¹⁸ I want to maintain my reputation and not let the credit for your successes go to idols.

Israel Promised Emancipation (Isaiah 48:12-22)

¹⁹ Listen to me, O Jacob, and Israel, my called; for I am them; I am the first, and I am also the last. ²⁰ I laid the foundation of the earth with my hand and my right hand is spread out over the heavens. When I call to them, they stand together.’ ²¹ Everyone gather ‘round and listen up: who has said these things before? The Divine has chosen Cyrus the Great as an ally. Cyrus the Great will end the Babylonian empire and wipe out its army.

²² The Divine also says: 'I have spoken; I have called Cyrus the Great! I will send him on this errand and he will be successful.' ²³ Come closer to me and listen: I have never spoken in secret to you. The Divine sent me to talk with you.

²⁴ The Divine, your Emancipator, says: 'I am the Divine who teaches and leads the best way.

²⁵ I wish that you had listened to the advice I gave you! If you had, you would be as peaceful as a river and as righteous as the waves of the sea. ²⁶ You would have had many descendants - as numerous as grains of sand! They never would have been alienated from me.

²⁷ Leave Babylon and announce your departure in song! Tell the whole earth that the Divine has freed Jacob's descendants.' ²⁸ Our people weren't thirsty as they were led through the deserts, because the Divine split a rock open and water flowed out. ²⁹ The Divine did this and many other greater things. The Divine also said 'There is no peace for the wicked'.

The Servant of the Divine Will Lift Up Israel (Isaiah 49:1-7)

³⁰ Listen to me again, you remnants of the family of Israel who were exiled due to the wickedness of the spiritual leaders of my people!

³¹ Listen and pay attention to me, you distant islands! Before I was born and was still in my mother's womb the Divine gave me this job. ³² The Divine gave me a mouth like a sharpened sword, but hid me in the shadow of Their hand. The Divine made me like a polished arrow, but hid me in Their quiver. ³³ The Divine said to me 'You are my helper and you will give me a good name'.

³⁴ Then I said 'All of my work has been in vain and I have wasted all of my strength. I hope the Divine has seen that I have tried.'

³⁵ That same Divinity that formed me in my mother's womb to be Their servant in bringing the family of Jacob back to Them and gather Israel together says that I am glorious in Their eyes and that They will be my strength.

³⁶ The Divine says, 'Gathering Israel together is too small of a task for you. I also want you to be a light for the non-Jewish people so my freedom reaches to the ends of the earth.'

³⁷ The Divine says to those who are hated by all the nations: 'One day kings will stand at attention for you and princes will bow. They will do this because they know that the Divine has chosen you.'

Israel Will Be Restored (Isaiah 49:8-26)

³⁸ The Divine says 'When the time is right I will answer you, you islands of the sea, and on a day of freedom I will help you. I will keep you safe and will give you my helper as a promise to you that I will restore the land of Israel to its rightful inhabitants. ³⁹ You will be able to say to the prisoners 'Come out and gain freedom!' and to those in darkness say 'Come out into the light!'.

They will be my sheep who graze along the roads and on hills that were previously barren. ⁴⁰ They will not be hungry, thirsty, or exhausted by the heat. I have mercy and will guide them to springs of water. ⁴¹ I will turn all of my mountains into level roads. ⁴² Look and see how these things will come from afar; some from the north, some from the south, some from the west, and some from Aswan.'

⁴³ Shout for joy, you people of the Heavens and Earth! The Divine has compassion and will comfort Their people, including the afflicted.

⁴⁴ But Zion has said 'The Divine has forgotten me!', but I will show you that is not the case. ⁴⁵ 'Can a mother forget the baby she is nursing and have no compassion for the child she gave birth to? Even if she did, I never will! ⁴⁶ You are engraved upon the palms of my hands, and Jerusalem's ruined walls are constantly on my mind. ⁴⁷ Soon your descendants will return and everyone who wishes to destroy you will leave. ⁴⁸ Look around and see how all your children will gather together and come back to you. As I live, you will wear them like a bride puts on jewels.

⁴⁹ Soon even your most desolate parts of your abandoned lands will be crowded with your people and those that enslaved you will be far away. ⁵⁰ The children you have while you're in exile will return and say 'This land is too small. We need more room!' ⁵¹ Then you will say in your heart 'Who has given me all these descendants? My children were killed and I wasn't able to have any more while I wandered in exile. So who raised them and where did they come from?'

⁵² The Divine says, 'I will lift up my hand to the non-Jewish people, and raise up my flag to the people; and they will bring your sons in their arms, and your daughters will be carried upon their shoulders. ⁵³ Kings and queens will be your foster parents and they will bow down to you and have the utmost respect for you. You will know that I am the Divine because no one who waits for my help is disappointed.

⁵⁴ Can plunder be taken from victorious warriors or captives be rescued from a tyrant? ⁵⁵ The Divine says 'Yes! The captives of the warriors will be taken and the plunder of the tyrants will be returned. I will fight those who fight you and I will protect your children. ⁵⁶ I will give your oppressors a taste of their own medicine and they will get drunk on it. Then all of humanity will know that I, the Divine, am their Emancipator.'"

Chapter 7

Laman and Lemuel Ask Questions

¹ After I had read these things which were engraved upon the plates of brass, my brothers came to me and asked, “What do the things that you read to us mean? ² Should they be understood as pertaining to spiritual things or physical things?”

Nephi Answers Laman and Lemuels' Questions

Scattering of Israel

³ I answered them, “These things were said by the prophet with the assistance of the Spirit. ⁴ The Spirit helps prophets learn everything that will happen in this life. ⁵ So it could be understood that these things pertain to both the physical and spiritual.

⁶ It seems like sooner or later the family of Israel will be scattered all over the earth and among every nation. ⁷ Even now there are many groups of people that have been forgotten by those in Jerusalem. ⁸ Most of the tribes have been led away. ⁹ They have been scattered all over the islands of the sea. ¹⁰ No one quite knows where they all are. All we know is that they have been led away. ¹¹ These prophecies apply to everyone who was led away and scattered and forget the Divine, both past and future. ¹² They will be hated by every nation because they harden their hearts to the Divine.

The Non-Jewish People will Help Restore Israel

¹³ After these lost tribes have been cared for by the non-Jewish people, the Divine will say that the non-Jewish people are a good example. This is the promise that the Divine made to our ancestors, and it will physically happen. ¹⁴ This promise applies to our descendants and all our siblings in the family of Israel.

¹⁵ This means that, after the family of Israel has been scattered, the Divine will help build a strong nation among the non-Jewish people upon the land of promise. ¹⁶ These non-Jewish people will scatter our descendants. ¹⁷ After our descendants are scattered, the Divine will start to do a marvelous work among the non-Jewish people which will be very valuable to our descendants. ¹⁸ It will be as if the non-Jewish people nourish our descendants and carry them in their arms and on their shoulders.

¹⁹ This work will also be very valuable to the non-Jewish people. ²⁰ However, it will also be valuable to all of the family of Israel. This work will help everyone understand the promise that the Creator of heaven made to Abraham, which, in essence, was ‘Your descendants will bless all the families of the earth.’ ²¹ I want you to know, my brothers, none of the families on earth can be blessed unless the Divine shows how powerful They are in the eyes of the nations. ²² The

Divine will show Their strength by keeping Their promises and bringing the gospel to those in the family of Israel. ²³ The Divine will free them from slavery and gather them back into their homelands. ²⁴ They will be brought out of hiding and out of the darkness. ²⁵ They will come to know the Divine is their mighty Emancipator.

The Wrath of God Will Fall Upon the Wicked

²⁶ The lifeblood of the great and abominable church will turn on themselves. ²⁷ They will become bloodthirsty and destroy themselves in war while they are drunk with their own blood. ²⁸ Every nation that goes to war against you, family of Israel, will turn on each other. ²⁹ They will lie in the very graves that they dug for you. ³⁰ All those that fight against Zion will be destroyed. ³¹ The great and abominable church, which has corrupted the Divine's ways, will tumble to dust. Its fall will be great!

³² The prophet has said 'The time is coming soon that Satan will no longer have power over humanity. ³³ Soon the righteous will no longer be able to ignore the proud and wickedness, and they will be burned to stubble. ³⁴ The Divine's anger will be poured out among humanity. ³⁵ The Divine will not tolerate the wicked destroying the righteous! ³⁶ The Divine will protect the righteous from their enemies even if it means burning their enemies with fire. ³⁷ The prophet said that the righteous have nothing to fear, even if it means they will be protected by fire if necessary. ³⁸ It won't be too long till these things happen, and they will include blood, fire, and vapors of smoke. ³⁹ These things will happen here on earth. ⁴⁰ It will happen to humanity in mortality if they harden their hearts to the Holy One of Israel. ⁴¹ The righteous will not die! ⁴² The time will surely come when everyone who fights against Zion is cut off.

A Prophet Like Moses; Fate of the Righteous and the Wicked

⁴³ The Divine will make sure Their people are protected so the promise They made to Moses is fulfilled. The Divine promised Moses ⁴⁴ 'I will send a prophet to you who is like me. Through him you will listen to everything he teaches you. ⁴⁵ Whoever does not listen to this prophet will be cut off from among the people'. ⁴⁶ I'm here to tell you that this prophet that Moses spoke about *is* the Divine. ⁴⁷ In mortality the Divine will exercise excellent and righteous assessment. ⁴⁸ The righteous have nothing to fear, because they will not be confused. ⁴⁹ However, the kingdom of the devil which is found among humanity should worry.

⁵⁰ According to Isaiah, the time is quickly approaching that every church will be set up to gain power over others, become popular, indulge in luxuries, and to accumulate wealth. ⁵¹ All of these churches belong to the kingdom of the devil and should shake with fear! ⁵² These are the churches that need to be humbled. ⁵³ They are the churches which will be burned to stubble. ⁵⁴ This is what the prophet was teaching.

⁵⁵ The time is approaching that the righteous will be like calves who are nourished and protected in a barn while the Divine abides in strength, power, and glory. ⁵⁶ The Divine will gather all of humanity from around the earth ⁵⁷ and count them like sheep so they come to know the Divine. ⁵⁸ The world will be as one and the Divine will lead them. ⁵⁹ The Divine will feed Their sheep and

they will live in peace. ⁶⁰ Satan will have no power because of this righteousness. ⁶¹ He will be powerless for many years! ⁶² He won't have any power over the hearts of humanity because they will dwell in righteousness and the Holy One of Israel will reign!

⁶³ All of these things will happen in the physical world. ⁶⁴ Every member of humanity will live peacefully in the Divine if they seek reconciliation. ⁶⁵ I will finish speaking to you about these things. ⁶⁶ I would love for you to take these things which are written in the brass plates seriously. ⁶⁷ These writings encourage us to take the Divine's advice. ⁶⁸ You don't need to wonder if I and my father are the only people to have taught these things. ⁶⁹ I urge you to take the Divine's advice, because if you do you will be freed at the last day."

The Second Book of Nephi

Chapter 1

Lehi's Final Words of Advice

The Promised Land

¹ After I finished teaching my brothers, our father, Lehi, also reminded them of the great things that the Divine had done to bring us out of Jerusalem to gain our land of promise. ² He talked to them about their rebellion while we were sailing and how the Divine showed mercy by protecting us from being drowned in the sea. ³ My father talked to them about how merciful the Divine had been to lead us to our land of promise. ⁴ My father said "I had a vision and know that Jerusalem is destroyed. ⁵ If we had stayed there we would have died. ⁶ Despite all of the hardships we have experienced, we have gained a land of promise, which is better than any other land. ⁷ The Divine has promised me that this land would be the homeland for my descendants. ⁸ This land will be our homeland forever. ⁹ This land will also be a homeland to those that the Divine brings here from other countries.

¹⁰ I prophesy what the Spirit tells me. The Spirit tells me that no one will come into this land unless the Divine leads them here. ¹¹ This land belongs to them. ¹² If the inhabitants of this land take the Divine's advice it will be a land of liberty! ¹³ The inhabitants of this land will never be enslaved, unless they live wicked lives. ¹⁴ If the inhabitants of this land become wicked the land will be cursed. ¹⁵ Conversely if the inhabitants are righteous the land will always be blessed.

¹⁶ It would be wise to keep this land a secret from the world. ¹⁷ If the secret gets out other nations will overrun it, and there will be no more space for our descendants. ¹⁸ The Divine has promised me that as long as those refugees from Jerusalem take the Divine's advice, they will prosper in this land. ¹⁹ This will be their land and not be overrun by other nations. ²⁰ If they take the Divine's advice, they will be blessed. ²¹ No one will take their land away from them and they will live in safety forever.

²² However, when the time comes that after the inhabitants of this land have received great blessings from the Divine, know about the creation of the earth and the formation of humanity, have the teachings of their ancestors, have been given power to do anything, and are brought into our land of promise they will reject the Divine. ²³ The Divine will deal with those that reject Divinity with justice. ²⁴ Other nations will come to this land and the Divine will give them power and they will take this land. The inhabitants will be scattered and killed. ²⁵ Over the generations there will be massacres, but there will also be Divine visitations. ²⁶ My children, please listen to my words.

Advice For Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and the sons and daughters of Emma and Ishmael

²⁷ Wake up from this deep hell-like sleep you're in! Shake off the awful chains you're tied up in which are used to carry you to hell! ²⁸ Wake up and get up to hear the words of a dying parent. I will go in the way that all of humanity goes in only a few days. ²⁹ The Divine has saved my soul from hell and I have seen the Divine's glory and am encircled in the Divine's love.

³⁰ I want you to remember all the advice that the Divine has given. I have been filled with anxiety about this from the beginning. ³¹ I have been overwhelmed with sorrow from time to time because I have worried that you had completely forgotten the Divine, and the Divine couldn't ignore your wickedness anymore. ³² I have worried that you would teach your descendants to be wicked as well and it would be a curse to them for generations. Their wickedness would lead to war, famine, hatred, and enslavement to the devil.

³³ I don't want these misfortunes to come into your life, my children! I want you to have a good relationship with the Divine. ³⁴ Regardless, it's not up to me. I do know that the Divine has said 'If you take my advice you will prosper in the land. However, if you don't take my advice your relationship with me will suffer'

³⁵ I want to be filled with joy and leave this world in peace, not grief and sorrow, because of you! ³⁶ Get up, my children, and be adults! Be determined to work together in everything you do so you don't become enslaved or cursed! ³⁷ Don't do anything to upset God so badly that you permanently destroy your body and soul. ³⁸ My children, put on the armor of righteousness! ³⁹ Shake off the chains you're tied up in! Come out of hiding! Get up!

⁴⁰ Stop rebelling against your brother Nephi, who has seen wonderful things, taken the Divine's advice ever since we left Jerusalem, and been instrumental in the Divine bringing us to the land of promise! ⁴¹ If it weren't for him we would have died of starvation in the wilderness. ⁴² Despite these things you have tried to kill him. He has suffered a lot because of you. ⁴³ I am filled with fear that you will cause him more suffering.

⁴⁴ You have accused Nephi of trying to gain power and authority over you, ⁴⁵ but I know that was never his goal. He has only sought to have a relationship with the Divine and to help you gain one as well. ⁴⁶ You have complained about him because he has been honest with you. ⁴⁷ You say he has been harsh and angry with you. ⁴⁸ However, his harshness was the power of God! ⁴⁹ That which you call anger was simply the truth, and the Divine told Nephi to tell it to you! ⁵⁰ The Divine was with Nephi, and Nephi had to do as the Divine asked. ⁵¹ It wasn't his words that he spoke, but the Divine's.

⁵² Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and the sons and daughters of Ishmael, I want you to listen to what Nephi has to say. If you do you will not die. ⁵³ If you listen to him, I leave you with a blessing. This is the first blessing that I leave with you before I leave you. ⁵⁴ If you do not listen to Nephi, this blessing will be taken away, but it won't be taken from Nephi.

Advice For Zoram

⁵⁵ Now, Zoram, I speak to you: you were Laban's slave, but have left the land of Jerusalem. I know that you will always be a true friend to my son Nephi. ⁵⁶ Since you have come with us, your descendants will be blessed right alongside Nephi's and they will live in prosperity for a long time in this land. ⁵⁷ There will be nothing, except their own wickedness, that will be able to disturb their prosperity in this land. ⁵⁸ As long as you take the Divine's advice this land will be theirs.

Advice For Jacob (The Law of Opposition)

⁵⁹ Now, Jacob, I speak to you: you were my firstborn while we traveled in the wilderness. ⁶⁰ Your childhood was filled with suffering, hardships, and sorrow because of the rudeness of your brothers. ⁶¹ Regardless, you are aware of the greatness of the Divine, and the Divine will see that these difficult experiences end up helping you in life. ⁶² Your soul will be blessed and you will live in safety with your brother Nephi as you help the Divine. ⁶³ I know that you will be freed because of the righteousness of the Divine. You have seen that when the time is right the Divine will come to bring freedom to humanity.

⁶⁴ Since you have seen the glory of the Divine in your youth you are as blessed as those who will be served by the Divine in the flesh. ⁶⁵ The Spirit is the same yesterday, today, and forever. ⁶⁶ The way for freedom has been prepared and is free. ⁶⁷ We are taught enough to be able to distinguish good from evil. ⁶⁸ The law was given to humanity, ⁶⁹ but it isn't the law that saves, but it can help damn. ⁷⁰ By not taking the advice given in the law you grow further from God which makes you miserable. ⁷¹ Freedom comes from the Divine, who is full of grace and truth. ⁷² The Divine offers itself as a sacrifice to end the law to all those who come to the Divine with a broken heart and contrite spirit. No one else could fulfill the law.

⁷³ These things are extremely valuable to the inhabitants of earth, and they should be made known! There is no one that can live with the Divine in the flesh unless it is through merit, mercy, and grace of the Divine. ⁷⁴ God, in the flesh, will be killed for humanity but will come back to life through the power of the Spirit, ⁷⁵ and will then likewise resurrect all of the dead. ⁷⁶ The Divine will be the sacrifice for humanity and will also speak up and defend all of humanity. ⁷⁷ Those that trust the Divine will be freed.

⁷⁸ Since God defends everyone, everyone will come to the Divine. ⁷⁹ They will meet with God, who is full of truth and holiness. ⁸⁰ The purpose of the law was to punish the wicked. The purpose of the atonement is to save the righteous. ⁸¹ There is an opposite to everything. ⁸² If there weren't there would be no righteousness, because there would be no wickedness to contrast it with. There would be no happiness because we couldn't contrast it with misery. There would be no good because we couldn't contrast it with bad. ⁸³ We know one thing because we contrast it with its opposite. In that way, everything is a half of a whole. ⁸⁴ If everything was the same it would be as if everything was dead. There would be no life or death; corruption or incorruption; sense or insensibility. ⁸⁵ A universe like this would have no purpose. ⁸⁶ Creating it would be pointless. ⁸⁷ That purposelessness would stop the Divine's wise plan and invalidate God's power, mercy, and justice.

⁸⁸ Without this law there would be no sin. ⁸⁹ Without sin there would be no righteousness. ⁹⁰ Without righteousness, there would be no happiness. ⁹¹ Without righteousness or happiness there would be no punishment or misery. ⁹² If these things didn't exist then there is no God. ⁹³ If there is no God that would mean that neither humanity or the earth exist. Nothing would have been acted or acted upon, and there just would be a vast nothingness.

⁹⁴ My son, I say these things for your benefit and education. ⁹⁵ There is a God who created everything! This Divinity created Heaven and Earth and everything in them. ⁹⁶ God created everything which acts and is acted upon. ⁹⁷ Everything had to have an opposite for the Divine's plan to work for humanity. The Divine created Adam and Eve; the beasts in the field and the birds in the sky. ⁹⁸ Even the fruits of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil could be contrasted with the fruits of the tree of life; one is sweet and the other is bitter.

⁹⁹ The Divine gave humanity the ability to act for itself. ¹⁰⁰ However, humanity wouldn't be able to make their own choices if they weren't tempted by different options. ¹⁰¹ From what I gleaned in the scriptures there was an angel that fell from heaven. ¹⁰² This angel wanted to do evil in front of God and became the devil. ¹⁰³ When he did this he became miserable forever, and also wanted to make humanity miserable forever. ¹⁰⁴ That is why that old serpent, the devil, the father of all lies, said to Eve 'Eat the forbidden fruit and you will not die, but will become like God and know good from evil'.

¹⁰⁵ After Adam and Eve had eaten the forbidden fruit they were exiled out of the Garden of Eden to become farmers. ¹⁰⁶ They had children, which became all of humanity. ¹⁰⁷ Humanity lived much longer during this time so that people could reconcile with the Divine while they were still alive. ¹⁰⁸ Humanity's lives were like a sort of test to see if they would take the Divine's advice. ¹⁰⁹ Humanity was told to seek reconciliation. ¹¹⁰ Humanity was shown that they were lost because of what their parents taught them.

¹¹¹ If Eve had not eaten the fruit she would have remained in the Garden of Eden forever. ¹¹² Everything would have stayed exactly as it was when it was created, and nothing would ever change. ¹¹³ Adam and Eve never would have had children and remained in a state of innocence. They never would have known joy or misery or done anything good or bad.

¹¹⁴ However, everything went as the Divine planned it. ¹¹⁵ Adam and Eve changed so humanity could exist. Humanity exists to be happy. ¹¹⁶ The Divine will come in due time and free humanity. ¹¹⁷ When this happens we will be free forever while also knowing right from wrong. ¹¹⁸ We will act, but not be acted upon, unless time in a probationary state is required.

¹¹⁹ Humanity has everything it needs. ¹²⁰ We are free to choose liberty and eternal life through the Divine or choose enslavement and death through the Devil, ¹²¹ who wants to make all of us as miserable as he is.

¹²² Now, my children, I want you to look to the great Mediator and take Their advice. ¹²³ Trust what They say and gain eternal life. ¹²⁴ Do not choose death by giving into the temptation of evil! ¹²⁵ Giving into this temptation gives the Devil the power to enslave you so he can reign over you

in his own realm.¹²⁶ I have only said a few things to you in the days preceding my death, my children.¹²⁷ I have chosen the best things which the prophets have taught.¹²⁸ I have no motivation other than helping you.

Chapter 2

Lehi's His Last Words to His Son Joseph

Lehi's Son Joseph is Blessed

¹ Now I speak to you, Joseph, my last born. ² You were born in the wilderness during the most difficult part of my life. It was in the days of my greatest sorrow that your mother gave birth to you. ³ The Divine will also give this land, which is a precious land, to your descendants as their homeland. It will be theirs forever if they take the Divine's advice.

⁴ The Divine will bless you forever, because your descendants will not be completely destroyed.

⁵ You are my son, and I myself am a descendant of Joseph, who was enslaved in Egypt.

Joseph of Egypt Prophesied of a Future Seer

⁶ The Divine made some big promises to Joseph, and Joseph was shown our day in a vision. ⁷ He was promised that some of his descendants would become a righteous branch in the family of Israel. ⁸ When the Divine would come and join humanity he would not be Joseph's descendant. Instead, some of Joseph's descendants would break off, but still be remembered by the Divine. ⁹ The Divine would be shown to them in the latter days. They will be shown with the spirit of power and be brought out of darkness and into light; out of slavery and into freedom.

¹⁰ Joseph taught 'The Divine will raise up a good seer among my descendants'. ¹¹ Joseph then said the Divine told him 'One of your descendants will be a well regarded seer. ¹² I will ask him to do something for your other descendants, and it will be a valuable work. It will help them understand their ancestors and the promises I have made to them. ¹³ He will do no other work but the work I give him. ¹⁴ He will do my work, which will be great.

¹⁵ This seer will be great like Moses, who will save the family of Israel. ¹⁶ Moses will lead the family of Israel to freedom from Egypt. ¹⁷ However, this seer will make my teachings known to your descendants. ¹⁸ Not only will he make my word known but also convince people to trust it.

¹⁹ Your descendants will write, as will the descendants of Judah. ²⁰ These writings will come together ²¹ to clarify doctrine, eliminate contentions, and establish peace among your descendants. ²² In the latter days it will teach your descendants about their ancestors ²³ and the promises I have made.

²⁴ This seer's weaknesses will serve to be his strengths when he starts his work of restoring the entire family of Israel.' ²⁵ Joseph then prophesied, saying: 'The Divine will bless that seer. ²⁶ Those that seek to kill him will be stopped. ²⁷ I was given this promise by the Divine! ²⁸ I am sure that the Divine will keep this promise. ²⁹ This seer will be named after me as well as his own

father. ³⁰ He will be quite a bit like me because the thing he does with the Divine's help will free people.

³¹ I am sure this will happen, just as I am sure about how Moses will exist. The Divine has said 'I will protect your descendants forever. ³² I will give Moses power in a rod ³³ and will give him the ability to write. ³⁴ However, I won't give him the ability to speak well. ³⁵ That is why I will write my law to him with the finger of my hand and will give him someone who will speak for him.

³⁶ Likewise, Joseph, I will do the same with your descendants and the seer will have a spokesman. ³⁷ The seer will write the writings of your descendants and the spokesman will teach them to others.

³⁸ The wise things he writes will go to your descendants. ³⁹ It will be as if your descendants, who are long dead, ⁴⁰ speak directly to their descendants about reconciling with me. ⁴¹ Their words will be very simple. ⁴² Since they trusted me, I will help them speak to the future generations, who are also your descendants. ⁴³ I will make their weak words strong so that they will be able to remember the promises that I made to their ancestors."

Lehi's Final Words to Joseph

⁴⁴ Joseph, my son, this is how our ancestor prophesied. ⁴⁵ You are blessed because of this promise. Since your descendants will listen to this book and they will not be destroyed. ⁴⁶ There will be one among your descendants who will do and say a lot of good things, trust the Divine, and will be instrumental ⁴⁷ in doing many wondrous things for the Divine, including the restoration of the family of Israel and your brothers' descendants. ⁴⁸ You are blessed, Joseph. ⁴⁹ I know you are little, so listen to your brother Nephi and all of these promises will be fulfilled. ⁵⁰ Please remember the words of your dying father."

Chapter 3

Nephi's Commentary on Joseph of Egypt's Prophecies

¹ Now I, Nephi, will talk about my father's prophecies about Joseph, who was enslaved into Egypt. ² Joseph of Egypt truly prophesied concerning all his descendants. ³ Out of all of the prophecies which he wrote, there aren't many greater than this: ⁴ he prophesied about us and our descendants. ⁵ These things are written on the plates of brass.

Lehi's Advice for the Rest of His Posterity

⁶ After my father finished talking about the prophecies of Joseph of Egypt, he called the children of Laman and Pamela to him and said to them: ⁷ "My grandchildren, who are the children of my first born, I want you to listen to what I have to say. ⁸ The Divine has said, 'As long as you take my advice you will prosper in this land. ⁹ However, if you do not take my advice then our relationship will suffer.'

¹⁰ My grandchildren, I cannot go down to my grave until I leave a blessing upon you. ¹¹ I know that if you are raised right you will live a good life. ¹² However, if your parents fail to raise you right, I will recognize the part that your parents played in your behavior. If this is the case, I will leave you a blessing and place the blame on your parents. ¹³ I believe that the Divine will honor my blessing and be merciful to you and your descendants forever."

¹⁴ When my father finished speaking to Laman and Pamela's kids, he had Lemuel and Lindsay's kids brought to him. ¹⁵ He said to them, "My grandchildren, who are the children of my second son, ¹⁶ I leave you with the same blessings as your cousins, who are the sons and daughters of Laman and Pamela. You will not be destroyed; in the end your descendants will be blessed."

¹⁷ When my father finished speaking to them he spoke to all of Ishmael and Emma's household.

¹⁸ After he finished speaking to them, he spoke to Sam and said, ¹⁹ "You and your descendants are blessed! You will inherit the land like your brother Nephi. ²⁰ Your descendants will be counted right alongside his. ²¹ You, your brother, and both of your descendants will be blessed your whole lives."

Lehi Passes Away

²² After my father Lehi had the spirit with him and had spoken to all of his family about the things that were on his mind he passed away. ²³ After he died he was buried.

²⁴ Just a couple days after his death I felt compelled to speak to Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael and Emma. They were angry with me because of what I said to them. ²⁵ The Divine

wanted me to speak to them. ²⁶ Both my father and I said a lot of things before my father passed away. ²⁷ We talked to them a lot about the historical things which are on my other plates. ²⁸ Upon those plates I have written things that are very important to me, many of which include the writings which are also found upon the plates of brass.

Psalm of Nephi

²⁹ I love the scriptures and think about them a lot. I enjoy copying them so my children can learn from them. ³⁰ My soul is filled with joy in Divine things, and I constantly think about those things that I have seen and heard. ³¹ Despite being shown these great and marvelous things, I can't help but think that I'm not worthy of them. ³² I feel like I'm not good enough because of all of the mistakes I've made. ³³ I constantly fail to do what is expected of me. ³⁴ I want to be filled with joy, but I am filled with misery because of the mistakes I have made.

Regardless, I trust the Divine. ³⁵ God has been my support though my hardships in the wilderness and kept me safe at sea. ³⁶ I have been completely filled with the Divine's love which made my body burn like fire. ³⁷ I was protected when my brothers wanted to kill me. God protected me by shocking them.

³⁸ The Divine has heard my prayers in the day and gave me knowledge through dreams and visions at night. ³⁹ Some days when I prayed angels came down and taught me. ⁴⁰ I was carried away on the wings of the Spirit to high mountain tops. ⁴¹ I have seen ethereal things, and writing everything I saw wouldn't do them justice.

⁴² If I have seen these great things, including the Divine's mercy-filled mortal ministry, why am I so depressed? Why can't I get out of bed? Why do I have no motivation? ⁴³ Why do I keep making mistakes when I already feel terrible? ⁴⁴ Why do I keep letting the evil one torment me and destroy my peace? ⁴⁵ Why am I so angry at my brothers?

⁴⁶ Wake up, my soul! Don't be depressed anymore. ⁴⁷ Instead rejoice, my heart, and give no more space for my enemies, my brothers. ⁴⁸ Don't be filled with anger because of them! ⁴⁹ Don't be depressed because of my hardships.

⁵⁰ Rejoice, my heart, and pray to the Divine, and say, "Oh God, I will love you forever, because you make me so happy! You are my rock and my freedom! ⁵¹ Will you free my soul? ⁵² Will you protect me from my brothers? ⁵³ Will you help me not feel angry at them? ⁵⁴ Hopefully the gates of hell stay shut, because I want to be better. ⁵⁵ Oh, God! Please don't shut the gates of your righteousness in front of me! I want to walk the straight and narrow path in the low valley. ⁵⁶ Oh God, will you wrap me up in your robe of righteousness? ⁵⁷ Oh God, will you help me escape from my brothers? ⁵⁸ Will you make the path away from them easy? ⁵⁹ Please don't make it difficult. ⁶⁰ Will you make the path that I should take be clear and easy to take, and make it difficult for my brothers?

⁶¹ Oh God, I have trusted you and I always will. ⁶² I know that humanity's ignorance can lead to pain. ⁶³ There is pain when you don't trust the Divine. ⁶⁴ I know that you give liberally to those

that ask. ⁶⁵ I know that you will give me what I ask for, if I do not ask for the wrong things. That is why I pray to you, my God, the rock of my righteousness. ⁶⁶ I will always pray to you.”

Chapter 4

The City of Nephi Is Established

¹ I prayed to the Divine because my brothers were angry with me. ² My brothers were, again, so angry that they wanted to kill me. ³ They complained about me by saying “Our younger brother put us through so much hardship and now he wants to be our ruler! Let’s kill him so we don’t have to deal with him lecturing us anymore. ⁴ We don’t want him to be our ruler! The right to rule belongs to us, his older brothers!” ⁵ I won’t write down every way that they complained about me. ⁶ The general idea is that they were trying to kill me.

⁷ The Divine warned me and told me that I should flee into the wilderness with everyone who would come with me. ⁸ I took Carol and our family, Zoram and Jane’s family, Sam and Gail’s family, my younger brothers Jacob and Joseph, and anyone else who would go with me. ⁹ These were the people who trusted that the Divine warns and gives revelations to humanity and trusted me.

¹⁰ We took our tents and any supplies we could carry and fled into the wilderness. ¹¹ After many days we pitched our tents. ¹² My people wanted to call the name of the place “Nephi”, so we did. ¹³ My people started calling themselves “The People of Nephi” or “Nephites” for short. ¹⁴ We strived to take all of the Divine’s advice as it was given to us by Moses.

¹⁵ The Divine was with us and we prospered exceedingly. We planted seeds and had great harvests. ¹⁶ We raised flocks, herds, and animals of all kinds. ¹⁷ I brought the brass plates and liahona with us as I was told to do. ¹⁸ We were very prosperous and had large families.

¹⁹ I decided to make swords for our people, and designed them to look like the sword of Laban. I was afraid that the people who called themselves the “Lamanites” would come and kill us. ²⁰ I was worried they would come and kill us because I knew that they hated me, my children, and my people.

²¹ I taught my people how to be quite industrious. I taught them to build buildings and work with wood, iron, copper, brass, steel, gold, and silver - all of which were easily found in our land. ²² I built a temple that was patterned after Solomon’s temple. However, I wasn’t able to make the temple I built as extravagant. ²³ While we had many precious ores in our land, I wasn’t able to find the amount of precious materials that was required for the project. ²⁴ In that way, it wasn’t an exact replica of Solomon’s temple. ²⁵ I did the best I could when building it. ²⁶ I and my people were able to build things with our hands.

²⁷ My people wanted me to be their king. ²⁸ I told them I preferred if we didn’t have a king. However, I still did everything that I could for my people. ²⁹ The Divine’s prophecy was fulfilled. The Divine said I would be a leader and a teacher to my brothers. ³⁰ I was Laman and Lemuel’s teacher and ruler until they tried to kill me and I had to flee. ³¹ The Divine also said that “As long

as you listen to me, you will be a leader and teacher to your brothers. When they rebel against me their relationship with me will suffer.”³² Now my brothers’ relationship with the Divine suffers.

Nephi Breaks the 3rd Commandment

³³ The Lamanites were cursed because they refused to take the Divine’s advice. ³⁴ They hardened their hearts to the Divine and became like a flint. ³⁵ Their white skin became dark and they became an ugly people! ³⁶ I believe the Divine has said “They will be an undesirable people unless they seek reconciliation. ³⁷ Nephites that marry them will also be cursed”. ³⁸ The Divine said it and it was done!

³⁹ Their curse made them a lazy, mischievous, and conning people who hunted for their food in the wilderness. ⁴⁰ The Divine told me “If your brothers and their descendants do end up rebelling against me, your brothers and their descendants will be a scourge to you and your descendants, which will cause you to remember righteousness. ⁴¹ If your descendants don’t remember me, they will be destroyed.”

Nephi Makes A Second Record

⁴² I ordained and set apart Jacob and Joseph as priests and teachers to the Nephites. ⁴³ We lived happy lives. ⁴⁴ Thirty years has passed since we left Jerusalem, ⁴⁵ and during that time I kept a record of my people upon my plates.

⁴⁶ Then the Divine spoke to me and said, “Make another set of plates. On these plates write good things that will benefit your people.” ⁴⁷ I did as the Divine asked and went and made a small set of plates where I have written my story. ⁴⁸ I think God is happy with what I have written. ⁴⁹ If my people are interested in the dealings of God, they will enjoy my story which is on this small set of plates. ⁵⁰ If my people are interested in their history, they will enjoy reading the large set of plates. ⁵¹ It suffices me to say that forty years have passed since we left Jerusalem. During that time we have already had wars and contentions with our brothers.

Chapter 5

Jacob's Sermon

¹ The words that Jacob, Nephi's brother, spoke to the Nephites: ² "My beloved family I, Jacob, have been called of God, and ordained after the manner of the holy order. ³ I have been consecrated by my brother, Nephi, to whom you look to as a king or a protector, and on whom you depend on for safety. ⁴ You know that I have constantly spoken to you about many things; ⁵ regardless, I will speak to you again because I am concerned about the welfare of your souls. ⁶ I am filled with anxiety for you, and you all know this. ⁷ I have strongly encouraged you and have taught you the teachings of my father. ⁸ I have also taught you everything that was written from the creation of the world till now.

⁹ Today I want to talk to you about things that are happening now and will happen in the future. ¹⁰ I will read about those things, and they are written in Isaiah. ¹¹ My brother Nephi wanted me to talk to you about these things. ¹² I will teach you these things for your benefit, and so you can learn about God and glorify the Divine's name. ¹³ These words were spoken by Isaiah to the whole family of Israel. ¹⁴ You should compare these words to what is happening in your own life, because you are a part of the family of Israel. ¹⁵ A lot of what Isaiah taught could be compared to your own life, because again, you are a part of the family of Israel.

¹⁶ Now, these are the words:

Isaiah 49:22-23

¹⁷ "The Divine says, 'I will lift up my hand to the non-Jewish people, and raise up my flag to the people; ¹⁸ and they will bring your sons in their arms, and your daughters will be carried upon their shoulders. ¹⁹ Kings and queens will be your foster parents ²⁰ and they will bow down to you and have the utmost respect for you. ²¹ You will know that I am the Divine because no one who waits for my help is disappointed.'"

²² Now I, Jacob, will give a bit of commentary on these words. The Divine has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, the city that our people comes from, has been killed and enslaved. ²³ Nevertheless, the Divine has shown me that they will return to Jerusalem again. ²⁴ The Divine also showed me what They will look like in mortality. ²⁵ In Their time as a mortal He will be beaten and crucified. These things happened as the angel told me.

²⁶ After they harden their hearts and are stubborn towards the Divine, God will review their lives. ²⁷ The day will come that they will be hurt and will have troubles. ²⁸ The angel said that after they are scattered they will be troubled, hated, and beaten. ²⁹ Even so, the Divine will be merciful to them and they will come to know their Emancipator. They will also be gathered back into their homeland.

³⁰ The non-Jewish people that the prophet wrote about are blessed. ³¹ If they end up seeking reconciliation and do not fighting against Zion or unite themselves with the great and abominable church, then they will be healed. ³² The Divine will fulfill the promises that were made to humanity. The prophet wrote these things so we could remember them.

³³ Those that fight against Zion and the people who are close to God will bow down to you and have the utmost respect for you. ³⁴ The people who are close to the Divine will not be ashamed. ³⁵ The people who are close to the Divine are those that still wait for the coming of the Divine.

³⁶ As the prophet said, the Divine will bring them back to Jerusalem a second time. ³⁷ The Divine will be shown in power and glory when they will trust God. However, those that destroy the people who are close to God will themselves be destroyed. ³⁸ None of those who trust the Divine will be destroyed. ³⁹ Those that don't trust the Divine will be destroyed by fire, wind, earthquakes, massacres, sickness, and famine. ⁴⁰ They will know that the Divine is God.

Isaiah 49:24-26

⁴¹ "Can plunder be taken from victorious warriors or captives be rescued from a tyrant? ⁴² The Divine says 'Yes! The captives of the warriors will be taken and the plunder of the tyrants will be returned. The Divine will rescue Their people. ⁴³ I will fight those who fight you and I will give your oppressors a taste of their own medicine ⁴⁴ and they will get drunk on it. ⁴⁵ Then all of humanity will know that I, the Divine, am their mighty Emancipator.

Isaiah 50

⁴⁶ Have I thrown you out? ⁴⁷ Do you have any proof? ⁴⁸ Which creditors did I sell you to? ⁴⁹ Who have I sold you to? ⁵⁰ You have sold yourselves because of your iniquities.

⁵¹ When I came there was no one here. When I called there was no one to answer. ⁵² Oh family of Israel, do you think that I don't have the power to free you? ⁵³ If I wanted to I could dry up the seas and make rivers wilderness! All the fish would rot in the dried up riverbeds. ⁵⁴ I clothe the heavens with blackness, as if it was wearing black at a funeral.'

⁵⁵ The Divine has given me words of wisdom, So I may know how to speak you you during this difficult time, oh family of Israel. ⁵⁶ While you are tired, the the Divine wakes up morning-after-morning. ⁵⁷ The Divine makes me attentive so that I can understand this wisdom. ⁵⁸ I was not rebellious when the Divine made me attentive. ⁵⁹ I offered my back to those that beat me, and my cheeks to those that pluck out my beard. ⁶⁰ I did not hide my face from the shame or the spitting, because I knew the Divine would help me. I will not be confused!

⁶¹ I am as stoic as a stone, and know that I will not be ashamed. God is near me, and will prove me to be innocent. ⁶² Does anyone want to bring a case against me? ⁶³ Let us confront each other! ⁶⁴ Who is my adversary? ⁶⁵ Let them come near me, and I will defeat them with the strength of my mouth, because I know the Divine will help me.

⁶⁶ Those that bring a case against me will wear out like old clothes that the moths eat. ⁶⁷ Who among you that trusts the Divine and listens to Their helpers walks in total darkness? ⁶⁸ To all of you who start your own fire to warm yourselves and to see better, ⁶⁹ this will be your reward: you will be filled with sorrow.

Isaiah 51

⁷⁰ 'If you follow righteousness, listen to me! Look to the rock in the quarry that you were cut from! Look at the hole I dug you out of! ⁷¹ Look to your father and mother, Abraham and Sarah. When I called him he was just one man, but I blessed them and now they are many.

⁷² The Divine will comfort Zion, even in it's wastelands. ⁷³ Those wastelands will become as lush as the Garden of Eden. ⁷⁴ You will be able to find joy, gladness, thanksgiving, and singing in Zion!

⁷⁵ Listen to me, my people! Listen to me, my nation! ⁷⁶ I will give my teachings and my justice will be a light for the people. ⁷⁷ My righteousness is near, my freedom is on the way, and my arm will bring assessment to the people. ⁷⁸ The islands will wait for me and will trust my arm.

⁷⁹ Look to the Heavens! Look to the Earth beneath you! ⁸⁰ The skies will vanish like smoke and the earth will wear out like old clothes; all those who live on the earth will die in a similar manner. ⁸¹ But my salvation will be here forever. My righteousness will never be destroyed!

⁸² If you know righteousness and cherish my advice in your heart, listen to me! ⁸³ Do not be afraid of people's scorn or taunting insults. ⁸⁴ Moths will eat them like clothes, and worms will eat them like wool ⁸⁵ My righteousness will last forever, and my freedom will endure from generation-to-generation.'

⁸⁶ Awake, awake! Clothe yourself with strength, oh arm of the Divine, and awake as you did in the ancient days. ⁸⁷ Wasn't it you who defeated Egypt, the Dragon of the Nile? ⁸⁸ Wasn't it you who dried up the sea, the waters of the deep, ⁸⁹ so your people could cross over?

⁹⁰ Those that the Divine has free will return and will enter Zion in song! Their heads will be crowned with everlasting joy and holiness. ⁹¹ They will find gladness and joy, while sorrow and mourning will run away. ⁹² 'I am the one that comforts you. ⁹³ Why should you be afraid of people who will wither like grass? ⁹⁴ Did you forget that the Divine, your maker, stretched out the Heavens and laid the foundation of the Earth? ⁹⁵ You live in constant fear every day because of the fury of your human oppressors; ⁹⁶ where is that fury?

⁹⁷ The oppressed will soon be released and will not die in prison or starve. ⁹⁸ I am the Divine, your God! The waves roared as I divided the sea! I churn the sea to create roaring waves. I am the ruler of Heaven! ⁹⁹ I have put my words in your mouth and have covered you in the shadow of my hand, so that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth and say to Zion, 'Look, you are my people.'

¹⁰⁰ Wake up! Wake up! Get up, oh Jerusalem! You drank from the cup the Divine passed to you, which was full of Their fury. ¹⁰¹ You have drunk all of it, even the dregs! ¹⁰² There is no one who grew up in Jerusalem that can guide it! ¹⁰³ Out of all the people who grew up in the city no one will lead it!

¹⁰⁴ These two disasters have befallen you, but who feels sorry for you? Your desolation and destruction; famine and war. ¹⁰⁵ Who will comfort you? ¹⁰⁶ Your children have fainted except these two. They are stunned on every street like an antelope caught in a net. They are full of the fury and rebuke of the Divine.

¹⁰⁷ So listen to this, those who are oppressed and drunk (but not with wine): ¹⁰⁸ Thus says the Divine, who defends Their people: ¹⁰⁹ 'Look! I have removed the cup of fury, dregs and all, from your hand. You don't have to drink it anymore! ¹¹⁰ I will put this cup into the hands of those that oppress you and say 'Lie down so we can walk over you'. ¹¹¹ You laid down on the ground and they walked on you like you were the street.'

Isaiah 52:1-2

¹¹² Wake up! Wake up! Put on your strength, oh Zion! Put on your beautiful clothes, Jerusalem, you holy city. ¹¹³ You will no longer be invaded! ¹¹⁴ Shake off the dust and get up, Jerusalem! Take off the chains from your neck, you captive Zion!"

Chapter 6

Jacob's Sermon Continues

Ceases Quoting Isaiah

¹ Now, my dear family and friends, I read these things to you so that you would know about the promises that the Divine has made to all the family of Israel. ² The Divine has had the holy prophets speak to the Jewish people from the beginning and has continued to do so from generation-to-generation. This will be the case until they are brought back to the church of God. ³ They will be gathered back to their homelands which were promised to them. ⁴ Look, my dear family and friends, I say these things to you so you can be filled with joy and be optimistic forever because these Divine blessings will be given to your children. ⁵ I bring this up because I know that many of you have searched quite a bit for the things that will happen in the future.

Spiritual Fulfillment

Two Deaths and Atonement

⁶ I know that you know of your mortality and that one day you will die. ⁷ Nevertheless, we will see God in our bodies. ⁸ I know that you know that the Divine will have a body when he lives in Jerusalem, which is where we came from. ⁹ It makes sense for the Divine to be human among humanity. ¹⁰ This way even the Great Creator will know what it is like to be human and will die for everyone, and everyone will look to him.

¹¹ Just as death comes to everyone, which is part of the Great Creator's merciful plan, there also has to be a resurrection. ¹² The resurrection must happen because of Adam and Eve's fall. ¹³ They fell because they broke the Divine's laws. ¹⁴ Since humanity is in this state we are cut off from the presence of the Divine. ¹⁵ That is why there must be an infinite atonement. ¹⁶ If it weren't for that infinite atonement our imperfections could not become perfections. ¹⁷ If this infinite atonement didn't exist death would last forever. ¹⁸ We would be laid in the ground to rot and become one with the earth and never rise again.

¹⁹ Oh, the wisdom, mercy, and grace of God! ²⁰ If we never rose again we would become subjects to the angel who fell from the presence of the Divine and became the Devil, and we would never rise again! ²¹ Our spirits would become like his: miserable. We would become devils and be separated from the presence of the Divine and remain with the father of lies. ²² Yes! We would have to live with that being who tricked our first parents. ²³ He can pretend to be an angel of light and trick people into joining secret combinations that murder and commit other secret works of darkness.

The Greatness of God is Liberation from Death and Hell

²⁴ Our God is so good! They prepared a way for us to escape the grasp of that awful monster ²⁵ of death and hell of both the body and soul. ²⁶ Because the Divine has made this possible, temporal death is only temporary. ²⁷ Additionally, spiritual death in hell is also temporary. ²⁸ Death and hell will release their captives! ²⁹ Graves will release the captive bodies and hell will release captive spirits back to their bodies. ³⁰ This resurrection will happen with the power of the Divine!

³¹ Oh, how great is the Divine's plan! Just as hell must release souls back to their bodies, so must Heaven. ³² The spirit and body will be reunited and everyone will become perfect and immortal. ³³ We will be just as we are now, but, will have a perfect knowledge. ³⁴ We will know all of our shortcomings, wrongdoings, and vulnerabilities. ³⁵ The righteous will be clothed with a righteous robe of purity, and they will know all of their happiness and good deeds.

³⁶ When everyone is resurrected and immortal we will meet with the Divine. ³⁷ The Divine will assess what kind of life we lived. ³⁸ Those who were righteous in this life will be righteous in the next. Those who were evil in this life will be evil in the next. ³⁹ The people who are evil are the devil and his angels. ⁴⁰ They will go to hell.

⁴¹ Oh, how great is the justice of our God! They will do everything They say They will. ⁴² The righteous who trust the Divine and endure abuse, and hate the shame associated with the abuse, will inherit the realm of God. It was prepared for them at the foundation of the world, and they will be full of joy forever.

⁴³ Oh, how great is the mercy of our God! They deliver the saints from the awful monsters; the devil, death, and hell.

⁴⁴ Oh, how great is the holiness of our God! They know everything; there isn't anything that isn't known. ⁴⁵ The Divine will become mortal in order to free all of humanity, but it is up to humanity take the Divine's teachings to heart. ⁴⁶ The Divine will know what it is like to be human, including all the pain that comes with it. ⁴⁷ The Divine will suffer through a human life in order to bring resurrection to humanity. All of us will meet the Divine in our own bodies. ⁴⁸ God tells everyone to seek reconciliation, be baptized in the name of the Divine, and trust to God, or they can't enter the Divine's realm. ⁴⁹ If people don't do this, then there is nothing the Divine can do for them. ⁵⁰ The Divine has said that this is the way.

⁵¹ The Divine gave us the Law of Moses. However, you can't break a law that doesn't exist. ⁵² This would mean that there is no punishment or guilt for breaking non-laws. ⁵³ That would then mean that the Divine's mercy has claim over that action. ⁵⁴ We are saved through the Divine's merciful power. The atonement picks up the tab on the demands of the law, including for the people that were never given the law. This way we aren't handed over to the awful monsters; the devil, death, and hell. ⁵⁵ The Divine then resurrects them after saving them!

Woes

⁵⁶ Woe to those that were given the law and the Divine's advice, like us, and doesn't listen to Them! They live an awful life and waste their mortal days. ⁵⁷ Oh, the cunning plan of the evil

one! ⁵⁸ Humanity can be so vain, frail, and foolish! ⁵⁹ Many think that just because they have an education it makes them wise. However, they don't listen to the advice of God, and assume that they know what's best. ⁶⁰ This "wisdom" is actually foolishness, and doesn't help them. In fact, it leads to their death. ⁶¹ It is good to be educated *and* listen to the advice of God.

⁶² Woe to the rich! ⁶³ The rich hoard their wealth, which means that they hate the poor. They persecute the meek and only care about their earthly treasures. Money is their god. ⁶⁴ Just watch; their money will die with them.

⁶⁵ Woe to those that won't listen, because they will die! ⁶⁶ Woe to those that will not see, because they will also die. ⁶⁷ Woe to those that don't have an open heart, because when they realize the wicked things they have done it will kill them at the last day. ⁶⁸ Woe to those that lie, because they will be thrown down into hell! ⁶⁹ Woe to those that deliberately murder, because they themselves will die! ⁷⁰ Woe to those that are harmful sexually, because they will be thrown down into hell! ⁷¹ Woe to those that worship idols, because this fills the devil with joy! ⁷² In short, woe to those that die after living wicked lives and then go and see the very face of God.

Admonitions of Jacob

⁷³ Oh my beloved family and friends! Remember how awful it is to not take the Divine's advice. Remember how awful it is take the cunning one's advice. ⁷⁴ Remember that to be exclusively temporally-minded is death, but to be spiritually-minded is eternal life.

⁷⁵ Oh, my beloved family and friends, listen to me! ⁷⁶ Remember how great the Divine is. ⁷⁷ Don't say that I have taught you hard things. If you do, you would be complaining about the truth that the Maker wanted me to speak to you! ⁷⁸ I know that the truth is hard for the wicked to hear. However, the righteous have nothing to fear, because the truth doesn't phase them. In fact they love it!

⁷⁹ Come to the Divine, my family and friends! ⁸⁰ Remember that the Divine's paths are righteousness. ⁸¹ The path for humanity is narrow, but it leads straight to the Divine. The Divine, and the Divine alone, guards the gate along this path. ⁸² There is no other way to the Divine other than through the gate, and the Divine can't be tricked! ⁸³ Whoever knocks, the Divine will open the door for. However, the Divine loathes those that are educated-but-foolish and also the rich. ⁸⁴ Unless they throw these things out, and admit that they made fools of themselves to the Divine, the Divine won't be open to them. ⁸⁵ The things that are given to the truly wise, happiness which is prepared for the saints, will be hidden from them.

⁸⁶ Oh, my beloved family and friends, remember my words! Look, I take off my shoes and shake them in front of you! ⁸⁷ I pray that God will see me do this with Their all-searching eye. ⁸⁸ You will know that at the last day when we all meet and are assessed based on the type of life we lived, that I shook the dust off my feet. Your wickedness is not my responsibility, and I am rid of the blood on your hands. I stand bright before the Divine.

⁸⁹ Oh, my beloved family and friends, turn away from your wickedness! Shake off the chains that the Devil holds you with! ⁹⁰ Come to the God that is the foundation of your freedom! ⁹¹ Prepare

your souls for the glorious day when justice will be given to the righteous, so you won't be filled with fear ⁹² because you remember your guilt perfectly on the day that you meet the Divine! If you don't do this, you will exclaim 'Oh God! Your assessment is right. ⁹³ I know that I am guilty of breaking the law. My actions are my own. The Devil has me, and I am prey to his awful misery.'

⁹⁴ Look, my family and friends, do I *really* need to tell you the reality of these things? ⁹⁵ Why would I distress you if your minds were pure? ⁹⁶ Would I be speaking this plainly to you if you were free from these mistakes? ⁹⁷ If you were holy I would be talking to you about holy things, but you're not! You look to me as a teacher, which is why I need to teach you that your wickedness has consequences. ⁹⁸ My soul hates wickedness, and my heart is delighted by righteousness. I will praise the Divine!

⁹⁹ Come to the waters if you are thirsty, my family and friends. Come and eat and drink wine and milk even if you have no money. ¹⁰⁰ Don't waste your money on worthless things. Additionally don't work on things that don't make you happy. ¹⁰¹ Listen to me carefully and remember what I say: come to the Divine; ¹⁰² feast on that which can't perish or be corrupted, and instead let your soul be fat and happy!

¹⁰³ My beloved family and friends, remember what the Divine has told you: pray by day and give thanks by night. ¹⁰⁴ Let your hearts be filled with joy! How great are the promises that the Divine has made! How great is it that the Divine will join humanity? ¹⁰⁵ Because of the greatness, grace, and mercy of the Divine, we have been promised that our descendants will not be completely destroyed, but they will be protected. Future generations will become a righteous branch in the family of Israel.

¹⁰⁶ Now, my family and friends, I will speak to you more tomorrow. I will save the rest for then."

Chapter 7

Jacob's Second Sermon: Temporal Fulfillment

¹ Now I, Jacob, will speak to you again, my beloved family and friends, about the righteous branch that I spoke about yesterday. ² These are promises which were made to us regarding temporal life. ³ It was shown to me that many of our descendants will die because they don't trust the Divine, but God will also be merciful to many of our descendants. ⁴ Our descendants will come to know the Divine again.

⁵ Last night I was told by an angel that the name of the Divine in Their mortal ministry would be "Christ". As I said to you before, Christ will be born among a wicked part of the world among the Jewish people. ⁶ They will crucify him, which is part of the Divine's plan. ⁷ There is no other nation on Earth that would crucify their God. ⁸ If other nations saw the miracles that the Jewish people will see they would realize that He is their God and seek reconciliation. ⁹ However, because of their priestcrafts and wickedness, those at Jerusalem will be so stubborn that they will crucify Him.

¹⁰ Because of their wickedness they will bring destruction, famine, disease, and wars upon themselves. ¹¹ Those that aren't killed will be scattered among every nation. ¹² However, the Divine has said, 'When the day comes that they trust me and know that I am Christ, then I will bring them back to their homeland, just as I promised their ancestors. ¹³ They will finally come home from all over the world and the islands of the sea.

¹⁴ The non-Jewish people will be great in my eyes because they will help the family of Israel return to its homeland. ¹⁵ The kings and queens of the non-Jewish people will be their foster parents! ¹⁶ That is how great the Divine's promises are! The Divine said this will happen; who can argue with them?

¹⁷ This will be your homeland, and the non-Jewish people will also find blessings in this land. ¹⁸ This land will be a land of liberty to the non-Jewish people and they won't raise up a king on the land. ¹⁹ I will protect it from all other nations. ²⁰ Those that fight against Zion will die. Those that raise up a king who is against me will also die. ²¹ I, the Divine, will be their king. I will be a light to those that hear me forever.

²² Because of this, in order for my promises to humanity to be fulfilled, I must destroy secret works of darkness, murder plots, and other abominations. ²³ Those that fight against Zion, both Jewish and non-Jewish people, enslaved and free, male and female, will die. ²⁴ They are a part of the church of the Devil. ²⁵ Those that are not with me are against me. ²⁶ I will fulfill my promises which I have made to humanity while they live on Earth!

²⁷ To fulfill my promises your descendants will endure hardships because of the non-Jewish people. ²⁸ However, I will soften the hearts of the non-Jewish people and they will be like parents to your descendants. ²⁹ The non-Jewish people will be blessed and considered to be a

part of the family of Israel. ³⁰ This land will be the homeland for your descendants and those who are considered your descendants forever. ³¹ It is a good land; better than all others! ³² I would appreciate those who live on this land to thank me for it'

³³ Now, my beloved family and friends, since we know that our merciful God has told us so much about these things, let us remember the Divine and lay aside our wickedness. Don't be discouraged, because we are not forgotten! ³⁴ Despite us having to flee our homeland, we have been given a better homeland. ³⁵ The Divine made the ocean our road to our island in the sea. ³⁶ The Divine's promises are very important to those who are upon the isles of the sea. ³⁷ There are other islands in the sea, and they are likely also inhabited by our family and friends. ³⁸ When God sees fit They guide people from the family of Israel to new places from time-to-time. ³⁹ The Divine remembers everyone in the family of Israel who was guided away, and the Divine also remembers us.

⁴⁰ Cheer up! You are free to act for yourselves and choose between life and death. ⁴¹ My beloved family and friends, repair your relationship with the Divine, not with the Devil. ⁴² After you repair your relationship with God, you will be freed because of Their grace. ⁴³ I hope God raises you from the dead by the power of resurrection and saves you from hell by the power of the atonement. ⁴⁴ I hope you spend eternity in the Divine's realm with God!"

Chapter 8

Nephi's Soul is Filled With Delight When Reading Isaiah

¹ Jacob said many more things to my people at that time. However, these are the things I think were important. What is written here is good enough for me.

² Now I, Nephi, want to write more of the words of Isaiah because my soul is filled with delight when I read his words. ³ I will compare his words to my people, and send them to all of my children. I know that Isaiah saw the Divine just as I have. ⁴ My brother Jacob has also seen the Divine, and I will send his words to my children so they know I'm not the only one that has taught these things. ⁵ The Divine has said "Three people will testify about what I have spoken" ⁶ Regardless, God sends more than three witnesses to prove Their words.

⁷ My soul is filled with delight when I show my people the truth of the coming of Christ. ⁸ He is the reason that the Law of Moses was given. ⁹ Everything that God gave humanity since the beginning of the world speaks about the coming of Christ. ¹⁰ My soul is also filled with delight when I read about the promises the Divine made to our ancestors. ¹¹ My soul is filled with delight when I read about the Divine's grace, justice, power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan to free humanity from death! ¹² My soul is filled with delight when I help my people understand that without Christ we would all die. ¹³ If there is no Christ, there is no Divinity. If there is no Divinity, there would be no creation and we wouldn't exist. ¹⁴ However, there is a God, in Their mortal ministry They will be Christ, and He will come in Their own time.

¹⁵ Now I want to write some more of the words of Isaiah, so that my people can read these things and also be filled with delight for all of humanity. ¹⁶ Compare these writings to your own life:

The rest of chapter 8 through chapter 10 consists of Isaiah 2-14. These chapters posed to be a bit of a roadblock for me because I know people take these chapters and verses very seriously, and I want to do right by them. Because of that, I decided to continue on without doing these quite yet. I understand the irony of 2nd Nephi 11:5 ;)

Chapter 11

Nephi's Commentary on Isaiah

¹ Now I, Nephi, want to talk a bit about what Isaiah has said. ² Isaiah said many things which were hard for many of my people to understand, because they didn't know how the Jewish interpreted scripture. ³ I haven't taught them a lot about what the Jewish people believed, because I believe the Jewish people were misled. ⁴ I write to my people and to everyone who accepts my writings so they can come closer to God and know how God treats humanity. ⁵ My people, who are a part of the family of Israel, listen to what I say! The words of Isaiah may be confusing to you, but to those who are filled with the Spirit of prophecy they are easy to understand. ⁶ The Spirit helps me prophesy to you in a way that is easy for you to understand. I have spoken this plainly to you since I left Jerusalem with my father. ⁷ I love speaking plainly to my people so that they can learn.

⁸ I love reading the words of Isaiah because I too came from Jerusalem and have seen the actions of the Jewish people. I know that the Jewish people understand how the prophets prophesied. No one is able to understand what the prophets have said unless they are familiar with the Jewish people. ⁹ I grew up in Jerusalem, but will not be raising my children like how I was raised among the Jewish people. ¹⁰ Instead, I have taught my children about God and the prophecies of the prophets (including Isaiah).

Nephi's Prophecies

The Jewish People

The Jewish People in Jerusalem

¹¹ I would like to give some of my own prophecies about what I think is the best way to live.

¹² People will know when Isaiah's prophecies are being fulfilled. ¹³ These prophecies are valuable to humanity. I want to speak to those among my people that say that they are not. ¹⁴ I believe that they will be valuable to those in the last days. In that day they will understand the prophecies. They're so valuable that I wanted to repeat them with my own writings! ¹⁵ Many generations of the Jewish people have been destroyed because of their wickedness. ¹⁶ However, the Divine has always sent prophets to try and help them give up their wickedness. ¹⁷ The prophets told Jerusalem what would happen to them right after my father left the city. ¹⁸ Despite the pleadings of the prophets those in the city of Jerusalem hardened their hearts. I'm here to prophecy to you that the city of Jerusalem has now been destroyed or been carried away as captives into Babylon.

¹⁹ I say this to you because the Spirit compels me to. ²⁰ Its true that the city of Jerusalem has been carried away as captives into Babylon, but one day they will return and take their

homeland back. ²¹ They will have wars and rumors of wars. When the Divine comes to join humanity they will reject Him due to their wickedness, hard hearts, and stubbornness. ²² They will crucify the Divine. After He is laid in His tomb for three days He will rise from the dead with healing in His wings. Everyone who trusts Him will be freed in the Divine's realm. ²³ I am filled with joy when I prophesy about Him. I have seen his day and my heart magnifies His holy name.

²⁴ After the Messiah has risen from the dead and visited my people, then Jerusalem will be destroyed again. Woe to those that fight the Divine and Their people! ²⁵ The Jewish people will be scattered across the world and Babylon will be destroyed.

Israel Will Be Restored

²⁶ After the Jewish people have been scattered, and the nations of the earth have treated them harshly for many generations, they will accept Christ as the Son of God and his infinite atonement for humanity. ²⁷ When that day comes they will trust Christ and worship the Creator in His name. They will have pure hearts, clean hands, and stop anticipating a coming Messiah. They will understand that it is wise to believe these things. ²⁸ The Divine will restore Their people from their lost and fallen states. ²⁹ They will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among humanity.

³⁰ The Divine will bring Their words to the Jewish people. These words will be used as a metric when reviewing the Jewish peoples' lives at the last day. ³¹ They will be given these words in order to convince them who the true Messiah is, who will be rejected by their ancestors. ³² These words will also be used to convince them that they don't need to look for the Messiah anymore. ³³ Anyone who comes and claims to be the Messiah is being deceptive. ³⁴ The prophets only spoke of one messiah, and he will be rejected by the Jewish people. ³⁵ According to the prophecies of the prophets, the Messiah will come six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem. ³⁶ According to the prophets, as well as the angel who spoke to me, the Messiah's name will be Jesus Christ, and he will be the Son of God.

³⁷ I have spoken clearly so you can't misunderstand me. ³⁸ God is powerful enough to bring Israel out of Egypt! God is powerful enough to give Moses the power to heal people from poisonous snake bites if they looked at a serpent on a rod! God is powerful enough to give Moses the power to hit a rock so water would gush out! ³⁹ Just as those things are true, it is also true that Jesus Christ is the only way humanity can be freed.

⁴⁰ The Divine has promised me that what I write will be kept safe as I pass them on to my descendants and continue to be passed from generation-to-generation. This will fulfill the promise to Joseph, which said that his descendants will not be destroyed as long as the earth exists. ⁴¹ These writings will be passed from generation-to-generation as long as the earth exists! They will go as the Divine wishes. ⁴² Those that possess these writings will be reviewed and assessed by them.

The Nephites

The Law Points To Christ

⁴³ We make these writings to persuade our descendants and our relatives to trust Christ and reconcile with God. ⁴⁴ We know that after we have done everything that we can, we are freed by grace. ⁴⁵ Even though we trust Christ we still keep the law of Moses. We eagerly look forward to Christ and when he will fulfill the law, which is why the law was given in the first place. ⁴⁶ The law is dead to us and we are brought to life by Christ because of our faith. ⁴⁷ Yet, for now, we keep the law of Moses because we are asked to. ⁴⁸ We talk about Christ, we are filled with joy because of Christ, we teach about Christ, and we prophesy about Christ. We write our prophecies down so our descendants can learn about how to fix their mistakes. ⁴⁹ We talk about the law of Moses so our descendants will know how dead it is. ⁵⁰ Since they know how dead the law is they will look forward to the life that Christ brings and realize why the law was given. ⁵¹ After the law is fulfilled by Christ they shouldn't be upset by Him and reject Him; they should be doing away with the law.

⁵² You, my people, are very stubborn. I have spoken very clearly to you so you couldn't misunderstand. ⁵³ The things I've taught you will stand as a testament against you, because they are enough to teach anyone the right way. ⁵⁴ The right way is to trust Christ and not reject him. If you reject him you also reject the prophets and the law. ⁵⁵ The right way is to trust Christ, the Holy One of Israel, and not reject him. ⁵⁶ You should have humility, trust the Divine, and worship Christ with all your strength, mind, and power of our soul. If you do this you will not be thrown out. ⁵⁷ You should keep the law of Moses until the law is fulfilled by Christ.

Christ Will Visit The Nephites

⁵⁸ After Christ has risen from the dead he will show himself to you, my descendants, as well as the descendants of my siblings. ⁵⁹ The things which he will teach you will be the things you should do. ⁶⁰ I have seen that many generations will pass away and there will be great wars and contentions among my people. ⁶¹ There will be a sign for my people which signals the birth of the Messiah as well as his death and resurrection. ⁶² That day will be a terrible day for the wicked, because they will die. ⁶³ They will die because they threw out the prophets and the saints and killed them by stoning them. ⁶⁴ The blood of the saints will cry out to God against them.

⁶⁵ The Divine says "All those prideful and wicked people will be burned up like dry grass on that day. ⁶⁶ Those that kill the prophets and saints will be swallowed up by the earth. ⁶⁷ Mountains will cover them, whirlwinds will blow them away, buildings will fall on them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder. ⁶⁸ They will be visited with thunder, lightning, earthquakes, and all sorts of destruction. ⁶⁹ The Divine will be angry with them. They will be like dry grass and the day will come that they will burn."

The Nephites Will Be Destroyed

⁷⁰ My soul is filled with pain and anguish because of the loss of my slain people! ⁷¹ I have seen it and it almost destroyed me while I was with the Divine. I must cry to my God, "I trust that

[your ways are just](#)". ⁷² Those righteous people who listen to the words of the prophets, instead of killing them, and eagerly look forward to Christ and the signs that announce him will not die, despite the hardships they will endure. ⁷³ The Son of Righteousness will appear to them, heal them, and have peace with them. They will have this peace and righteousness for three full generations, and many of a fourth generation as well.

⁷⁴ When these things happen my people will quickly be destroyed. Even though it kills me, I have seen it and know it will happen. ⁷⁵ They sell themselves for nothing but pride. The reward for their pride and foolishness will be destruction. ⁷⁶ Because they give themselves to the Devil and choose works of darkness instead of light, they must go down to hell. The Spirit of the Divine won't always work with people. ⁷⁷ When the Spirit stops working with someone then a speedy destruction is sure to follow, and this grieves my soul.

The Coming of the Book of Mormon

⁷⁸ I talked about how the Jewish people need to realize that Jesus is the Messiah, the Eternal God, but the non-Jewish people also need to realize this. He will show himself to anyone who trusts him by the power of the Holy Ghost. ⁷⁹ He shows himself to every nation, family, language, and people! He performs wonderful miracles and gives signs to humanity if they trust Him.

⁸⁰ I will prophesy to you about the last days when the Divine will make these things reality. ⁸¹ After my descendants and the descendants of my brothers no longer trust the Divine and have been killed by the non-Jewish people, ⁸² that is to say after the Divine allows their enemies to surround and overpower them ⁸³ and are almost completely destroyed, the words of the righteous will still be written, prayers will be heard, and those who don't trust the Divine won't be forgotten. ⁸⁴ Their ancestors who were destroyed will whisper to them from the grave with their writings, and these writings will sound familiar. ⁸⁵ The Divine will give these ancestors the power to whisper to their descendants.

⁸⁶ The Divine says ["The Nephites will write their history in a book which will be protected. Those that don't trust the Divine won't have access to this book because they would want to destroy it. ⁸⁷ Those who seek to destroy it will themselves be destroyed quickly. They will burn as quickly as dry grass. ⁸⁸ This will happen in an instant!"](#)

The Non-Jewish People

The Churches of the Non-Jewish People

⁸⁹ Inevitably those that don't trust the Divine will be killed by the non-Jewish people. ⁹⁰ The non-Jewish people have made a lot of mistakes because of their pride, including starting many churches. ⁹¹ They deny God's power and miracles and teach their own wisdom and understanding so they can get rich and control the poor. ⁹² Many of these churches are the source of envy, fighting, and malice. ⁹³ There are secret and evil groups, just like there were in olden days. The Devil is their founder of all of them! He is the founder of murder and evil! ⁹⁴ He ties a noose around their neck and keeps them bound forever.

All Are Invited To Christ

⁹⁵ My beloved family and friends, God does not work in darkness. ⁹⁶ The Divine does nothing except help the world, because the Divine loves the world. The Divine loves the world so much that They are willing to die for it to get closer to all of humanity. ⁹⁷ The Divine doesn't bar anyone from enjoying Their freedom. ⁹⁸ Does the Divine turn anyone away? ⁹⁹ No! The Divine says "Everyone, come to me! Have milk and honey without having to pay for it." ¹⁰⁰ Does the Divine force people out of churches? ¹⁰¹ No! ¹⁰² Does the Divine bar anyone from enjoying freedom? ¹⁰³ No! The Divine freely gives it to all of humanity, but the Divine wants us to seek reconciliation. ¹⁰⁴ Does the Divine tell people not to enjoy the goodness of God? ¹⁰⁵ No! The Divine treats everyone equally and doesn't turn away anyone. ¹⁰⁶ The Divine tells us not to engage in priestcraft, which is when people teach in order to gain worldly notoriety and praise instead of seeking the welfare of Zion. ¹⁰⁷ The Divine has forbidden priestcraft.

God has told us to be charitable. Being charitable is a form of love. ¹⁰⁸ If you don't have charity you have nothing. If you have charity you won't allow anyone who works to build Zion to die. ¹⁰⁹ Those who work to build Zion should work to build Zion; if they end up working for money and worldly notoriety they will die.

¹¹⁰ The Divine said not to murder, lie, steal, wrongly speak for the Divine, be envious, have malice, fight with each other, or engage in harmful sexuality. ¹¹¹ Those that do this will die. The Divine doesn't condone any of this.

The Divine does good among humanity. ¹¹² The Divine doesn't do anything that humanity won't understand. ¹¹³ The Divine invites everyone to learn about Their goodness. ¹¹⁴ No one is denied, regardless of if they're black or white, enslaved or free, male or female, ¹¹⁵ Jewish or non-Jewish. The Divine even remembers those that don't know the Divine. Everyone is equal to the Divine.

Destruction Of The Wicked

¹¹⁶ In the last days, the days of the non-Jewish people, all of the nations of the Jewish people in the world will be drunk with wickedness.

Isaiah 29:6-32

¹¹⁷ The day will come when the Divine will come with thunder, earthquakes, loud noises, storms and tempests, and a devouring flame!

¹¹⁸ All the nations will fight against and distress Zion will be remembered like a dream. ¹¹⁹ They will be like hungry people who eat in their sleep, but when they wake up they are still hungry. ¹²⁰ They will be like thirsty people who drink in their sleep, but when they wake up they are weak and still thirsty. ¹²¹ This will be how it is for all the nations that fight against Zion.

¹²² If you do evil things, take a moment to think about this because you will shout and cry; you will be drunk, but not with wine; you will stagger, but not because of alcohol. ¹²³ The Divine has

made you very sleepy ¹²⁴ because you have closed your eyes and rejected the prophets and leaders. The Divine doesn't let seers see because of your wickedness.

Translation of the Golden Plates

¹²⁵ The Divine will bring you a book from those who have passed away. ¹²⁶ The book will be protected and it will be a revelation of the world from its beginning to its end. ¹²⁷ Because this book is protected it will not be given when humanity is wicked. ¹²⁸ The book will be kept from them. ¹²⁹ The book will be given to a man who will read the words of those who have passed away aloud to another man who will write them down; the book itself will not be given to the transcriber. ¹³⁰ The book, along with its revelations, will be protected by the power of God until God chooses the right time. This book will reveal all the things from the beginning of the world to its end. ¹³¹ The day will come that the words in this book will be shouted from the rooftops with the power of Christ! ¹³² Everything which humanity has ever done or ever will do will be shown to all of humanity!

¹³³ When that book is delivered to the man that I spoke of it will be hidden from the world and, except the man it was given to, no one will be able to see it except three witnesses. They will see it with the power of God. They will testify of the truth of the book and the things that it says.

¹³⁴ Only a few people will be able to see it, and even then it will only with the power of God. They will be permitted to see it in order to teach what the Divine says to others. The Divine has said that the words of the righteous authors of the book should speak from the grave. ¹³⁵ The Divine will bring the words of the book forward! There will be as many witnesses as the Divine thinks is necessary. Woe to those that reject the word of God!

¹³⁶ One day the Divine will say to the man who has the book "Take the words which are not sealed and give them to an educated person and ask him to read it." ¹³⁷ The educated person will say "Bring me the book and I will read it." ¹³⁸ The educated person will say this in order to gain notoriety in the world and get rich off of it, and not because he wants to glorify God. ¹³⁹ The man will say "I cannot give you the book, because it is protected." The educated person will say "Then I cannot read it."

¹⁴¹ Then God will give the book back to the uneducated man and he will say "I am not educated." ¹⁴² The Divine will say to him "The educated will not read them, because they reject them. I am still able to do my work. I want you to read the words which I will give to you. ¹⁴³ Don't touch the protected book, because I will bring them out when the time is right. I want to show humanity that I am able to do my own work. ¹⁴⁴ When you read the words that I ask you to read and have gotten the witnesses I have asked you to get, then I want you to protect the book again by giving it back to me. This way I can preserve the words that you haven't read until I decide to give the rest to humanity. ¹⁴⁵ I am God, and I am a god of miracles. I will show the world that I am the same God that I was yesterday, that I am today, and will be tomorrow. I don't do anything for humanity unless they trust me."

A Marvelous Work And A Wonder (Isaiah 29:13-24)

¹⁴⁶ The Divine will say to him who reads the book aloud: “Humanity speaks well of me and loves me, but they don’t know me. They only know me through the concepts that people make up about me. That is why I will do a marvelous work among humanity. ¹⁴⁷ This will be a marvelous and wonderful work! It will destroy the concepts of me that have been established and it will confuse the educated.

¹⁴⁸ Woe to those that go to great lengths to hide their plans from the Divine. ¹⁴⁹ Their works are evil and they will say ‘Who will see? Who will know?’ ¹⁵⁰ They also say ‘You’ve got things all wrong! Should the potter be thought of as clay?’ ¹⁵¹ I will show them that I know everything that they do. ¹⁵² Can the creation say to the creator ‘you didn’t make me!’? ¹⁵³ Can the pottery say to the potter ‘you know nothing’?

¹⁵⁴ Not long from now Lebanon’s orchards will be ready to harvest. ¹⁵⁵ It will be then that even the deaf will hear the words of the book and the blind will see. ¹⁵⁶ The poor and oppressed will be full of joy because of the Divine. ¹⁵⁷ Just as sure as the Divine lives they will see the ruthless vanish, those who taunt will disappear, those who have an eye for evil will be cut off, and those who falsely accuse and lie in court will become nothing.

¹⁵⁸ The house of Jacob will no longer be ashamed or have its face grow pale. ¹⁵⁹ When they see the work I have done among their children they will honor and trust me. ¹⁶⁰ Those that did wrong before will come to understand. Those that complain will gain insight.”

Chapter 12

Nephi Prophecies About Corrupt Churches In The Last Days

¹ Now, my family and friends, the Spirit has compelled me to speak to you and I have done so. I know that these things will happen. ² The things which will be written in this book will be very valuable to humanity, especially to our descendants who are a remnant of the family of Israel.

“One True Church” Mentality

³ One day the churches which have been built, but don't focus on God, will say to each other “I am the Divine's church!” and the other will say “No, I am the Divine's church!” ⁴ All of the churches which don't focus on the Divine will say this. ⁵ They will fight with each other, as will their priests. They will teach about what they know, but disregard the Holy Ghost which speaks to them.

No Continuing Revelation

⁶ They deny the power of the Divine by saying, “Listen to us and learn about our concepts! ⁷ The Divine doesn't speak today, because They have done Their work. We now have the power! ⁸ Listen to my concept! If anyone says a miracle has been performed by the Divine, don't believe it. God is not a god of miracles today; that work has already been done.”

Enjoying Life With Grace VS Taking Advantage of Grace

⁹ There will be many that will say “Life is short. Let's enjoy it while we have it! In the end everything will turn out ok for us” ¹⁰ There will also be those who say “Enjoy life, but also listen to God. The Divine will excuse a little sinning, lying, and taking advantage of your neighbor. There's nothing wrong with this! ¹¹ You can do this because life is short. If God finds us guilty we'll get a slap on the wrist and then go to the Divine's realm.”

Extravagant Churches and Expensive Clothes

¹² There will be many people who teach these false, vain, and foolish things. They are full of pride and want to hide their actions in the dark from God. However, the blood of the saints will cry out from the ground against them. ¹³ They have lost their way and have become corrupted. ¹⁴ Their pride, false teachers, and false teachings have corrupted their churches. They are set up as an example, but they are full of pride. ¹⁵ They rob the poor when they build extravagant churches! They rob the poor when they buy expensive clothing! They oppress the oppressed and the humble because their pride makes them think that they are superior! ¹⁶ They are stubborn and think very highly of themselves. They have all gone astray because of their pride,

wickedness, abominations, and harmful sexuality. The only exception is a couple followers of Christ. ¹⁷ Even then the followers of Christ make mistakes because they were taught human concepts.

Assessments of the Wicked in the Last Days

¹⁸ Oh the wise, educated, rich, prideful, teachers of falsehoods, those who cause harm with their sexuality, and those who corrupt the right ways of the Divine, Almighty God says “Woe, woe, woe be to you! You will be thrown down into hell!” ¹⁹ Woe to those that give up justice for nothing and hate what is good and call it useless! ²⁰ The day will come when the Divine will quickly visit the inhabitants of earth. Those who are full of wickedness will die! ²¹ However, if the inhabitants of earth give up their wickedness they will not be destroyed.”

The Devil's Playbook

²² The great and abominable church must tumble to the earth; its fall will be great! ²³ The Devil's realm will shake and those that belong to it will be compelled to seek reconciliation! Otherwise the devil will grab them with his chains and they will be filled with anger and die. ²⁴ On that day he will rage in the hearts of humanity and make them angry at that which is good.

²⁵ The devil will lull others away into a false sense of security and they will say “Everything is fine in Zion. Zion is prospering and everything is fine!” ²⁶ This is how the devil cheats their souls and carefully leads them to hell.

²⁷ The Devil will flatter others and tell them that there is no hell. He says to them “I am no devil, because there is none”. ²⁸ He whispers these things in their ears until he grabs them with his awful chains! ²⁹ They are held by death and hell! One day they, along with the devil and the rest of hell, must review the lives that they lived with God. Then they will go to the lake of fire and brimstone which was prepared for their Divine punishment.

Woes for the Wicked

³⁰ Woe to those that rest in Zion! ³¹ Woe to those that cry “Everything is fine!” Woe to those that adhere to human concepts and deny the power of God and the gift of the Holy Ghost! ³² Woe to those who say “We have already received the gospel; we don't need any more!” ³³ In short, woe to all those who shake with anger because of Divine truth. ³⁴ Those that build on the Rock will receive Divine truth gladly. Those that build on a sandy foundation will shake until they fall. ³⁵ Woe to those that say “We have already received the word of God and we don't need any more; we have enough!”

The Divine's Playbook

³⁶ The Divine says “I will teach humanity one line at a time, one concept at a time, and little by little. ³⁷ Those who listen to my concepts and listen to my advice will be blessed and gain

wisdom. ³⁸ Those that understand my teachings will be given more to learn. Those that say 'we have learned enough' will forget what they have already been taught. ³⁹ Those that trust humanity and its concepts more than the Divine are cursed.

⁴⁰ Woe be to the non-Jewish people, because they will deny me even though I reach out to them day-after-day! ⁴¹ Regardless, I will be merciful to that seek reconciliation and come to me. I am always reaching out to them.

⁴² I will remember the promises I have made to humanity when I start my marvelous work among the non-Jewish people. I will rescue those in the family of Israel again. ⁴³ I will also remember the promises that I have made to you and your father, Nephi. I will remember your descendants. I will remember the words that your descendants will write and they will go to their descendants. ⁴⁴ My words will hiss forth to the whole world to teach those in the family of Israel. ⁴⁵ Because my words will become so well known the non-Jewish people will say 'We already have the Bible! There cannot be any more scripture!'

⁴⁶ Those fools only have the scriptures from my first covenant people. ⁴⁷ Have they ever thanked the Jewish people for the Bible? ⁴⁸ Do they realize what these scriptures mean? ⁴⁹ Do they remember the traveling, work, pain, and devotion that the Jewish people experienced in order to give the non-Jewish people this book on my behalf? ⁵⁰ Oh, you non-Jewish people, do you remember my first covenant people, the Jewish people? ⁵¹ No! You have cursed and hated them instead of helping them. ⁵² I have not forgotten them, and I will treat you the way you have treated them.

⁵³ You fool who says 'We already have the Bible and there cannot be anymore scripture': ⁵⁴ Do you have any scripture that wasn't given to you by the Jewish people? ⁵⁵ Don't you know there are more people than the Jewish people? ⁵⁶ Don't you realize that I created all of humanity, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea? Don't you realize that I rule in the Heavens above and the earth beneath? ⁵⁷ Don't you realize that I speak to all of humanity? ⁵⁸ Why do you complain that you can read more of what I have to say? ⁵⁹ Don't you realize that when different people's scriptures agree it shows you that I speak to them both?

⁶⁰ I teach the same things to all people. ⁶¹ When two groups of people come together their scriptures will come together as well. ⁶² I do this so I can prove that I was the same yesterday, am the same today, and will be the same forever. I teach people the truth when I want to. ⁶³ You shouldn't assume that just because I have spoken to one people that I can't speak to another. My work is not done yet, and it won't be finished till humanity is finished, and even then it won't truly end.

⁶⁴ Even though you have the Bible you shouldn't assume that it contains everything I've ever said. You shouldn't assume that I haven't had other people write down my teachings. ⁶⁵ I have asked all of humanity in the east, west, north, south, and the islands of the sea to write down the things I have taught them. ⁶⁶ I will review and assess the world based off of these scriptures. Everyone will be reviewed and assessed based on the life that they lived. ⁶⁷ I will speak to the Jewish people and they will write down what I say. ⁶⁸ I will also speak to the Nephites and they

will write down what I say. ⁶⁹ I will also speak to the other tribes of the family of Israel which I have led away and they will write down what I say. ⁷⁰ I will also speak to every people on the earth, and they will write down what I say.

⁷¹ One day the Jewish people will have what the Nephites have written, and the Nephites will have what the Jewish people have written. ⁷² The Nephites and the Jewish people will also have the words of the lost tribes of Israel, and the lost tribes will have the writings of the Nephites and the Jewish people. ⁷³ One day they will all be gathered to their homelands and everything I have taught will be gathered together. ⁷⁴ I will show those that fight against my word and my people, the family of Israel, that I am God and I made a promise to Abraham that I would remember his descendants forever.”

A Prophecy Of The Jewish and Non-Jewish People In The Last Day

⁷⁵ My family and friends, I would like to speak to you. I don't want you to think that you are more righteous than the non-Jewish people will be. ⁷⁶ Unless you take God's advice you will all also die. You don't need to think that the non-Jewish people will be completely destroyed. ⁷⁷ Just as many non-Jewish people will seek reconciliation as the Jewish people. Just as many Jewish people will be cut off as the non-Jewish people. ⁷⁸ The Divine doesn't promise anything to anyone unless they seek reconciliation and trust the Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

⁷⁹ I want to prophesy a bit more about the Jewish people and the non-Jewish people. ⁸⁰ After the book which I spoke about comes forth, is written down by the non-Jewish people, and then goes back to the Divine, there will be many who believe what it says. They will carry these writings to our descendants. ⁸¹ Then our descendants will know about us! They will know that we came from Jerusalem and they are the descendants of the Jewish people. ⁸² The gospel of Jesus Christ will be taught to them! They will learn about their ancestors and Jesus Christ, who will have visited their ancestors. ⁸³ They will rejoice because they will see that this is a blessing from the hand of God. ⁸⁴ Their spiritual blindfolds will fall from their eyes! It won't be many generations will the curse is lifted from them.

⁸⁵ One day the Jewish people who are also scattered will begin to believe in Christ and begin to gather together. ⁸⁶ Those that trust Christ will also become a wonderful people!

Isaiah 11: 4-9

⁸⁷ The Divine will start Their work in every nation, family, language, and people to give them their homelands back. ⁸⁸ The poor and oppressed will be reviewed and assessed fairly. ⁸⁹ The Divine will hit the earth with their words! With the breath of Their lips They will kill the wicked! ⁹⁰ The time will come that the Divine will allow a great division among humanity. The wicked will be destroyed while the righteous will be saved. The righteous will be saved even if it means burning the wicked with fire. ⁹¹ This will be done by God with righteousness and faithfulness.

⁹² When this happens wolves will live with lambs, leopards will lie down with young goats, calves and lions will be together, and a child will lead them. ⁹³ The cow and the bear will eat together and their offspring will lie down together. The lion will eat hay right alongside the ox. ⁹⁴ Toddlers will play with cobras and put their hands in cobras' dens. ⁹⁵ They will not kill or hurt each other in my holy place. The earth will know all about the Divine just as water fills the sea.

⁹⁶ The things that every nation does will be known among humanity. ⁹⁷ There will be no secrets because they will all be exposed. There will be no evil deeds which are hidden that won't have a light shone upon them. There is nothing so protected on earth that it won't be exposed. ⁹⁸ Everything that hasn't been shown to humanity will be shown at that day. ⁹⁹ Satan won't have a hold on humanity for a long time.

¹⁰⁰ Now, my beloved family and friends, I must finish speaking.

Chapter 13

The Doctrine of Christ

God Speaks Plainly

¹ Now I will stop prophesying to you, my beloved family and friends. ² I can only write a few things which I know will eventually happen. I can also only write a couple of the things that my brother Jacob taught. ³ The things which I have written are good enough for me. However, I would like to talk a little bit more about the doctrine of Christ. I will speak to you plainly. ⁴ I love it when something is easy to understand, and I think God works in this way. ⁵ God teaches in ways people will understand and in their own language.

Need For Baptism

⁶ I have spoken before about the prophet who was shown to me. He will baptize the Lamb of God who will wipe away the world's mistakes. ⁷ If even the Lamb of God, who is holy, is baptized to be completely righteous, can you imagine how much more important it is for us?

⁸ Why did Christ need to be baptized by water to be completely righteous? Don't you know that he is holy? ⁹ Even though he was already holy he showed humanity that even while he joined humanity he submitted to the Creator. He showed the Creator that he would take the Creator's advice. ¹⁰ After he was baptized with water, the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove. ¹¹ This also showed humanity the path to Heaven is straight and the gate to Heaven is narrow. He showed us how to walk this path and enter through the gate. ¹² He said to humanity "Follow me". ¹³ How can we follow Jesus unless we are willing to take the Creator's advice? ¹⁴ The Creator said "Give up your wickedness, seek reconciliation, and be baptized in the name of my beloved Son!" ¹⁵ The voice of the Son came to me and said "The Creator will give the Holy Ghost to those that are baptized in my name, just as the Creator gave me the Holy Ghost. Follow my example and do the things that you have seen me do."

Endure to the End

¹⁶ My beloved family and friends, I know that if you follow the example of the Son as best you can, don't act hypocritically, genuinely seek reconciliation, and show the Creator that you are willing to take the name of Christ upon yourself by emulating the Emancipator and getting baptized, then you will receive the Holy Ghost. ¹⁷ After that you will be baptized with the fire of the Holy Ghost. You will be able to speak like angels and shout praises to the Divine!

¹⁸ However, my beloved family and friends, a voice of the Son came to me and said "After you have reconciled, shown the Creator that you are willing to take my advice by being baptized in water, have had the baptism of fire by the Holy Ghost, and can speak like the angels - but then

turn around and you pretend like you had never known me - then it would have been better if you hadn't known me in the first place."

¹⁹ I also heard a voice from the Creator, saying "The words of my beloved Son are good and true. ²⁰ Those that endure to the end will be freed." ²¹ My beloved family and friends, I know that you can't be freed unless you follow the example of the Son your entire lives.

Baptism is the Gate

²² Do the things that I have told you; they are the things that the Divine will do. I have seen these things be done by the Divine! ²³ They were shown to me so that you can know the gate which you should enter. ²⁴ The gate which you should enter is reconciliation and being baptized in water. After that you will be baptized by fire with the Holy Ghost. ²⁵ After this you will taken all of the advice of the Creator and Son and will have entered through the gate and will be on the straight and narrow path which leads to eternal life. ²⁶ You will have been given the Holy Ghost which testifies of the Creator and Son. You will be given the Holy Ghost to fulfill the promise that if you entered through this gate you would receive it.

The Way to Eternal Life

²⁷ Now, my beloved family and friends, after you are on this straight and narrow path, is that all you need to do? ²⁸ No! You wouldn't have gotten this far if it weren't for your trust in Christ and His teachings. ²⁹ You must continue moving forward while continuing to trust Christ. As you continue moving forward try to have a hopeful outlook, love God, and love all of humanity. ³⁰ If you continue doing this while feasting upon the teachings of Christ the rest of your life, then the Creator will say "You will have eternal life".

³¹ My beloved family and friends, this is the way! There is no other way or person under Heaven that can help you enter the Divine's realm. ³² This is the doctrine of Christ, which is the only true doctrine of the Creator, Son, and Holy Ghost, who are one God without end. Amen.

Chapter 14

Clarifications By Nephi

¹ My beloved family and friends, I am guessing that you are wondering what you should do after you have been baptized. ² Why is this a mystery to you? Don't you remember that I told you that after you received the Holy Ghost that you would be able to speak like angels? ³ How could you speak like angels if the Holy Ghost wasn't helping you? Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost and speak the words of Christ. ⁴ I already told you "[Feast upon the words of Christ. They will tell you everything that you should do.](#)"

⁵ This is the last time I am going to tell you that. If you still don't understand it because you haven't studied and prayed about it. You have to do this if you want to be saved. ⁶ If you are baptized and receive the Holy Ghost it will show you everything that you need to do. ⁷ This is the doctrine of Christ! There will be no more doctrine given until after he visits you in the flesh. ⁸ When he visits you in the flesh you will do what he teaches you.

⁹ Now I can't say anymore; the Spirit compels me to stop. I am left to mourn because of the distrust, wickedness, ignorance, and stubbornness of humanity. They don't have interest in searching out knowledge or understanding even when it is so easy to understand.

¹⁰ My beloved family and friends, I sense that you still have questions regarding this. It makes me sad that I still have to speak on this topic to you. ¹¹ The Spirit teaches everyone to pray, just listen to it! If you listened to the Spirit you would know you have to pray about this. The evil spirit teaches you not to pray! ¹² You have to always keep praying; don't give up! You shouldn't do anything for the Divine unless you pray to the Creator in the name of Christ first. If you do this They will bless you and it will help your soul.

Chapter 15

Nephi Concludes His Record

¹ Now I, Nephi, cannot write down everything that has been taught among the Nephites. I am not a skilled writer or speaker. However, when someone speaks with the power of the Holy Ghost, the Spirit helps convey the message. ² There are many who ignore the Holy Spirit and give it no room in their hearts. They throw away many of the things which have been written as if they were useless. ³ I think what I have written is valuable, especially for my people. ⁴ I pray for my people every day and my eyes water my pillow because of them every night. I pray to my God in faith, and I know my prayers are heard. I know that the Divine will make sure my prayers help my people.

⁵ Even though I'm not a great writer the Divine will make the things I have written help my people. My writings encourage people to live good lives and learn about their ancestors; they speak of Jesus and encourage people to trust Him; they encourage people to endure to the end in order to gain eternal life. ⁶ My writings are clearly brutally honest to wickedness. However, no one will be angry about what I have written unless they have the spirit of the Devil.

Nephi's Final Testimony

⁷ I love plainness! I love truth! I love Jesus, because he has freed me from hell! ⁸ I love my people, and I trust in Christ that I will find many spotless souls on the last day. ⁹ I love the Jewish people back in Jerusalem. I also love the non-Jewish people. ¹⁰ However, none of these people can be saved unless they reconcile with Christ, enter through the narrow gate by getting baptized, walk the straight path till the end of their lives.

¹¹ My beloved family and friends, Jewish people, and everyone of earth, listen to these words and trust Christ. Even if you don't listen to these words, trust Christ! ¹² If you trust Christ you will likely listen to these words, because they are the words that Christ has spoken to me. They teach that everyone should do good. ¹³ Decide for yourself if they are Christ's words. Christ will show you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are His words. ¹⁴ You and I will stand face-to-face at the last day and you will know that, despite my weakness, God told me to write these things. ¹⁵ I pray to the Creator in Christ's name that many of us, if not all of us, will enter the Divine's realm at the great and last day. ¹⁶ Now, my beloved family and friends, all those who are a part of the family of Israel, and everyone on earth, I speak to you from the grave: Farewell until the great day comes. ¹⁷ To those that don't partake of the goodness of God, won't listen to the Jewish people, won't listen to my words, or listen to the words that the Lamb of God has said, I bid you an everlasting farewell. These writings will condemn you at the last day. ¹⁸ What I protect on earth will be used against you on the last day. The Divine asked me to write these things, and I must obey. Amen.

The Book of Jacob

Chapter 1

Jacob Is Given The Record

¹ Fifty-five years after Lehi and Sariah left Jerusalem Nephi told me, Jacob, about how to keep these small plates where these writings are engraved. ² He told me that I should write down the things that I think are precious upon these plates and not write a lot about our Nephite history. ³ He said that the history should be engraved upon the other, larger plates that he created. He told me that both of these plates should be handed down to my descendants from generation-to-generation. ⁴ I was told to write down as many sacred preachings, great revelations, and prophecies as I could for Christ's sake as well as for the Nephites's sake.

⁵ The Divine showed us the future of our people because of our faith and our anxiety about our future. ⁶ We had many revelations and prophecies and knew that Christ and his realm would come. ⁷ We worked hard to persuade the Nephites to come to Christ and partake in the goodness of God. This way they would be able to be with the Divine. If they didn't, the Divine would be irritated and not permit them to be near, like the Israelites who wandered in the desert. ⁸ We want to persuade everyone not to rebel against God, which only irritates the Divine. Instead we want everyone to trust Christ! We want them to see the death and suffering that He will endure on the cross so he could bear the shame of the world.

I will try to do everything that my brother Nephi has asked me.

State Of Affairs

⁹ Nephi saw that he was growing old and he would soon die. That is why he chose someone to be a king for the Nephites, just as how the kings reigned in Israel. ¹⁰ The Nephites loved Nephi dearly. He had wielded Laban's sword and been a defender and protector for them his entire life. The Nephites wanted to memorialize him. ¹¹ His successors were named after him. His first successor was called "second Nephi", their successor was called "third Nephi", and so on, despite what their actual names may be.

¹² Then Nephi died.

¹³ There were many groups of people, such as the Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites. However, they were broadly called either Nephites or Lamanites. ¹⁴ I won't call them by their individual names, but call those who wanted to destroy the Nephites "Lamanites". Likewise I will call all those who were friendly to the Nephites "Nephites".

¹⁵ The Nephites began to grow wicked under the reign of their second king. They indulged in having many wives and mistresses like the old kings David and Solomon did. ¹⁶ They lusted for gold and silver and were prideful.

¹⁷ I, Jacob, was told by the Divine to tell them about these things at the temple. ¹⁸ I and my brother Joseph did this because our brother set us apart as priests and teachers to the Nephites. ¹⁹ We took our responsibilities seriously and did our best to tell people about their wickedness on behalf of the Divine. We would have had to answer to the Divine if we hadn't done our best to teach the Nephites. ²⁰ By working hard we wouldn't have any blame, and the Divine would see that. However, if we didn't work hard the Divine would blame us as well.

Chapter 2

Jacob's Sermon

Jacob feels bad he must condemn the wicked in front of the innocent

¹ These are the things that I spoke to the Nephites after the death of Nephi:

² “My beloved family and friends I want to declare the word of God to you today with soberness in the temple. I feel responsible to do this as your priest and teacher so that I myself am not found guilty. ³ You know that I have taken my responsibilities as a priest and teacher very seriously. However, today I am much more concerned and anxious about the welfare of your souls than I have been in the past.

⁴ So far you have listened to what the Divine has had me tell you. ⁵ Listen to me now! With the help of the all-powerful Creator of Heaven and Earth I know what you're thinking and how you are beginning to become wicked. The mistakes you are making are deplorable to me and God! ⁶ I have to tell you about the wickedness of your hearts, but it fills me with sadness and makes me want to shamefully give up.

⁷ It also fills me with sadness that I have to speak to you so boldly in front of your spouses and children, because God loves their innocence. ⁸ I am guessing they came up here to hear Divinely healing and comforting words. ⁹ It is so difficult to be compelled to speak to you about your mistakes as God has asked me to do, because your spouses and children are already hurting and this will just hurt them even more. I would rather console them. ¹⁰ Instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God, they will be stabbed with daggers straight to their soul and their obliviousness will be wounded.

¹¹ Regardless of how I feel, I have to do what God has asked me to do and talk to you about your wickedness and abominations in front of their pure and broken hearts under the gaze of God's piercing eyes.

Wealth And Pride

¹² I have to tell you the truth as God clearly told me to do. ¹³ I asked the Divine and They spoke to me and said: ‘Jacob, go to the temple tomorrow and declare the things which I will tell you to the Nephites’. ¹⁴ This is the thing that I need to declare to you: You have been lusting after gold, silver, and many other precious ores which can easily be found in this land, which was promised to you and your descendants, and provides enough for all of us. ¹⁵ The Divine has smiled upon you and you have been given many riches. ¹⁶ Since some of you have more than others, you are filled with pride and stubbornness while you wear expensive clothes and oppress others. You think you are better than the poor.

¹⁷ My family and friends, do you think that God is okay with this? I'm here to tell you that They're not. ¹⁸ The Divine condemns you for this, and if you keep doing this the Divine will have to come deal with you sooner rather than later. ¹⁹ I wish I could show you the Divine's power, and how you could be destroyed with just a glance. ²⁰ I wish the Divine would stop you from engaging in your wickedness and abominations! ²¹ I wish you would listen to the advice that the Divine gives and not let your pride destroy your hearts and souls.

²² Think of your family and friends as you would think of yourself. You should be friends with everyone and give your riches to everyone so they can be rich like you. ²³ Pursue the Divine's realm before you pursue riches. ²⁴ After you trust Christ then you can get your riches, if you even still want them. If you get rich, use it for good by clothing the naked, feeding the hungry, liberating the captive, and healing the sick.

²⁵ My family and friends, I have spoken to you about pride. To those of you who have hurt and persecuted your neighbor because of your pride and the riches God has given you: what do you have to say for yourselves? ²⁶ Don't you think that God hates these things? ²⁷ One person is just as precious to God as another. ²⁸ Everyone was created out of dust by God! We should take God's advice and glorify the Divine!

Unauthorized Polygamy

²⁹ Now, I will finish talking to you about pride.

³⁰ I would be happy if I didn't have to talk to you about something even worse. ³¹ However, the Divine wants me to talk to you about your even bigger mistakes. ³² The Divine says: 'This people is beginning to be wicked! You don't understand the scriptures and justify your harmful sexuality by pointing to David and Solomon. ³³ David and Solomon had many wives and mistresses, but I did not approve of it.

³⁴ I led this people out of the land of Jerusalem with the strength of my arm so that I could raise up a righteous branch from the descendants of Joseph. ³⁵ I won't put up with the same behavior that the people of old engaged in. ³⁶ No one will have more than one wife and they will have no mistresses. I love the sexual wholesomeness of women. ³⁷ I deplore harmful sexuality. ³⁸ Take my advice or suffer the consequences. ³⁹ If I want my people to have more children I will tell the men to marry more than one wife. However, they shouldn't until I tell them to.

⁴⁰ I have seen the sorrow and heard the cries of my daughters in Jerusalem and everywhere else because of the wickedness of their husbands. ⁴¹ I will not tolerate hearing the cries of the Nephite women because of the Nephite men. ⁴² I will not let them take advantage of my daughters' kind hearts. I would rather destroy the men than let that happen. ⁴³ The men will not use their sexuality to harm women as was done in the past.'

⁴⁴ My brothers, you know that our father Lehi was told this! You are very guilty because you've done things that you knew that you shouldn't have. ⁴⁵ You have been more wicked than our brothers, the Lamanites! ⁴⁶ You have broken your wives' hearts and your children no longer trust

you because you have been bad role models for them. Their crying hearts are heard by God and speak against you. ⁴⁷ Many have died of a broken heart; a broken heart which you caused.

Praises to the Lamanites

⁴⁸ I want to speak to those with a pure heart: ⁴⁹ Focus on looking to God. Pray to God and trust that you will be consoled during your hardships. God will take your side and send down justice to those who want to destroy you. ⁵⁰ Lift up your heads and listen to the pleasing word of God. Feast upon the love! You can constantly have this love if you focus on looking to God.

⁵¹ Woe, to those who don't have a pure heart. If you don't seek reconciliation, then this land will be cursed. ⁵² The Lamanites, who are cursed with a terrible curse, are not as wicked as you are. They will destroy you! ⁵³ They will soon destroy you and take your land if you don't give up your wicked ways! The Divine will lead the righteous away to protect them before this happens.

⁵⁴ Look at the Lamanites! You hate them because of their wickedness and their curse which has come upon their skin, yet they are more righteous than you are. ⁵⁵ They haven't forgotten that our ancestors were told to only have one wife, no concubines, and not engage in harmful sexuality. ⁵⁶ They don't do these things, which means that the Divine won't destroy them and will be merciful to them. One day they will become a blessed people.

⁵⁷ The spouses love each other, and the parents love their children. ⁵⁸ The fact is that they don't trust the Divine and they hate you because of what their ancestors taught them. What makes you think that the Divine thinks more highly of you? ⁵⁹ My brothers, I fear that if you don't seek reconciliation, then their skins will be whiter than yours when you stand before God.

Nephite Racism Is Addressed

⁶⁰ The Divine wants me to tell you something: 'Don't hate the Lamanites because of their dark skins or wickedness anymore. ⁶¹ Remember that they weren't taught better by their ancestors. Instead of thinking about their wickedness, think about your own. ⁶² Think of your children and how sad you made them by being a bad role model. ⁶³ Think about how you may end up killing your kids if you continue your wicked ways. On the last day you will be held responsible for what you taught your children.'

⁶⁴ My brothers, listen to me! Wake up from this fantasy which brings you closer to death! ⁶⁵ Free yourselves from the pains of hell so you don't become an angel of the devil who is thrown into the lake of fire and brimstone to suffer another death!"

⁶⁶ I said a lot more to the Nephites. I warned them to not use their sexuality in any harmful ways and told them the consequences of if they did. ⁶⁷ My people had a lot of history and I couldn't even write down a hundredth of it upon these plates. ⁶⁸ A lot of the history is written on the larger plates, including the wars, fights, and reigns of the kings. ⁶⁹ These plates are called the plates of Jacob and were made by Nephi.

⁷⁰ These are all the things I taught the Nephites after Nephi passed away.

Chapter 3

Jacob's Purpose For Writing

¹ I have spoken a lot to my people, but can only write a little bit of my words on these plates because of how difficult it is to engrave. We know that the things which are written here will remain forever. ² If we write our words upon anything else, there is a chance they will fade with time. We write these things so our descendants, and eventually the Lamanites, will know about us and our ancestors. ³ Doing this fills us with joy! We work hard and hope one day that our descendants and the Lamanites will appreciate our work. We hope that they are filled with joy when they learn about us and our ancestors through this book, and not filled with sorrow or contempt for Laman and Lemuel. ⁴ Our intention for writing these things was so they would come to know Christ. We are the latest generation who waits for his glorious coming, which is still many hundreds of years from now.

Prophets Testify Of Christ and the Power of God

⁵ Those prophets from previous generations believed in Christ and worshipped the Creator in his name. We now do the same thing. ⁶ We worship Him by keeping the Law of Moses, because it points our souls to Him. Following the Law of Moses is the right thing for us to do in the same way that it was the right thing for Abraham to offer his son Issac as a sacrifice; it helps us come closer to the Creator and the Son.

⁷ We study the scriptures, have many revelations, and have the spirit of prophecy! These things give us hope and strengthen our faith to the point that we can command in the name of Jesus and even the trees, mountains, or the waves of the sea would obey us. ⁸ The Divine shows us our limitations, so we know that it is by the Divine's grace and presence among humanity that we have the power to do these things.

⁹ The Divine's work is great and marvelous! ¹⁰ There is no bottom to the depths of the mysteries of the Divine. It is impossible for humanity to discover them all! ¹¹ No one knows of the Divine's ways unless They show them. That is why you shouldn't hate the revelations of God! ¹² Humanity and the earth itself were created by the power of the Divine's word. ¹³ If God is able to create the world and all of humanity with just Their word, why would They not be able to give advice to the earth or those They created upon it?

¹⁴ My family and friends, you don't tell the Divine what to do, but listen to the Divine when They tell you to do something. ¹⁵ You know that the Divine gives wise, justice-filled, and merciful advice in everything that They do. ¹⁶ That is why you should reconcile with the Divine through the atonement of Christ, the Son. ¹⁷ If you do this you will be resurrected with the power of Christ! Because of your trust in Christ, even before he joins humanity, you will be presented to God as the best that Christ has to offer.

The Jewish People Will Reject Christ

¹⁸ Don't be amazed that I am telling you these things. Why shouldn't we talk about the atonement? Why shouldn't we seek to understand the Divine, the resurrection, and the afterlife?

¹⁹ To those that prophesy: try to prophesy in a way that others can understand. The Spirit will speak the truth and will not lie. ²⁰ The Spirit speaks of things as they really are and will be. These things are plainly shown to us to free our souls.

²¹ We aren't the only people who speak of this; God also spoke to prophets a long time ago. ²² However, the Jewish people were stubborn and hated these plain words so much that they killed those prophets. They wanted to learn about things that they could not understand. ²³ They looked beyond the mark and became blind, and they will fall because of it. ²⁴ Since they wanted things they didn't understand, God has stopped speaking so plainly to them and gave them what they wanted: things which they cannot understand. ²⁵ God did what they wanted, and now many of them struggle because of it.

²⁶ Now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit of prophecy! I perceive that the Jewish people will reject Christ, who is the rock upon which they could build a safe foundation. ²⁷ The scriptures say that the rock will become the great, last, and only foundation upon which they could build. ²⁸ Now, my family and friends, if they reject the safe foundation, how could they build? ²⁹ I will tell you how! I only hope that I am able to listen to the Spirit and not make any mistakes due to my anxiety for you.

Zenos's Allegory Of The Olive Tree

Beginning of the Parable

³⁰ My family and friends, don't you remember the words of the prophet Zenos who spoke to the family of Israel and said "Listen to me, you family of Israel, because I am a prophet of the Divine! ³¹ The Divine says 'You family of Israel, I will compare you to an olive tree which a man has taken and nourished in his orchard until it grew old and began to die. ³² When this man saw that his olive tree began to die he said 'I will prune it, dig around it, and nourish it so that young and tender branches may grow and the tree won't die'. ³³ And so he did what he said he would do.

Branches Grafted to Save the Beloved Tree

³⁴ After a while some branches began to grow, but the main tree began to die. ³⁵ The man saw this and said to his worker 'It makes me sad that I may lose this tree. ³⁶ Go and pluck off the branches from a wild olive tree and bring them to me. We will pluck off the main branches of my tree, which is dying, and throw them into a fire.

³⁷ I will take those young and tender branches and graft them somewhere for safe keeping. ³⁸ It doesn't matter if the root of my beloved tree dies, because I will have saved the tree's ability to

produce fruit through the branches I saved.³⁹ That is why I will graft the young and tender branches somewhere else for the time being.⁴⁰ I will graft the branches of the wild olive tree onto my beloved tree as replacement branches.⁴¹ The dying branches from my beloved tree will be plucked off and thrown into a fire so they don't clutter my orchard.

⁴² The man's worker went and grafted the branches from the wild olive tree onto his beloved tree.⁴³ The man had his beloved tree, which now had wild olive tree branches on it, dug around it, pruned it, and nourished it. He said to his worker 'It makes me sad that I may lose this tree.⁴⁴ I have done everything I can to save it's roots.⁴⁵ Go and keep an eye on my beloved tree and nourish it.⁴⁶ I will graft these young and tender branches onto trees somewhere on the far side of the orchard; don't worry about where.⁴⁷ I will do this so that I can preserve the branches of my beloved tree and still have fruit from it. It would make me sad if my beloved tree completely died.'⁴⁸ The owner of the orchard went off and hid the branches of his beloved tree on the far side of the orchard. He grafted some of the branches onto one tree and other branches onto other trees; he grafted wherever he felt like it.

First Return: Good Fruit

⁴⁹ After quite a while the owner of the orchard said to his worker 'Let's go into the orchard and work in it'.⁵⁰ Both the owner of the orchard and his worker went and worked in the orchard.

The Beloved Tree

⁵¹ The worker said to the owner of the orchard, 'Look at this tree!' ⁵² The owner of the orchard looked and saw his beloved tree, which had wild olive branches grafted onto it. It had recovered and begun to produce fruit!⁵³ He saw that this good fruit was similar to the fruit that the beloved tree would naturally grow.⁵⁴ He said to his worker 'The branches of the wild olive tree have helped the tree and its roots recover!⁵⁵ It has recovered so much that it is bearing good fruit!⁵⁶ If we had not grafted these wild olive tree branches onto my beloved olive tree it would have died.⁵⁷ Now it is doing so well that I will gather it's fruit and save it to eat during the winter!

The First Far Tree

⁵⁸ The owner of the orchard said to the worker, 'Let's go to the far side of the orchard and look at the young and tender branches from my beloved tree and see if they have produced any fruit so that I can also store those fruits for the winter.'

⁵⁹ They went to where the owner of the orchard had hid those young and tender branches, and he said to his worker, 'Look at these branches.'⁶⁰ He saw the first branch and it had produced a lot of good fruit!⁶¹ The owner of the orchard said to his worker 'Take the fruit from these branches and store them for the winter.⁶² I have nourished these branches for a long time and now it has produced fruit!' ⁶³ The worker said to the owner of the orchard, 'Why did you graft the young and tender branches of your beloved tree onto this tree? This is the worst place in the orchard!' ⁶⁴ The owner of the orchard said to him, 'You don't have to tell me twice! I know that

this is the bad part of the orchard. However, as I told you, I have been nourishing this tree for a long time and now you can see that it has produced good fruit.'

The Second Far Tree

⁶⁵ The owner of the orchard said to his worker, 'Look and see how I grafted another one of the young and tender branches from my beloved tree onto another tree. You can see how this is an even worse part of the orchard. ⁶⁶ However, look at the tree! I have also nourished it for a long time and it has also produced good fruit. Let's harvest it and store it for the winter.'

The Third Far Tree

⁶⁷ The owner of the orchard again said to his worker, 'Look at this other tree, which also has a young and tender branch from my beloved tree grafted onto it. It has also produced good fruit! ⁶⁸ Look at this tree and compare it to the second far tree; I planted this third far tree in a good part of the orchard and have also nourished it. Some of the tree has produced good fruit, but other parts produced bad fruit. I have treated this tree no differently than the others.'

⁶⁹ The owner of the orchard said to his worker, 'pluck off the branches which did not produce good fruit and throw them into the fire'. ⁷⁰ The worker said to him, 'Why don't we prune it, dig around it, and nourish it a little longer? There's a chance that it will produce good fruit that you can store for the winter.'

⁷¹ The owner of the orchard and the worker went around and nourished all of the olive trees in the orchard.

Second Return: Bad Fruit

⁷² After quite a while the owner of the orchard said to his worker 'Let's go into the orchard and work in it. ⁷³ Winter is coming and the season is about to end. I must store fruit for the winter!'

The Beloved Tree

⁷⁴ The owner of the orchard and the worker went down into the orchard and came to the beloved tree which had its young and tender branches plucked from it and had wild branches grafted onto it. The beloved tree was weighed down with all sorts of fruit! ⁷⁵ He tasted all the different kinds of olives.

⁷⁶ The owner of the orchard said 'We nourished this tree this whole time and even stored up some of its good fruit for the winter. ⁷⁷ It has grown a lot of fruit, but none of it is good anymore.

⁷⁸ Despite all of the work we have put in, this tree has produced all kinds of bad fruit and none of them do me any good. It would make me sad to lose this tree.'

⁷⁹ The owner of the orchard said to the worker, 'What should we do to the tree so it grows good fruit that I can store for the winter?' ⁸⁰ The worker said to the owner of the orchard, 'You grafted

wild olive branches onto your beloved tree in order to save it. You saved the tree and its roots, but now those wild branches are producing bad fruit.'

⁸¹ The owner of the orchard said to his worker, 'The tree or its roots doesn't do me any good if it produces bad fruit. ⁸² I know the roots are good, which is why I saved them. It was through the strength of these roots that these wild branches were able to produce good fruit in the first place. ⁸³ Now these wild branches have overrun and corrupted the roots of the tree and it produces bad fruit. ⁸⁴ Since it is producing so much bad fruit you can see how it is starting to die again. Unless we do something to save it, soon it'll be good for nothing other than firewood.'

The Far Side of the Orchard

⁸⁵ The owner of the orchard said to his worker, 'Let's go to the far side of the orchard and see if those young and tender branches have also produced bad fruit'. ⁸⁶ They went to the far side of the orchard. ⁸⁷ They saw that the fruit of those young and tender branches had also become corrupted on all three of the trees. ⁸⁸ The third tree had become so corrupted that the part of it which had produced good fruit had now withered away and died.

⁸⁹ The owner of the orchard said to the worker, 'What else could I have done for my orchard?' ⁹⁰ I knew all of the fruit in the orchard had become corrupted, except for the fruit from these young and tender branches. ⁹¹ Now even these branches, which had once produced good fruit, have become corrupted! ⁹² All of the trees in my orchard are good for nothing but firewood!

⁹³ The third tree's branch has withered away, despite it being in the best part of the orchard! ⁹⁴ You saw that I cleared this area of the orchard so I could plant this tree. ⁹⁵ You saw how part of the tree produced good fruit, but some of it also produced bad fruit. ⁹⁶ I didn't pluck out the branches that produced the bad fruit and threw them in the fire, and now the good branch has withered away!

⁹⁷ Despite all the care we have put into the orchard, the trees have become corrupted and produce no good fruit. ⁹⁸ I had hoped that I could save these trees so I could store fruit for the winter. ⁹⁹ However, they have become wild olive trees and are good for nothing but firewood. It makes me sad to lose them.

¹⁰⁰ What else could I have done in my orchard? ¹⁰¹ Was I lazy and didn't nourish my trees? ¹⁰² No, I nourished them, dug around them, pruned them, and fertilized them. I worked hard all day long! Now the end of the season is here. ¹⁰³ It makes me sad that I will have to cut down the trees of my orchard and throw them in the fire to be burned. ¹⁰⁴ Who corrupted my orchard?

¹⁰⁵ The worker said to the owner of the orchard 'Don't you think that its the branches that grew too big? ¹⁰⁶ Haven't these big branches become so big that the good roots can't support them anymore? ¹⁰⁷ Since the branches grew faster and bigger than what the roots could support, the branches didn't have enough strength to grow good fruit. ¹⁰⁸ Isn't this why your orchard has become corrupted?'

Young and Tender Branches are Grafted Back Into the Beloved Tree

¹⁰⁹ The owner of the orchard said to the worker, 'Let's go and cut down the trees in the orchard and throw them in the fire so that they don't clutter up the ground of my orchard. I have done everything I can. What else could I have done?' ¹¹⁰ However, the worker said to the owner of the orchard, 'Let's give it a little more time.' ¹¹¹ The owner of the orchard said, 'I will give it a little more time, because I would hate to lose the trees in my orchard.' ¹¹² Let's take the young and tender branches, which I had grafted onto trees on the far side of the orchard, and graft them back onto the tree they came from. ¹¹³ Let's pluck the branches which produced bad fruit on my beloved tree and graft the young and tender branches in their stead. ¹¹⁴ Let's do this so the tree doesn't die and perhaps we can save the roots.

¹¹⁵ The roots of my beloved tree are still alive. ¹¹⁶ In order to save them I will take those corrupted young and tender branches and graft them back onto my beloved tree. ¹¹⁷ These branches will return to its mother tree and hopefully preserve its roots. I will do this so it will be strong enough to grow good fruit and I can still have a glorious orchard.'

¹¹⁸ The owner of the orchard and the worker took the young and tender branches, which had become wild and corrupted, and grafted them onto the beloved tree which had also become wild and corrupted. ¹¹⁹ They then took the branches, which had been grafted onto the beloved tree, and returned them to their own mother trees. ¹²⁰ The owner of the orchard said to the worker, 'Only cut off the branches that grow the worst fruit, and graft in the other branches in their stead as we talked about. ¹²¹ We will nourish the trees of the orchard again and trim their branches. We will pluck off the bad branches and throw them into the fire. ¹²² We will do this in hopes that the roots of these trees will gain strength and overcome their corruption!

¹²³ Since I preserved both the branches and roots of my beloved tree and have grafted the other branches onto their mother trees, whose roots I also saved, perhaps it will help save all of the trees and they will all produce good fruit. ¹²⁴ I would be so happy if my orchard produced fruit again after I saved its roots and branches! ¹²⁵ Go and call all the other workers so we can work hard together in the orchard to save it so it produces precious and good fruit!

¹²⁶ Let's work hard this last time, because the end of the season is nearly here, and this will be the last time that I prune my orchard. ¹²⁷ Graft in the branches! Start with the trees that I worked on last, and then end your work on the trees that I previously started with. Dig around the trees, both young and old, and nourish them for the last time. ¹²⁸ Dig around them, prune them, and fertilize them one last time, because the end of the season is here! ¹²⁹ If these last grafts grow and produce good fruit then we will have saved the orchard!

¹³⁰ As they begin to grow, prune away the branches which produce bad fruit as long as the tree can handle it. ¹³¹ Don't clear away all the bad branches all at once, because the roots may end up being too strong for the grafts and they could die and we would lose the orchard. ¹³² It would make me sad if I lost the trees of my orchard, so only prune a little at a time and only as much as the good branches can handle. Do this until the good overcomes the bad and the bad is

thrown into the fire in order not to clutter up the orchard. This is how I will sweep out the bad corruption from my orchard!

¹³³ The branches of my beloved tree will have its own branches grafted back onto it, and the other trees in the orchard will have their own branches grafted back onto them. ¹³⁴ This is how I will bring them together as one again and how they will produce good fruit. ¹³⁵ All of the bad in my orchard will be thrown away. I will only prune my orchard like this once.'

A Large Harvest

¹³⁶ The owner of the orchard sent his workers out and they executed their plan. ¹³⁷ The owner of the orchard said to them, 'Go and work hard in the orchard! ¹³⁸ This is the last time that I will nourish my orchard, because the end of the season is here! ¹³⁹ If you work hard with me you will be happy with the fruit that is stored for the winter.'

¹⁴⁰ The workers and the owner of the orchard went out and worked hard and did exactly as they had planned. ¹⁴¹ The branches thrived and there began to be good fruit in the orchard again. ¹⁴² The wild and corrupt branches began to be plucked off and thrown away. The roots and the branches had a maintainable balance.

¹⁴³ They worked as hard as they could to execute their plan until the bad and corruption had completely been thrown out of the orchard! They were able to grow good fruit again. ¹⁴⁴ All the trees in the orchard became like the beloved tree - almost like they were the same tree - and produced precious and good fruit. The owner of the orchard saved the thing that was most precious to him from the beginning.

¹⁴⁵ When the owner of the orchard saw that his fruit was good and there was no more corruption in the orchard, he called his workers to him and said, 'We nourished the orchard for the last time and executed the plan perfectly. ¹⁴⁶ We have saved the good and precious fruit, which was the goal from the beginning. Bless you! ¹⁴⁷ You have worked hard with me in my orchard, followed the plan, have brought me good fruit, and there is no more corruption in my orchard. Be happy with me because of the fruit of the orchard!

¹⁴⁸ This fruit will be stored for the winter. ¹⁴⁹ We have finished nourishing, pruning, digging, and fertilizing for the year. ¹⁵⁰ This fruit will be stored, just as I said it would be. ¹⁵¹ When the time comes that bad fruit is produced again, then we will gather the good and the bad. ¹⁵² We will keep the good, and throw away the bad. ¹⁵³ Then comes the end of the season and I will clean my orchard with fire.'"

Chapter 4

Jacob's Commentary on Zeno's Parable

¹ My family and friends, I told you that I would prophesy, so here it is:

² The things which the prophet Zenos said about the family of Israel, which he likened to a tame and beloved olive tree, must surely come to pass. ³ When the Divine recovers Their people for a second time it will be the last time that the Divine's workers will go forth with Divine power to nourish and prune the orchard. After that the end will come soon.

⁴ How blessed are those who worked hard in the orchard! How cursed are those who will be thrown out! ⁵ The world will be cleaned with fire. ⁶ How merciful is our God to us! They remember the family of Israel, both the roots and the branches, and will work for us all day long!

⁷ The family of Israel is a stubborn and contrarian people, but if they will not harden their hearts they will enter the realm of God.

Admonitions of Jacob

⁸ My beloved family and friends, I ask you with soberness to seek reconciliation, come to the Divine with an honest heart, and stay close to God just as God stays close to you. ⁹ Don't harden your heart while the Divine's arm of mercy is extended toward you in the light of day! ¹⁰ Today, if you will hear God's voice, refuse to harden your heart! Why would you do otherwise? ¹¹ After you have been nourished by the good word of God all day, will you produce bad fruit and be thrown into the fire? ¹² Will you reject these words? ¹³ Will you reject the words of the prophets? Will you reject everything that was said about Christ, even after so many spoke about him? Will you deny the good word of Christ? Will you deny the power of God? Will you deny the gift of the Holy Ghost? Or will you mock the great plan of freedom which has been taught to you?

¹⁴ Don't you know that if you do these things the power of the freedom and resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and guilt in front of the Divine? ¹⁵ Justice cannot be denied, and justice will require that you go away into the lake of fire and brimstone who's flames can't be quenched and the smoke ascends forever and ever! This lake serves as a Divine punishment. ¹⁶ Oh, then, my beloved family and friends, reconcile, enter in at the straight gate, and continue on the narrow path until you obtain eternal life! ¹⁷ Oh, be wise! What more can I say?

¹⁸ Finally, I bid you farewell until I meet you at the pleasing bar of God, which strikes the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

Chapter 5

Arrival of Sherem

¹ After some years had passed away, a man named Sherem came among the Nephites. ² He began to preach among the people and declare that there would be no Christ. ³ He preached many things which flattered the people in order to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. ⁴ He worked hard to lead the hearts of the people away, and was quite successful at it.

⁵ Knowing that I, Jacob, had faith that Christ would come, Sherem tried to come to me. ⁶ He was smart and knew the Nephite language. He knew how he could flatter the Nephites with his words and the power of the devil. ⁷ He hoped that he would shake me from the faith, despite all of the revelations and visions I had seen regarding this topic. I had seen angels and they ministered to me. ⁸ I heard the voice of the Divine speak to me from time-to-time. I could not be shaken.

Sherem Confronts Jacob

⁹ Sherem came to me and said, "Brother Jacob, I have tried many times to talk with you. I have heard and know that you preach what you call 'the gospel' or 'the doctrine of Christ'." ¹⁰ You have led away many of these people, and they corrupt the right way of God and don't keep the law of Moses. The law of Moses is the right way. You have changed the law of Moses into worshipping a being which you say will live several hundred years from now. ¹¹ I, Sherem, declare to you that this is blasphemy! No one knows such things, because no one can tell the future." ¹² This is how Sherem confronted me.

¹³ The Divine poured Their Spirit into my soul and I confounded him with the words that I spoke. ¹⁴ I said to him, "Do you deny that Christ will come?" ¹⁵ He said, "If there will be a Christ I would not deny him, but right now I don't believe that there ever was, is, or will be."

¹⁶ Then I said to him, "Do you believe the scriptures?" ¹⁷ and he said "Yes." ¹⁸ I said to him, "Then you do not understand them, because they definitely testify of Christ." ¹⁹ None of the prophets have written or prophesied and not spoken of Christ. ²⁰ This isn't everything, though; this truth has been shown to me by the power of the Holy Ghost! ²¹ I know that if there were no atonement, then all of humanity would be lost."

²² Sherem said to me, "Show me a sign through the power of the Holy Ghost, which you apparently know so well." ²³ I said to him, "Why would I ask God to show you something you already know is true?" ²⁴ You deny what you know is true, because the devil has sent you. ²⁵ This isn't what I want, but if God smites you that will be your sign that the Divine has power in both Heaven and on Earth and proof that Christ will come. ²⁶ Let the Divine's will be done, and not mine."

The Sign From God

²⁷ When I, Jacob, had said these things, the power of the Divine came upon him and he fell to the earth. ²⁸ He had to be nourished for many days. ²⁹ He said to the Nephite people, “Gather together in the morning, because I will die then. I want to speak to the people before I die.”

³⁰ The next morning the crowd gathered together and he spoke very plainly to them, and denied the things he taught them. He confessed that there was a Christ, that he knew the power of the Holy Ghost, and that there were ministering angels. ³¹ He told them very plainly that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. ³² He spoke of hell, eternity, and Divine punishment. ³³ He said “I fear that I have committed an unforgivable sin by lying to God and denying Christ. I have said that I believe the scriptures; the scriptures testify of Christ! ³⁴ Because I have lied to God, I fear that my fate will be awful, which is why I needed to try and right my wrong.”

³⁵ After he had said these things he could say no more and gave up the ghost. ³⁶ When the crowd heard everything that he said as he was about to die they were astonished. The power of God came down upon them and they were so overcome that they fell to the earth. ³⁷ This made me happy, because this is what I had requested from the Creator. My cries were heard and my prayers were answered. ³⁸ The peace and the love of God was restored among the Nephites. They searched the scriptures and didn’t listen to this wicked man any more.

Enos Is Given The Record

³⁹ Many ideas were thought up to teach the Lamanites the truth, but it was all done in vain. They loved wars and bloodshed and they have an eternal hatred against us, who are their family. ⁴⁰ They constantly wanted to destroy us with their weapons. ⁴¹ We Nephites fortified ourselves against their armies and trusted God, who is the foundation of our freedom, with all of their might. Up until now we had been conquerors of their enemies.

⁴² I, Jacob, began to grow old. The record of the Nephites is kept on the Large Plates of Nephi, and so I will conclude my record. I have written to the best of my knowledge. ⁴³ The time passes away with us, and our lives pass away as if they were a dream. We are a lonesome and solemn people. We are wanderers who were thrown out of Jerusalem. ⁴⁴ We were born in tribulation and in the wilderness. We are hated by our family, who have caused wars and contentions. We have mourned out our days.

⁴⁵ I, Jacob, have seen that I must soon go down to my grave. That is why I said to my son, Enos, “Take these plates.” ⁴⁶ I told him the things which my brother Nephi had told me, and he promised to keep the records as well.

⁴⁷ Now I end my record, which has been small. ⁴⁸ I bid the reader farewell, and hope that many of my Lamanite family read my words.

Good bye, my family and friends.

The Book of Enos

¹ I, Enos, knew that my father was just a man. He taught me how to read, write, and also taught me about the Divine's nurturing nature as well as Their warnings. ² Blessed be the name of my God that I received this education! ³ Now I will tell you about the wrestle which I had in front of the Divine before I was assured that my sins were forgiven.

Prayers of Enos in the Wilderness

Prayer for the Self

⁴ I had gone to hunt for food in the forest and was contemplating about what my father had often spoken about regarding eternal life when the joy of the saints sunk deep into my heart. ⁵ My soul was hungry, so I knelt before my Maker and cried to them in mighty prayer and pleaded for my soul. ⁶ I prayed and cried all day, and continued to raise my voice to Heaven when night came.

⁷ A voice came to me and said "Enos, your sins are forgiven and you are blessed!" ⁸ I knew that God could not lie, and so my guilt was swept away. ⁹ I said "God, how did this happen?" ¹⁰ I was replied, "This happened because of your faith in Christ, whom you have never even heard or seen. ¹¹ It is even still many years before he joins humanity. Go; your trust in me has made you whole."

Prayer for the Nephites

¹² When I heard these words I wanted to seek the welfare of my family and friends, the Nephites. I continued to pour out my whole soul in front of God. ¹³ While I was struggling with the Spirit, the voice of the Divine came into my mind again, saying ¹⁴ "I will visit the Nephites if they diligently take my advice. ¹⁵ I have given them this land, which is a holy land. I won't curse it unless they are wicked. ¹⁶ I will visit the Nephites, as I said I would, and have them answer, with sorrow, for their Divine law breaking."

Prayer for the Lamanites

¹⁷ After I heard these words my faith in the Divine was unshakable. I prayed long and hard to God for my family, the Lamanites. ¹⁸ After I had prayed as best I could, the Divine said to me "I will give you what you want because of your faith." ¹⁹ This is what I asked God that if the Nephites break Their laws and are destroyed, that the Lamanites aren't destroyed. I wanted this so they could protect the record of my people, the Nephites. ²⁰ I wanted the record to be protected so that one day, through the power of the Divine's arm, the Lamanites would read it and be freed. ²¹ At this time our attempts to reach out to the Lamanites with the truth were done in vain. ²² They were filled with wrath and promised that they would destroy us, our records, and the teachings of our ancestors if they got the chance to do so.

Prayer for the Records of Nephi

²³ I knew that God would be able to protect our records, and I prayed to God about them continually. ²⁴ God had told me “Whatever you ask for in faith, and believe that you will receive it in the name of Christ, it will be given to you.” ²⁵ I had faith, so I prayed to God to protect the records. ²⁶ The Divine promised me that They would bring the records forth to the Lamanites when the time was right. ²⁷ I knew that God would fulfill the promise They made to me, and my soul rested. ²⁸ Then the Divine said to me, “Your ancestors have also asked me to protect these records. Because of their faith, as well as yours, I will protect them.”

Return to the Nephites

Fall of Enos

²⁹ I went back among the Nephites and prophesied about the future and things that I had seen and heard. ³⁰ I'm here to tell you that the Nephites tried very hard to help the Lamanites return to the true faith in God. ³¹ However, our labors were still done in vain because their hatred for us was so strong. They were led by their evil nature and became a wild, ferocious, bloodthirsty, idolatrous, and filthy people! ³² They hunted their food, lived in tents, and wandered around the wilderness in loincloths and with shaved heads. They were skilled with the bow, cimeter, and the ax. ³³ Many of them ate nothing but raw meat! The Lamanites continually tried to destroy us, the Nephites.

Nephite wickedness

³⁴ The Nephites were farmers and grew all sorts of grains and fruit. We also tended to herds of cattle, goats, and horses. ³⁵ There were many prophets among us. ³⁶ However, the Nephites were a stubborn people and didn't listen to the prophets. ³⁷ There was nothing except harsh preaching about war, contention, destruction, the reminder of death, the length of eternity, an unfavorable Divine review and assessment, and the power of God ³⁸ that would get them to do the right things. ³⁹ There was nothing else but plainly talking about these things that kept them from going down to a speedy destruction. ⁴⁰ This is how they behaved, which is why I am writing about it. ⁴¹ I saw many wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites throughout my life.

The Passing of Enos

⁴² I began to grow old. It has been 179 years since our ancestors Lehi and Sariah left Jerusalem. ⁴³ I taught the truth in Christ and prophesied to the Nephites with the power of God, and now I must soon go down to my grave. ⁴⁴ I taught and prophesied my whole life and it has brought me more joy than anything else.

⁴⁵ I will soon go to the place of rest, which is with my Emancipator. I know that I will rest in Them. ⁴⁶ I will rejoice when my mortality puts on immortality and I stand before God. I will be pleased to see Their face and They will say to me, “Come to me; you are blessed. There is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Creator”. Amen.

The Book of Omni

Omni

¹ I, Omni, was told by my father, Jarom, to preserve our genealogy upon these plates. ² In my day I fought with the sword in many battles to protect my people, the Nephites, from destruction at the hands of our enemies, the Lamanites. ³ I am a wicked man and have not taken the Divine's advice as I should have done.

⁴ 276 years have passed since Lehi and Sariah left Jerusalem. In that time we have had many times of peace, but also serious wars and bloodshed.

⁵ 282 years have passed since Lehi and Sariah left Jerusalem and I have kept these plates as was instructed by my ancestors. I now give them to my son Amaron. I now make an end.

Amaron

⁶ Now I, Amaron, will write a couple things in the book of my father.

⁷ 320 years has passed since Lehi and Sariah left Jerusalem and the wicked Nephites have been destroyed. ⁸ After the Divine led us out of Jerusalem and protected us from the Lamanites the Divine wouldn't tolerate our wickedness, especially after They told us "As long as you listen to what I tell you, you will prosper in the land of promise." ⁹ The Divine visited them in a great review and assessment! However, the righteous were spared and did not perish and were delivered out of the hands of their enemies.

¹⁰ I now give the plates to my brother Chemish.

Chemish

¹¹ Now I, Chemish, will write a few things in the same book with my brother. I saw the last things that he wrote and then gave to me. ¹² We keep the record as our ancestors have instructed us. Now I make an end.

Abinadom

¹³ I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. ¹⁴ I have seen many wars and contentions between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites. ¹⁵ I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many Lamanites in order to defend my family and friends. ¹⁶ The record of these wars is kept by the kings from generation-to-generation

¹⁷ I don't know of any revelation or prophecy that hasn't already been written. What has already been written is good enough for me, and so I will make an end.

Amaleki

Mosiah Flees the Land of Nephi

¹⁸ I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. ¹⁹ I will speak to you a little bit about Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla. ²⁰ He was warned by God to flee out of the land of Nephi with anyone who would listen to the Divine and go into the wilderness. ²¹ Mosiah did as the Divine told him. ²² They departed into the wilderness with anyone who would listen to the Divine and were led by preaching and prophecy. ²³ They were continually encouraged by the word of God and were led by the Divine's arm through the wilderness until they came to a land called "Zarahemla". ²⁴ They discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla.

The People of Zarahemla

²⁵ The people of Zarahemla were very joyful, because the Divine had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jewish people. ²⁶ Mosiah found that the people of Zarahemla also came out of Jerusalem during the time when Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into babylon. ²⁷ They traveled in the wilderness and were brought by the hand of the Divine across the great waters into the land that Mosiah later discovered them in. ²⁸ By the time that Mosiah discovered them they had had many descendants. ²⁹ However, they had also had many violent wars and serious contentions from time-to-time.

³⁰ Their language had become corrupted because they had not brought any records with them ³¹ and they didn't know anything about their Creator. Neither Mosiah or his people were able to understand them. ³² However, Mosiah helped the people of Zarahemla learn his language. ³³ After the people of Zarahemla learned Mosiah's language, their leader, who was named Zarahemla, gave the genealogy of his ancestors as best as he could remember it. This genealogy is written down, but not upon these Small Plates of Nephi. ³⁴ The peoples of Zarahemla and Mosiah united and appointed Mosiah to be their king.

Jaredites first introduced

³⁵ During King Mosiah's reign a large stone was brought to him which had engravings upon it. He was able to translate these engravings through the gift and power of God. ³⁶ They told the history of a man named Coriantumr and the annihilation of his people. ³⁷ Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla and he went on to live with them for nine lunar cycles. ³⁸ This stone also spoke a little about Coriantumr's ancestry. ³⁹ His first parents came out of the Tower of Babel when the Divine confounded the languages of humanity. Coriantumr's people had the severity of the Divine fall upon them and their bones lay scattered in the land to the north.

The Rise of King Benjamin, Amaleki's farewell

⁴⁰ I, Amaleki, was born during the reign of King Mosiah, and I have lived to see his death. His son, Benjamin, now reigns in his stead. ⁴¹ During the reign of King Benjamin I have seen serious wars and bloodshed between the Nephites and Lamanites. ⁴² The Nephites were able to gain an advantage over the Lamanites in these wars to the point that King Benjamin was able to drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

⁴³ I began to grow old and have no children. I know that King Benjamin is a just man before God, and so I will give him the Small Plates of Nephi. I want to strongly encourage everyone to come to God, who is the Holy One of Israel, ⁴⁴ and to believe in the prophecies, revelations, ministry of angels, the gift of speaking in tongues, interpreting of languages, and in everything which is good. ⁴⁵ Everything that is good comes from the Divine, and everything which is evil comes from the Devil.

⁴⁶ Now, my beloved family and friends, I want you to come to Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake in His freedom! ⁴⁷ Come to him and offer your whole soul as an offering; continue to fast and pray; endure to the end; as surely as the Divine lives, you will be freed.

Introduction of Zeniff's People (The Nephite Colony)

⁴⁸ I should speak a little about a certain group who went back into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi. ⁴⁹ There were many people who wanted to possess their homeland and so went back into the wilderness. ⁵⁰ Their leader was a strong and mighty man, but was stubborn and he caused a contention among them which led to all but fifty to be killed in the wilderness. Those who survived came back to the land of Zarahemla. ⁵¹ After they returned they gathered many more people and went back into the wilderness. ⁵² I, Amaleki, had a brother who went with them, and I don't know what happened to them.

⁵³ I am about to lie down in my grave and these plates are full. ⁵⁴ I make an end of my speaking.

The Words of Mormon

¹ I, Mormon, am about to give the records, which I have been making, to my son Moroni. I have witnessed nearly the total destruction of my people, the Nephites. ² At this time it is many hundreds of years after the coming of Christ. I presume that my son will live to witness the entire destruction of the Nephites. ³ I pray that God will allow my son to survive longer than them so that he can write about them, and a little about Christ, so that these writings may be of some benefit one day.

Explanation of the Plates

⁴ I will speak a little about what I have written. These writings are an abridgement from the plates of Nephi down through the reign of King Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spoke of. ⁵ I searched through these records, which had been given to me, and found the Small Plates of Nephi which contained these small accounts of the prophets from Nephi, to Jacob, and down through the reign of King Benjamin. ⁶ The things which are written upon the Small Plates of Nephi please me because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ and how my ancestors knew that their prophecies would be fulfilled and Christ would come. ⁷ I also know that there are many prophecies about this day which have been fulfilled. I know that there are other prophecies that speak about the future, which will also be fulfilled one day. ⁸ That is why I chose these things to finish my record with. The rest of my record will be an abridgement of the Large Plates of Nephi. I couldn't even write a hundredth part of the history of the Nephites.

⁹ I will take the Small Plates of Nephi, which contain these prophecies and revelations, and put them with the rest of my record because of how important I think they are. I know that they will also be important to my family and friends. ¹⁰ I do this for a wise purpose which was whispered to me through the Spirit of the Divine which is in me. ¹¹ I don't know everything, but the Divine knows everything that will happen in the future and works through me to accomplish Their goals. ¹² My prayer to God concerns my family and friends: I pray that one day they will come to know God and the freedom of Christ again and become a wonderful people.

¹³ Now I, Mormon, will finish my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi. I have made it to the best of my knowledge and understand which God has given me.

Transition from Amaleki to King Benjamin

¹⁴ After Amaleki gave the Small Plates of Nephi to King Benjamin, King Benjamin put them with the Large Plates of Nephi, which contain the records which were handed down from king-to-king until the days of King Benjamin. ¹⁵ These plates continued to be handed down from generation-to-generation until they came to me. ¹⁶ I, Mormon, pray to God that they will be protected from this time forward. ¹⁷ I know that they will be protected because of the important things which are written on them. God has said that these writings will be the things which the Nephites and Lamanites will be assessed by at the great and last day when their lives are reviewed.

Introduction to the Reign of King Benjamin

¹⁸ Now, concerning King Benjamin: he had some contention among his own people. ¹⁹ The armies of the Lamanites came out of the land of Nephi to battle his people. ²⁰ King Benjamin gathered his armies and stood against the Lamanites. Even he fought in these battles while armed with the sword of Laban! ²¹ They fought with the Lamanites with the strength of the Divine until they had killed many thousands. ²² They fought the Lamanites until they had been driven out of all of their homelands.

²³ There had been false Christs, but they were censored and punished according to their crimes. ²⁴ There had been false prophets, preachers, and teachers among the Nephites who were also punished according to their crimes. ²⁵ After all of the contention and dissension to the Lamanites, King Benjamin, who was a holy man who reigned in righteousness, along with holy prophets among the Nephites, ²⁶ who were numerous, spoke the word of God with power and authority. They used sharp words because of the stubbornness of the Nephites. ²⁷ King Benjamin and these prophets, by laboring with all the strength that their bodies and souls could muster, were able to establish peace in the land again.

The Book of Mosiah

Chapter 1

King Benjamin Educates His Sons

¹ There was no more contention in all the land Zarahemla among King Benjamin's people. King Benjamin oversaw continual peace the remainder of his life. ² He had three sons named Mosiah II, Helorum, and Helaman. ³ He taught them to read and write so they would become well educated men and they could know about the prophecies which their ancestors were given by the Divine.

⁴ He also taught them about the records of the Jewish people which were engraved upon the plates of brass. He said to them: "My sons, I want you to remember that if it weren't for these plates, which contain our history and Divine advice, we would have suffered in ignorance and still be suffering from it today. We would not know about the mysteries of God!" ⁵ It wouldn't have been possible for our ancestor, Lehi, to remember everything in them and to teach them to his children. However, he was able to teach them because he had these plates. ⁶ Lehi was taught to read and write the Egyptian language and was able to read these plates and teach his children to do so as well. Lehi's children then, in turn, taught their own children how to read and write. This education was passed on and on all the way down to us at the present time. ⁷ We have the mysteries of God and Their advice is readily available for us to read. These writings have been protected so we could read them. If we didn't have them then even our ancestors would have lost their relationship with God. ⁸ We would be like our family, the Lamanites, who know nothing about these things. They don't believe these things when they *are* taught to them, because they conflict with their incorrect cultural traditions.

⁹ Oh, my sons, I want you to remember that what I have said is true, as are our records. ¹⁰ The Plates of Nephi, which contain the history and teachings of our ancestors from the time they left Jerusalem till now, are also true! We know this because we can see them with our own eyes. ¹¹ Now, my sons, I want you to remember to study them and benefit from what you learn. ¹² I want you to take the Divine's advice so you will prosper in the land. The Divine promised our ancestors that we would profit if we took Their advice." ¹³ King Benjamin taught his sons many more things, but I didn't include them in the abridgement.

Mosiah II Appointed as Successor to King Benjamin

¹⁴ After King Benjamin had finished teaching his sons he grew old. He saw that he would pass away soon, and he thought it would be a good idea to give the kingdom to one of his sons. ¹⁵ He had Mosiah II come to him and he said: "My son, I want you to make a proclamation throughout the land and people of Zarahemla and tell them that they should gather together. ¹⁶ Tomorrow I want to tell my people, with my own mouth, that you were given to us by God to be a king and a ruler over us.

¹⁷ I will also give this people a name so they can be distinguished from the other people who God led out of Jerusalem. I want to do this because they have done a good job at taking the Divine's advice. ¹⁸ This new name will never be blotted out, unless they fall into wickedness. ¹⁹ If these well-respected people fall into wickedness and sexually harmful people, then the Divine will deal with them accordingly and they will become weak like the Lamanites. ²⁰ They will no longer be protected by the Divine's unmatched and marvelous power that protected our ancestors. ²¹ If the Divine hadn't extended Their arm to protect our ancestors they would have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites and become victims to their hatred."

²² After King Benjamin said these things to Mosiah II he made him the new king over Zarahemla.

²³ King Benjamin also gave King Mosiah II the Plates of Nephi and told him how to care for them. ²⁴ He also gave him the sword of Laban and the Liahona, which was created by the Divine to lead their ancestors out of the wilderness if they listened to the Divine. ²⁵ If they didn't listen to the Divine they did not prosper or progress on their journey, and instead the Divine was upset and they were pushed back. ²⁶ The Divine had our ancestors experience death, famine, and hardships in order to get them to remember their duty.

²⁷ King Mosiah II did as his father asked him and sent out the proclamation to all the people in the land of Zarahemla which told them to gather together at the temple to hear the things which King Benjamin wanted to say to them. ²⁸ The people listened to the proclamation and gathered at the temple to listen to King Benjamin. ²⁹ There were many people who gathered - too many to count! They had many children and were very successful in the land. ³⁰ They took the first born of their flocks and offered sacrifices and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses. ³¹ They wanted to thank the Divine, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, protected them from their enemies, and had appointed justice-filled people to be their teachers and king. ³² Their king had established peace in the land of Zarahemla and taught them to take the Divine's advice so they could be filled with love for God and for all of humanity.

³³ When the Nephites came up to the temple they set up camp around it with their spouses and children. Every family had their own camp set up. ³⁴ The doors of their tents faced the temple so they could remain in their tents while they listened to King Benjamin speak. ³⁵ However, the crowd was so large that King Benjamin couldn't teach them all within the walls of the temple. He had a tower built so that people would be able to hear him.

³⁶ When he began to speak to his people from the tower, the crowd was so large that there were still people who weren't able to hear him. ³⁷ He had the things which he spoke be written down and sent among the people who weren't able to hear him so they would also know what he said.

King Benjamin's First Sermon: Actions and Consequences

³⁸ This is what King Benjamin said: "My family and friends, you have all gathered together to hear what I have to say to you. ³⁹ You should take what I have to say seriously; its not trivial.

Open your hearts so that you hear; open your hearts so that you understand; open your minds so that the mysteries of God are revealed to you.

Be of service to others

⁴⁰ I didn't ask you to come here so that you would fear me or think that I am more than a mortal man. ⁴¹ I am just like you; I am subject to all the infirmities of both body and mind. ⁴² Despite my imperfections I have been chosen by you, my father, and God to be a ruler over this people. I have been guided and protected by the Divine's unmatched power so that I could serve you with all the might, mind, and strength that God has given to me. ⁴³ I have spent my whole life serving you and have never sought gold, silver, or any other riches from you. ⁴⁴ I have not thrown you in prison or allowed slavery, murder, plundering, stealing, or harmful sexuality. ⁴⁵ I have not allowed wickedness and have taught you to take all of the Divine's advice. ⁴⁶ I have worked with my own hands to serve you so that you wouldn't be burdened with heavy and unreasonable taxes. You have all seen this with your own eyes. ⁴⁷ I didn't do all of this to boast or make you feel guilty; I did this so I can stand before God with a clear conscience today.

⁴⁸ I have spent my life in service to you. I don't want to boast, because I did this to be of service to God. ⁴⁹ I tell you this so you can learn its wisdom. I tell you that when you are in the service of your fellow beings you are only in the service of your God.

⁵⁰ You have called me your king. If I have worked to serve you, shouldn't you do the same? ⁵¹ If you want to thank me for all the work I have done, how much more do you think you should thank God?

Be of service to God, for you are indebted to them

⁵² My family and friends, you should give all the thanks and praise which your soul has power to give to the God that created you, because They have guided and protected you. ⁵³ Even if you always serve the God, who created, protected, and supported you so you can live your own lives, ⁵⁴ you would still not be able to pay Them back.

⁵⁵ All the Divine asks for in return is that you take Their advice. You have been promised that if you take Their advice you will prosper in the land. ⁵⁶ The Divine never breaks a promise, so if you do this you will be blessed and prosper.

⁵⁷ First of all, the Divine created you and gave you your own lives to live. That alone means that we are indebted to Them. ⁵⁸ Second, you are asked to take Their advice, and if you do you are immediately paid back with blessings. ⁵⁹ Regardless, you are still indebted to the Divine and always will be. What do you have to boast about?

⁶⁰ Now I ask, 'Can you say that you are great?' No! ⁶¹ You can't even say that you're better than dirt because the Divine crafted you out of dirt! ⁶² I am your king; I am just like you and also no better than dirt. ⁶³ You see that I am an old man who is about to yield his mortal frame to its mother earth.

⁶⁴ I said before that I have served you and walk with a clear conscience before God. I asked you to gather together so I could be found innocent and your blood wouldn't be on my hands when I stand before God to review the life I lived and have it be assessed to determine if I did the things that They asked of me while I was leading you. ⁶⁵ I asked you here so I could wash the blood off of my clothes while I am about to go down to my grave. ⁶⁶ I do this so I can go down in peace and my immortal spirit would join the choirs above who sing praises of a justice-filled God.

Mosiah II Is Declared Heir To The Crown

⁶⁷ I have asked you to gather together here so that I can tell you that I am no longer your teacher or king. ⁶⁸ Even now my body shakes while I am attempting to speak to you. ⁶⁹ The Divine supports me while I put forth this effort, because They want me to speak to you. They asked me to declare to you today that my son, Mosiah II, is a king and ruler over you.

⁷⁰ Now, my family and friends, I want you to keep living your lives as you have been. ⁷¹ You have taken my advice, as well as my father's advice, and you have prospered and been protected from your enemies. ⁷² Just as you have done this with my father and I, I want you to do this with my son. If you take his advice, and the advice from God that he will give you, then you will prosper in the land and your enemies will have no power over you.

Consequences of Breaking God's Laws

⁷³ Oh, my people, be mindful of these things! If you are not then there will be contentions which will arise among you and you will sign up to obey the evil spirit which was spoken about by my father King Mosiah I. ⁷⁴ There is a curse placed upon those that sign up to obey that spirit! Those who sign up to obey him and die in that cursed state damn their own souls! ⁷⁵ Since they knowingly broke the law of God they are paid back with a Divine punishment!

⁷⁶ There is no one among you, except your little children, who have not been taught the ways of God and know that they are eternally indebted to their heavenly Creator. ⁷⁷ You should give everything you have and everything that you are to God. You have been taught about the records, which have been down from generation-to-generation ever since our ancestors Lehi and Saraiah left Jerusalem. These records contain the prophecies of the holy prophets and our ancestors up to the current time. ⁷⁸ They spoke what the Divine told them to, and these words are filled with justice and truth.

⁷⁹ My family and friends, if you go against what was taught in these records after you have learned about them, then you withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Divine and it will no longer have a place in you to guide you in Wisdom's path so you can receive blessings, prosper in the land, and be protected. ⁸⁰ Those that go against what these records teach come out in open rebellion against God. ⁸¹ Those that do this sign up to obey the evil spirit and become enemies to all righteousness! ⁸² The Divine has no place in these people, because the Divine does not dwell in unholy temples.

⁸³ If those people do not seek reconciliation and remain enemies to God till the day they die, then the demands of Divine justice will awaken their immortal souls to a lively sense of their own guilt. ⁸⁴ It will cause them to shamefully withdraw from the presence of God as they are filled with guilt, pain, and anguish which are like an unquenchable fire whose flames ascend up forever and ever. ⁸⁵ Their destiny is to endure this Divine torment.

⁸⁶ I want everyone, both old and young, to understand the words that I have spoken to you. I spoke very plainly so you would understand. ⁸⁷ I pray that you will remember the awful situation that people have put themselves in when they have broken the Divine's laws. ⁸⁸ Additionally, I want you to consider the blessed and happy state of those that take the Divine's advice. ⁸⁹ These people are blessed in all things both temporal and spiritual. ⁹⁰ If these people are faithful and endure to the end, then they will be received into heaven to dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. ⁹¹ Oh, remember that these things are true, because the Divine has spoken it!

King Benjamin's Second Sermon: Angelic Visitation

An Angel tells King Benjamin that he is righteous

⁹² My family and friends, I would like your attention again, because I have more to say to you. ⁹³ I have things to tell you about the future which was shown to me by an angel from God. This angel said to me 'Awaken!' I awoke and saw the angel standing before me. ⁹⁴ The angel said to me 'Wake up and hear the words which I will tell to you! I have come to give you great and joyful news. ⁹⁵ The Divine has heard your prayers and sees that you are a righteous man. I was sent to tell you this so you could be filled with joy and you could tell your people so they could also be filled with joy.

Christ

The Coming of Christ; Christ's Ministry

⁹⁷ It won't be long until the God Omnipotent, who reigned an eternity into the past and will reign an eternity into the future, will come down from Heaven and join humanity in a human body. ⁹⁸ He will go among humanity and perform great miracles such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the paralyzed to walk, give the blind sight, giving the deaf the ability to hear, and curing many more afflictions. ⁹⁹ He will cast out the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of humanity.

Christ's Sacrifice

¹⁰⁰ Like everyone else in humanity He will also endure temptations, pain, hunger, thirst, and fatigue. In fact He will endure more of these than anyone else could; if anyone else tried they would die. ¹⁰¹ Blood will come out of every pore on His body because He will be in so much anguish over the wickedness and abominations of His people.

The Resurrection; Purpose of Christ's Ministry

¹⁰² He will be called 'Jesus Christ', 'the Son of God', 'the Father of Heaven and Earth', 'The Creator of all things since the beginning'. His mother's name will be 'Mary'. ¹⁰³ He will come to His own people so that freedom will be available to those that trust Him. ¹⁰⁴ Despite this, His people will say that He is just a man who is possessed by a devil and they will beat and crucify Him. ¹⁰⁵ However, He will rise from the dead after three days and stand to review and assess the world. ¹⁰⁶ The Divine will do this so They will understand how to properly review and assess a human life with humanity.

¹⁰⁷ Christ's sacrifice will make up for all of the mistakes that humanity makes, including those that died not knowing God's will for them and those who didn't even know they were making mistakes. ¹⁰⁸ Woe to those who know that they are rebelling against God, because they will not have freedom unless they seek reconciliation and trust Jesus Christ.

Preparations that were made for Christ's coming

¹⁰⁹ The Divine sent holy prophets among all of humanity to teach these things to every family, nation, and language. Those that learned about and trusted that Christ would come would have their mistakes forgiven and be filled with a great joy; as if Christ had already come among them. ¹¹⁰ However, the Divine saw that Their people were stubborn, which is why They gave them laws to follow, which we call the law of Moses. ¹¹¹ The Divine showed Their people many signs, wonders, and dropped hints about Christ's coming. ¹¹² The holy prophets also spoke to them about Their coming. ¹¹³ Yet they still hardened their hearts and didn't understand the law of Moses. The law of Moses does them no good without Christ's sacrifice. ¹¹⁴ It is impossible for children to make these kinds of mistakes. Even if they could, adherence to the law wouldn't be what frees them. Regardless, children are blessed and exempt. ¹¹⁵ It is in our human nature to stray from God, but Christ's sacrifice makes up for these mistakes.

Christ is the way to Freedom

¹¹⁶ Additionally, there is no one else and no other way that humanity gains freedom other than Christ, who is the Divine Omnipotent. ¹¹⁷ The Divine reviews lives with justice, and doesn't condemn infants to hell. ¹¹⁸ Humanity damns their own souls unless they humble themselves and become like little children. They should believe that freedom was available in the past, is available in the present, and will be available in the future because of the sacrifice of Christ, who is Divine Omnipotent.

¹¹⁹ Humanity's nature has been and always will be to stray from God. ¹²⁰ However, if humanity listens to the whispers of the Holy Spirit and puts aside their natural inclinations by becoming like a child and are submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, and willing to accept everything the Divine sees fit to give them, then they will become saints through Christ's sacrifice.

¹²¹ The time will come when the knowledge of an Emancipator will spread throughout every nation, family, language, and people. ¹²² When that time comes no one will be found innocent in front of God except little children. However, everyone else can be found innocent if they seek reconciliation and trust the Divine God Omnipotent. ¹²³ Even after you teach your people all of these things they will still need to seek reconciliation and trust the Divine to be found innocent.'

¹²⁴ These are the things that the angel told me to tell you, as the Divine told them to tell me.

A Testimony Against The People

¹²⁵ The Divine also says 'These words will stand as a bright testimony against the Nephites when they meet God. ¹²⁶ These words are the things which their actions, whether they be good or bad, will be reviewed and assessed by at the last day.

¹²⁷ If their works were evil then they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations. It will cause them to shamefully withdraw from the presence of God into an awful state of Divine torment because they have damned their own souls. ¹²⁸ Just as Adam and Eve faced consequences, so too must others. Mercy can never be extended to those who don't want it. ¹²⁹ Their torment is like a lake of fire and brimstone whose flames can never be extinguished and whose smoke ascends forever and ever.'

¹³⁰ This is everything that the Divine has asked me to say. Amen."

Chapter 2

Reaction To King Benjamin's Sermon

¹ When King Benjamin finished his sermon, which he was instructed to give by an angel sent from the Divine, he looked around at the crowd and found that they had fallen to the earth and were honoring God because the Spirit had come upon them. ² They saw the carnal state that they were in and knew that they were less than dirt. ³ They all shouted and cried: "Oh, have mercy and let Christ's sacrifice make up for our mistakes so our hearts may be pure! ⁴ We trust Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven, earth, and everything else! We believe that he will come and join humanity!"

⁵ After they said this the Spirit of the Divine came upon them and they were filled with joy. ⁶ They were assured that their mistakes were made up for by Christ and they were filled with peace. They got this assurance because they trusted that Jesus Christ would join humanity as King Benjamin prophesied.

King Benjamin's Third Sermon: The Means of Salvation

Learn About and Trust God

⁷ King Benjamin gave a third sermon and said: "My family and friends - my people - I want you to pay attention to me again so you hear and understand the rest of what I will say to you.

⁸ If you have become aware of the goodness of God, been awakened to a sense of your nothingness and the state of existence you are in, ⁹ as well as understand the unmatched power, wisdom, and patience of the Divine, ¹⁰ as well as Christ's sacrifice which was planned for since the beginning of the world so that humanity could be freed if they take the Divine's advice their whole lives, ¹¹ then you will receive freedom through Christ's sacrifice. All of humanity, from Adam and Eve, to the present, to the last of humanity - we will all have access to it. This is how freedom is given. ¹² There can be no other way that humanity can achieve freedom other than this.

¹³ Trust God; trust that They are there and that They created everything in Heaven and Earth. ¹⁴ Trust that They have all the wisdom and power in both Heaven and Earth. ¹⁵ Trust that humanity doesn't understand everything that They do. ¹⁶ Trust that you should humble yourself before God by sincerely seek reconciliation. ¹⁷ Trust all of these things and take this advice!

¹⁸ As I told you before, if you learn about the glory of God, ¹⁹ know of Their goodness, tasted Their love, received Their Divine assurance, and felt that great joy in your souls, ²⁰ then I want to remember the greatness of God, your own nothingness, and Their goodness and patience towards us unworthy creatures. ²¹ Humble yourselves to the depths of humility, talk with God every day, trust that the Divine will join humanity as the angel said They would. ²² If you do this

you will always be filled with joy and the love of God and have Divine assurance for your souls. ²³ You will grow in the understanding that Divine glory created you and you will know justice and truth.

Teach Children

²⁵ Don't think about hurting each other; instead live peaceably and treat everyone how they deserve to be treated. ²⁵ Don't allow children to go hungry or naked. ²⁶ Teach them the Divine's advice so they don't mistakenly not take it and fight with each other or serve the devil, who is the master of mistakes, the evil spirit our ancestors spoke about, and an enemy to all righteousness. ²⁷ Teach children to walk in the ways of truth and honesty; teach them to love and serve one another.

Help Those in Need of Help

²⁸ Give help to those who need help, including material assistance. ²⁹ Don't turn away those who are reaching out for help and leave them to die. ³⁰ You may say to yourselves 'They have put themselves in this situation, so I won't be charitable and give them food or help. They deserve to be where they are.' ³¹ Whoever says this to themselves desperately needs to seek forgiveness for this terrible wickedness. Those who don't will endure death and have no interest in the Divine's realm. ³² Don't we all have to ask for help? After all, don't we all depend on God for everything we have, including food, clothing, and income?

³³ Even now you have been asking God for a Divine assurance of your soul. ³⁴ Did God turn you away? ³⁵ No! The Divine poured out Their spirit upon you which caused your hearts to be filled with a joy that was so profound that you couldn't find words to properly convey it!

³⁶ God created you and you depend on Them for everything you are and have. If God gives you what you ask for, after trusting that They would, how do you think you should give to other people? ³⁷ If you condemn someone who asks you for help so they don't die, do you think it would be justice for God to condemn you when you ask the Divine for help? After all, everything, including you and the things you own, belong to God. ³⁸ While you are under this condemnation don't you think that you should change your ways and seek forgiveness? ³⁹ These words are addressed to the rich people in this world: those who don't change their ways are cursed, because their stuff will die with them!

⁴⁰ To those that are living paycheck-to-paycheck and don't have the financial ability to be charitable, I want you to say to yourselves 'I am not charitable because I don't have the ability to be charitable. If I had more than enough to care for myself I would be charitable.' ⁴¹ If you can say this with a clear conscience then you are guiltless. However, if you are not able to say this with a clear conscience and don't help others, then you are under a justified condemnation because you care more about things which don't even truly belong to you!

⁴² I have told you these things so you can gain a Divine assurance for your soul and walk guiltlessly in front of God. ⁴³ I want you to help the poor as much as you are able! Feed the

hungry, clothe the naked, visit the sick! Give them the relief that they need, whether it be spiritual or temporal.

⁴⁴ Do these things wisely, but don't overextend yourself. ⁴⁵ Be diligent, yet mindful.

Be Honest With Your Neighbor

⁴⁶ I want you to remember to return the things that you borrowed from your neighbor with the conditions you both agreed upon. ⁴⁷ If you don't do this you are making a mistake and put him in a position where he may make mistakes as well.

Epilogue

⁴⁸ Finally, I need to remind you that I can't tell you every way that you can make a mistake. There are so many ways that I couldn't possibly number them all. ⁴⁹ What I can tell you is that if you are not mindful of your thoughts, words, and actions are done in a way that takes the Divine's advice throughout your lives, then you will die. ⁵⁰ Remember this and don't die!"

Chapter 3

The Promise of Baptism is Made

¹ When King Benjamin had said these things to the Nephites he sent out a survey asking if people believed what he said. ² Everyone said “We believe everything that you said to us. ³ We know that these things are true because the Spirit of the omnipotent Divine has worked in our hearts and changed us so we have no more desire to do evil and instead wish to continually do good! ⁴ Through the infinite goodness of God and the manifestations of the Spirit we have come to know about the future. If it were important we could prophesy about everything. ⁵ The trust we have in the things that our king has told us has brought us to this great knowledge. This knowledge, in turn, has filled us with this great joy.

⁶ We are willing to make a promise with our God to take all of Their advice for the rest of our lives. We don't want to bring a Divine torment upon ourselves and face the consequences for our harmful actions as was spoken about by the angel.”

King Benjamin's Fourth Sermon: Take Upon the Name of Christ

⁷ Their response was what King Benjamin had hoped for. He said to them, “Your response to what I said is what I had hoped for. The promise which you have made is a good promise. ⁸ Since you made this promise you will be called the children of Christ. ⁹ Today Christ has become your spiritual father, because your hearts have been changed by your trust in him. He is like your spiritual father and you are his spiritual children. ¹⁰ You are made free through Christ! There is no one else that could help you achieve this freedom. ¹¹ There is no one else that gives this freedom. I want everyone who made this promise with God to take upon the name of Christ and take Their advice till the end of your lives.

¹² Whoever does this will be familiar with God and the Divine will know who you are. ¹³ Whoever will not do this will find themselves not as familiar with God.

¹⁴ I also want you to remember that the name of Christ can never be taken away from you unless you choose to not take the Divine's advice. ¹⁵ Make sure you take the Divine's advice so the name of Christ is not taken from your hearts! ¹⁶ I want you to always have Christ's name in your hearts so that you don't find yourself unfamiliar with God. I want you to hear and know the voice and name of the Divine when you are called by Them.

¹⁷ How can you work for someone you don't know and are unfamiliar with their thoughts and intentions? ¹⁸ Does a shepherd take care of one of the animals that belongs to his neighbor's flock? ¹⁹ No; he wouldn't feed them and would instead send them back to his neighbor's flock. ²⁰ It will be the same way with you if you don't remember the name by which you are called.

²¹ I want you to be determined and unwavering in doing good! If you do this Christ will give you the good work that he did and you can go to Heaven and enjoy an eternal life! You can enjoy this eternal life because of the wisdom, power, justice, and mercy of the One who created everything in Heaven and Earth and is the God above all. Amen.”

Chapter 4

The End of King Benjamin's Reign

¹ After King Benjamin finished his last sermon to the Nephites he thought it was a good idea to write down the names of everyone who had promised to take the Divine's advice. ² There was not one soul, except little children, who did not make this promise with God and take upon the name of Christ.

³ After King Benjamin had appointed and taught his son Mosiah II to be the king over his people, ⁴ and appointed priests to teach the Nephites so they would know the Divine's advice and remind them to keep their promises with the Divine, he dismissed the crowd and they all returned to their homes.

The Beginning of King Mosiah II's Reign

⁵ King Mosiah II began to reign in his father's stead. ⁶ He began to reign when he was 30 years old. At this time it was 476 years since Lehi and Sariah left Jerusalem. ⁷ King Benjamin lived for 3 more years before he passed away. ⁸ King Mosiah II was a righteous king because he took all of the Divine's advice. ⁹ King Mosiah II had his people grow farms. ¹⁰ He himself was in the fields tilling the earth so he wouldn't become a burden to his people. He wanted to be just like his father. ¹¹ There was no contention among all the Nephites for 3 years.

Chapter 5

The Expedition for the Nephite Colony in the Land Of Nephi

¹ After King Mosiah II had peace for 3 years he wanted to know what happened to the Nephites who went to live in the land of Nephi during his father's reign. ² The Nephites hadn't heard anything from them since they left the land of Zarahemla and they constantly asked King Mosiah II to find out what happened to them ³ King Mosiah II commissioned a team of the Nephites' strongest 16 people to go to the land of Lehi to discover what happened to their family and friends.

⁴ The next morning they started the expedition! The crew was lead by Ammon, who was a strong man and a descendant of Zarahemla. ⁵ They didn't know which direction they should travel in the wilderness to go to the land of Lehi, so they wandered for forty days. ⁶ After they had wandered for forty days they came to a hill which was to the north of Shilom, and they set up camp.

⁷ Ammon took three of his crewmates, who were named Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went into the land of Nephi. ⁸ They met the king of the lands of Nephi and Shilom, ⁹ but they were surrounded by the king's guards and were arrested and thrown into prison.

Meeting King Limhi

¹⁰ After they had been in prison for three days they were brought before the king again and had their handcuffs taken off. ¹¹ They stood before the king and were permitted, or perhaps "forced" is a better word, to answer the questions he had for them. ¹² He said to them, "I am King Limhi, the son of Noah. Noah was the son of Zeniff, who was made king by his people. Zeniff came out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, because it was the homeland of his ancestors.

¹³ Why were you so bold as to come near me when I was walking with my guards outside of the city gates? ¹⁴ The only reason I haven't had my guards execute you is because I want you to answer this question. Answer me!"

¹⁵ When Ammon saw that he was to speak he went and bowed to the king. When he arose he said "Oh, king, I am very thankful that I am alive and able to speak to you. ¹⁶ I will try to speak boldly, because I am sure that if you had known who I am you would not have arrested me. ¹⁷ I am Ammon, a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come out of the land of Zarahemla to discover what happened to our family and friends whom Zeniff lead out of that land."

¹⁸ After King Limhi listened to Ammon he was very happy and said "Now I know that my family and friends in the land of Zarahemla are still alive! ¹⁹ I want to celebrate and tomorrow morning I

will also tell my people to celebrate! ²⁰ We are enslaved to the Lamanites and are taxed with an unreasonable tax. ²¹ Now you, our fellow Nephites, will help us escape our enslavement and free us from the Lamanites! We would even be willing to be your slaves, ²² because being enslaved by the Nephites would be better than having to pay these taxes to the king of the Lamanites.”

²³ King Limhi then ordered his guards not to handcuff Ammon or his crew anymore, but instead they should go to the hill to the north of Shilom and bring the rest of the crew into the city so they could all eat, drink, and rest from their expedition. ²⁴ The expedition had been very difficult and they had endured hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

King Limhi's Sermon

²⁵ The next morning King Limhi sent out a proclamation among all his people telling them to gather together at the temple to hear him speak. ²⁶ When they gathered together he said to them, ²⁷ “Oh, my people! Lift your chins and be comforted! It won't be long till we will no longer be slaves to our enemies! Our past attempts to gain freedom were done in vain, but I believe it is still a fight worth fighting!

Trust God

²⁸ Lift your chins and celebrate! Put your trust in God, who was the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob! ²⁹ Put your trust in the God who freed the descendants of Israel from Egyptian enslavement, enabled them to walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them manna that so they wouldn't die in the wilderness. The Divine did this and many more things for them. ³⁰ That same God led our ancestors out of the land of Jerusalem and guided and protected us up until even now. ³¹ It is because of our poor life choices that we have become enslaved to the Lamanites.

Zeniff's Legacy is Enslaving His People

³² You are all witnesses how Zeniff, who was made king over this people, was overzealous in trying to inherit the land of his ancestors. ³³ He was deceived by the cunning and craftiness of King Laman I of the Lamanites. King Laman I entered into a treaty with King Zeniff and gave Zeniff's people the cities of Nephi and Shilom and the land surrounding them. ³⁴ The only reason why King Laman I gave them this land was so he could enslave them. ³⁵ At this time we pay a 50% tax of our corn, barley, and all of our other grain to Laman I, king of the Lamanites. We are also taxed 50% of the excess of our flocks and herds. ³⁶ We are taxed 50% of all of our possessions that the king of the Lamanites wants and if we don't comply he takes our lives! ³⁷ Isn't this too much to tolerate? ³⁸ Isn't this a terrible hardship?

³⁹ We have a good reason to mourn! ⁴⁰ We have a good reason to mourn because many of our family and friends have been killed in vain because of this iniquity. ⁴¹ If our people hadn't have been greedy in wanting to take back our land this great evil would not have come upon us.

King Limhi's People Face the Consequences of Their Actions

⁴² However we would not listen to the Divine and instead we fought and killed each other. ⁴³ We killed a man who was chosen by God. He told our people about our wickedness and abominations and prophesied of many things which are going to happen, including the coming of Christ. ⁴⁴ He said that Christ was the God, the Creator of all things, and that he would take a human form, and that humanity's form was modeled after the Divine. ⁴⁵ In other words, he said that humanity was created to look like God, and that God would come and join humanity, including having a human body and live on Earth. ⁴⁶ Because he said this our people executed him. We also did many other things to bring the wrath of God upon us.

⁴⁷ This is why we are enslaved and treated so poorly by the Lamanites. ⁴⁸ The Divine has said 'I won't help my people when they are misbehaving, and instead will make it more difficult for them to prosper. Their misdeeds will be hurdles for them. ⁴⁹ If my people plant filthiness then they will only harvest poisonous husks. ⁵⁰ If my people plant filthiness they will harvest the east wind which will bring them immediate destruction.'

⁵¹ The Divine's promises are fulfilled and we have been killed and endured hardships. ⁵² However, if we turn to the Divine and put your trust in Them with all of our heart and mind, They will, according to Their will and pleasure, free us from slavery."

⁵³ King Limhi said many more things, but only a few of them are written in this book. After King Limhi finished speaking to his people he told them everything about their family and friends who were in the land of Zarahemla. ⁵⁴ He had Ammon stand up in front of the crowd and teach all of the history of Zarahemla from the time that Zeniff left until Ammon himself left the land. ⁵⁵ He also told them the last words which King Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to King Limhi's people so they would understand what King Benjamin taught.

Discovery of the Jaredites and Their Untranslated Records

⁵⁶ After he had done all of this, King Limhi dismissed the crowd and told them to return to their own homes. ⁵⁷ He had the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left Zarahemla brought to Ammon so he would read them. ⁵⁸ As soon as Ammon had read the record, King Limhi asked if he knew how to translate languages. ⁵⁹ Ammon told him that he didn't know how.

⁶⁰ King Limhi said to Ammon, "My peoples' hardships were so great that I sent 43 of my people on an expedition into the wilderness in hopes that they would find the land of Zarahemla and we could ask our family and friends to free us from this enslavement. ⁶¹ This expedition team was lost in the wilderness for many days, but they kept exploring. While they didn't find Zarahemla they were able to find their way back home from a land which had many rivers and lakes. ⁶² This land was covered with both human and animal bones amidst all kinds of ruins. ⁶³ This land had been as populated as Israel! ⁶⁴ To prove that these things are true they brought back 24 plates

made out of pure gold and are filled with engravings. ⁶⁵ They also brought back large breastplates made of brass and copper which are still ready for battle. ⁶⁶ They also brought swords, but the blades are rusted and the hilts have completely rusted away.

⁶⁷ There is no one in the land that is able to translate the language that these engravings are written in. ⁶⁸ That is why I asked if you could translate. ⁶⁹ If you are not able to, do you know of someone who can? I want these records to be translated into our own language. ⁷⁰ These writings might tell us if there are any surviving members of this people. ⁷¹ These writings might tell us about the people who have been destroyed! I want to know what caused their destruction.”

⁷² Ammon said to King Limhi “I can assure you, oh king, that I know of a man who can translate these records. He can look at and translate all ancient records! It is a gift from God. ⁷³ The things he uses are called ‘interpreters’. No one can use them unless the Divine asks them to, and if they try without Divine direction they would die. ⁷⁴ Those who are asked to look in them are called ‘seers’. ⁷⁵ The king of the Nephites in Zarahemla is the man who is asked to do this and has this great gift from God.”

⁷⁶ Then the king asked, “Are seers greater than prophets?” ⁷⁷ Ammon replied “A seer reveals and prophesies as well. No one can have a greater gift other than the actual power of God. While humanity cannot wield all of the Divine’s power, God can still give humanity a great deal of power. ⁷⁸ A seer can know of things which happened in the past or will happen in the future. ⁷⁹ Everything will be revealed by them! They will show secret things; hidden things will come to light; the unknown will be made known. ⁸⁰ They will show things that otherwise could not be known. ⁸¹ God has provided a way so that humanity, through their trust in God, can perform mighty miracles. Seers are a great benefit to humanity.”

⁸² When Ammon said this, the king rejoiced and thanked God by saying, ⁸³ “Without a doubt there is a great mystery contained within these plates! These interpreters were, without a doubt, given so we could unfold these kinds of mysteries. ⁸⁴ Oh, how marvelous are the works of the Divine! They are so patient with Their people. ⁸⁵ This is such a contrast with the blind stubbornness of humanity, who refuse to seek wisdom or be ruled by it. ⁸⁶ Humanity is like a wild flock which flees from the shepherd and are scattered and eventually eaten by the beasts of the forest.”

Chapter 6

The History of the Nephite Colony: The Reign of Zeniff

An account of his people from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.

First Expedition: The Civil War in the Wilderness

¹ I, Zeniff, was very well educated in the language of the Nephites. I knew the land of Nephi, which was our ancestors' first homeland, and was sent as a spy to determine where the Lamanite armies were so we could ambush and destroy them. ² However, when I saw the goodness among the Lamanites I didn't want them to be destroyed. I wanted our leader to make a treaty with them, and I fought my crew in the wilderness for this. ³ Our leader was an austere and bloodthirsty man and ordered my execution. A great fight broke out among our crew, and luckily I survived. ⁴ Parent fought against parent and sibling fought against sibling until a large portion of our army was destroyed in the wilderness. ⁵ Those of us who survived returned to the land of Zarahemla to tell the spouses and children of those who were killed.

Second Expedition: Lessons Not Learned but a Land Gained

⁶ I was overzealous in wanting to reclaim the land of our ancestors, and gathered together many other people who wanted to reclaim the land and restarted our expedition. However, we were slow to remember the Divine and we were beaten down with famine and other hardships. ⁷ After many days of wandering in the wilderness we set up camp where we had our civil war in the wilderness, which was near the land of our ancestors.

⁸ I went with four others into the city to the king so I could get to know him a little. I wanted to know if I would be able to go into the land with my people and live in it in peace. ⁹ When I met with the king he promised me that he would give me the lands of Nephi and Shilom. ¹⁰ He told his people that they should leave those lands so my people and I would be able to live in it. ¹¹ We built buildings and repaired the walls of the cities of Nephi and Shilom. ¹² We began to farm with all kinds of seeds like corn, wheat, barley, neas, sheum, and all sorts of fruits. We began to have families and prosper in the land.

¹³ King Laman I was very cunning and tricky in how he enslaved my people. He gave us the land that we wanted and we lived in it. ¹⁴ After we lived in our land for 12 years King Laman began to grow uneasy because of how strong my people were growing. It was getting to the point where the Lamanites would not be able to overpower and enslave us. ¹⁵ The Lamanites were a lazy and idolatrous people who wanted to enslave us so they could benefit from the work that we did. They wanted to gorge themselves upon our livestock and crops.

The Battles with the Lamanites

¹⁶ King Laman I started rallying his people to fight against mine and there began to be wars and contentions in the land. ¹⁷ In the 13th year of my reign, in the south of the land of Nephi near the border of Nephi and Shilom, my people were feeding their flocks and tilling their fields when a large Lamanite army came and massacred them in order to take their livestock and crops. ¹⁸ Those that survived the massacre fled to the city of Nephi and asked me to protect them.

¹⁹ I armed them with bows, arrows, swords, cimeters, clubs, slings, and every kind of weapon we could create. We then went and battled the Lamanites. ²⁰ We went to battle with the Lamanites with the strength of God! ²¹ We prayed to the Divine that we would be protected from our enemies, which reminded us of how the Divine protected our ancestors who were in similar situations. ²² God heard our prayers and answered them; we went to battle with Divine strength! ²³ We battled the Lamanites and in one day and night we killed 3,043 of them. We killed them until we drove them out of our land. ²⁴ I myself, with my own hands, helped bury their dead. ²⁵ We were filled with a great sorrow when we learned that 279 of our family and friends had also been killed.

A Fragile Peace

²⁶ Once we resecured our sovereignty, we began to reestablish peace in our kingdom. ²⁷ Despite this peace, I had every kind of weapon be created so I would be able to arm my people the next time the Lamanites came to wage war against us. ²⁸ I set patrols around the land so the Lamanites wouldn't be able to ambush and destroy us. ²⁹ This is how I guarded my people and flocks so they didn't fall into the hands of our enemies.

³⁰ We inherited and possessed the land of our ancestors for 22 years. ³¹ I had my people grow all sorts of grain and fruit ³² as well as create fine linen and cloth so we could clothe our nakedness. ³³ This is how we had peace and prosperity for 22 years.

The Wars Restart

³⁴ After King Laman I died, his son, King Laman II, began to reign in his stead. ³⁵ King Laman II began to rally his people to go to war against mine. ³⁶ I sent spies out around the land of Shemlon to learn how they were preparing for war. I did this so that we could properly prepare for battle and they would be unable to destroy us. ³⁷ They came to attack us through northern Shilom with their large armies who were armed with bows, arrows, swords, cimeters, stones, and slings. ³⁸ They had shaved their heads and were naked except for a leather loincloth.

³⁹ I had parents and their children hide in the wilderness for safety. ⁴⁰ I armed even the elderly and youth who were able to fight and gathered them together to battle the Lamanites. I assembled them according to their rank and age. ⁴¹ Then the battle against the Lamanites began. ⁴² Even I, in my old age, went to battle against the Lamanites. ⁴³ We battled with the strength of the Divine.

Lamanite Perception of Shared History

⁴⁴ The Lamanites knew nothing about God nor the strength of the Divine; they depended upon their own strength. ⁴⁵ Regardless, they were a strong, wild, ferocious, and bloodthirsty people who believed the false history of their ancestors. ⁴⁶ They believed that they were forced out of the land of Jerusalem because of the wickedness of Lehi and Sariah. They also believed that Laman and Lemuel were wronged by their family in the wilderness and at sea. ⁴⁷ They also believed that they were wronged while in the land of Nephi-Lehi after they had crossed the sea. ⁴⁸ However, they believe this because Nephi followed the Divine's advice better than them. Nephi sought Divine assistance and guidance and he received it. Since Nephi was able to follow Divine advice better he was given more responsibilities, like leading their family in the wilderness.

⁴⁹ Laman and Lemuel were angry with Nephi because they didn't know what their God was doing. ⁵⁰ Laman and Lemuel were angry with Nephi while they were at sea because they hardened their hearts to God. ⁵¹ Laman and Lemuel were angry with Nephi and tried to kill him when they had arrived in the promised land because they said he had taken away their right to rule. ⁵² Laman and Lemuel were angry with Nephi again when he fled into the wilderness with the brass plates, as the Divine told him to. They accused him of robbing them.

⁵³ This is how the Lamanites taught their children: they should hate, rob, plunder, and murder the Nephites and to everything they could to exterminate them. The Lamanites have an eternal hatred toward the Nephites. ⁵⁴ This hatred is why King Laman I, through his cunning and lying tricks, made his appealing promises and deceived me; he wanted me to bring my people into this land so he could destroy us. We have suffered for many years because of this.

Zeniff Concludes his Reign

⁵⁵ After I, Zeniff, told all of my people these things about the Lamanites I rallied them to go to war against them with all of their strength and to trust God. We fought the Lamanites face-to-face. ⁵⁶ We killed too many Lamanites to count and were able to force them out of our land again. ⁵⁷ We returned to our land and tended to our flocks and fields. ⁵⁸ I have grown old and have given the kingdom to one of my sons. I have nothing more to say except may God bless my people. Amen.

Chapter 7

The History of the Nephite Colony: The Reign of King Noah

Wickedness of the King and Priests

¹ Zeniff gave the kingdom to his sons named Noah, and Noah reigned as king of the Nephite colony in his stead. However, Noah did not behave like his father. ² King Noah didn't take the Divine's advice, and instead did whatever he felt like. ³ He had many wives and mistresses ⁴ and normalized many terrible things. ⁵ The Nephite colony used their sexuality in very harmful ways and did many other wicked things. ⁶ King Noah also implemented a 20% tax on everyone's gold, silver, ziff, copper, brass, iron, livestock, and crops. ⁷ He used these taxes to support the lifestyle that he and his priests and their spouses and paramours lived. This is how King Noah changed how the kingdom functioned.

⁸ He also got rid of all of the priests that had been ordained by King Zeniff and ordained new ones in their stead. These new priests had hearts full of pride. ⁹ Their lazy lifestyle, materialism, and harmful sexuality was supported by the taxes from the kingdom. The people worked very hard to support their wickedness. ¹⁰ The Nephite colony had also become materialistic because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests.

¹¹ King Noah built many elegant and large buildings which were ornately decorated with fine wooden carvings as well as gold, silver, iron, brass, ziff, and copper. ¹² He had a large palace built with a throne - both of which were also ornately decorated with gold, silver, and other precious things.

¹³ He had his artists create beautiful works of art within the walls of the temple which were made out of wood, copper, and brass. ¹⁴ The seats of the high priests within the temple, which were placed higher than all the other seats, were also ornamented with pure gold. ¹⁵ King Noah also had supports built for the high priests' bodies and arms so they could keep lying and flattering the Nephite colony even when they were physically tired.

¹⁶ King Noah also had a very tall tower built near the temple. This tower was so large he could overlook the entire lands of Shilom, which was controlled by the Nephite colony, and Shemlon, which was controlled by the Lamanites. ¹⁷ He had many other buildings built in the land of Shilom. ¹⁸ He had a huge tower built on the hill in northern Shilom. This hill had once been a hiding place for their ancestors, Nephi's children, who were fleeing the land.

¹⁹ This is what he did with the riches which he taxed out of his people.

²⁰ He loved his riches and spent his time partying with his wives and mistresses as well as his priests and their spouses and paramours. ²¹ He had also planted vineyards and built wine

presses around the land. The land was overflowing with wine and he and many others had become alcoholics.

Conflicts With The Lamanites

²² The Lamanites began to attack the Nephite colony. At first it was only a couple Lamanites who were killing Nephites in their fields and ranches. ²³ King Noah posted patrols around the land to discourage Lamanite attacks, but he didn't post enough and the Lamanites were able to overpower and kill them, and steal Nephite livestock. ²⁴ This is how the Lamanites began to destroy and exercise their hatred upon the Nephites.

²⁵ King Noah sent his armies to attack the Lamanites and was able to push them back for a time. The Nephite colony returned home to enjoy the spoils of war. ²⁶ The Nephites were filled with pride because of this victory, and said that their fifty soldiers could defeat a Lamanite army of thousands! ²⁷ They bragged and loved killing the Lamanites, who were their family. They did this because their wicked king and priests had normalized and encouraged it.

Abinadi's First Warning

²⁸ There was a man who lived in the Nephite colony named Abinadi. He went around the colony and prophesied by saying: ²⁹ "The Divine has spoken to me and said: ³⁰ 'Go tell the Nephite colony that the Divine says the following to them: ³¹ Woe to this people; I have seen your abominations, wickedness, and harmful sexuality! Unless you give up your wicked ways and seek reconciliation, then I will angrily visit you! ³² Unless you give up your wicked ways and seek reconciliation, then I will turn you over to your enemies ³³ and you will be enslaved and beaten by them. ³⁴ If this happens this Nephite colony will know that I am here, I am their God, and that I don't tolerate this wickedness among my people. ³⁵ Unless you give up your wicked ways and restart your relationship with me, then you will be enslaved and no one will be able to free you except me. ³⁶ When you pray to me I won't answer you; you will have to endure the hardships inflicted by your enemies. ³⁷ Unless you turn away from your wickedness, dive to the depths of humility, and seek reconciliation, then I will not hear or help you.' ³⁸ This is what the Divine told me to tell you."

³⁹ When Abinadi said this to the Nephite colonists they were angry with him and tried to kill him. However, the Divine protected Abinadi and helped him escape. ⁴⁰ When King Noah heard what Abinadi said to the Nephite colonists he was also furious! ⁴¹ He said "Who does this Abinadi think he is? Why should I or my people tolerate him talking about us like this? Who is this God that supposedly will bring this great hardship upon my people? ⁴² Bring Abinadi to me so I can kill him! He has said these things to start a civil war among my people. He needs to be killed."

⁴³ The Nephite colonists were spiritually blind and hardened their hearts to the things Abinadi had said. From that time on Abinadi was a wanted man. ⁴⁴ King Noah also hardened his heart to the word of God and didn't give up the evil things he was doing.

Abinadi's Second Warning

⁴⁵ After being on the run for two years Abinadi went among the Nephite colonists again, but in disguise so they wouldn't recognize him. He prophesied and said: ⁴⁶ "The Divine said to me 'Abinadi, go and prophesy to my people, the Nephite colonists, that they have ignored what I had you say to them and haven't given up their wicked ways and sought reconciliation. ⁴⁷ I will angrily and fiercely visit them because of their wickedness and abominations. Woe to this generation! ⁴⁸ Go stretch your hand out and tell them that the Divine says the following to them: This generation will be beaten and enslaved because of its wickedness! ⁴⁹ You will be treated like animals! Your corpses will be picked over by vultures, dogs, and wild animals! ⁵⁰ King Noah's life will be as worthless as a coat in a fire. King Noah will come to know that I am God!

⁵¹ I will let you endure extremely difficult hardships, including famine and disease. You will howl all day long! ⁵² Your hardships will be tied to your backs like a pack mule. ⁵³ Hail will fall from the sky and hit you. The eastern wind will come and beat down upon you. Insects will come and eat away all of your crops. ⁵⁴ You will be afflicted with a terrible disease. I will allow all of this to happen because of your wickedness and abominations.

⁵⁵ Unless you give up your wicked ways and seek reconciliation, then you will be wiped off the face of the earth. ⁵⁶ Despite you being destroyed you will leave your history behind and I will protect it for other nations which will arise on this land. ⁵⁷ This way I can show your abominations to other nations.'" ⁵⁸ Abinadi prophetically chastised them in many other ways.

Abinadi Is Jailed

⁵⁹ The Nephite colonists were angry with him so they arrested him and took him to King Noah and said: ⁶⁰ "We have brought you a man who has prophesied evil things regarding us; he said God will destroy us! ⁶¹ He also prophesied that your life would be as valuable as a coat in a fire. ⁶² He said that you would be like dry grass which is trampled on by animals. ⁶³ He said you are like seeds of a weed that will spread over the whole land. He pretends like God has said all of this. ⁶⁴ He said that all of this will happen unless you give up your wicked ways and seek reconciliation. He said all of this will happen *because* of your wicked ways.

⁶⁵ Oh king, what evil thing have you or your people even done that deserves condemnation from either God or this man? ⁶⁶ Both you and us are guiltless! We have done nothing wrong. This man lies about you and his prophecies are useless. ⁶⁷ We are strong and there's no way we could be enslaved or overpowered by our enemies. You have prospered in the land and will continue to do so. ⁶⁸ Here is the man; we turn him over to you. Deal with him whatever way you think is right."

Abinadi Is Tested with Isaiah 52:7-10

⁶⁹ King Noah threw Abinadi into prison. ⁷⁰ He also had his priests gather together to decide what to do with Abinadi. ⁷¹ The priests said to the king, "Bring him to us so we can question him." ⁷² The king listened to his priests and had Abinadi brought to them. ⁷³ They asked him questions in an attempt to trick him and justify punishing him. ⁷⁴ However, Abinadi boldly answered the

priests' questions correctly, and to their astonishment he was never tricked. ⁷⁵ Instead of being tricked he surprised the priests with his answers.

⁷⁶ A priest among them named Fawn said to him: "What does Isaiah 52:7-10 mean, which was written and taught by our ancestors? ⁷⁷ These verses say 'How beautiful upon the mountains are those who bring good news, teach peace and freedom, and say 'your God reigns!' ⁷⁸ Your guards will shout for joy together when they see the Divine return to Zion with their own eyes. ⁷⁹ Shout for joy together, you ruins of Jerusalem, because God comforts Their people and protects Jerusalem. ⁸⁰ The Divine shows Their power to all the nations; the entire earth will see Divine freedom!"

⁸¹ Abinadi said to the priests "Are you even priests? You pretend to teach this people and pretend to understand the spirit of prophesy, but you need me to explain what this scripture means? ⁸² Woe to those who corrupt the ways of God! If you *do* understand these things, you certainly have not taught them; you corrupt them! ⁸³ You have not taken the time to understand what this is trying to say, which was unwise. What do you even teach the Nephite colonists?" ⁸⁴ The priests said, "We teach the law of Moses."

⁸⁵ Abinadi scoffed, "If you teach the law of Moses, why don't you keep it? ⁸⁶ Why do you love money? ⁸⁷ Why are you sexually harmful? Why do you encourage other people to also be wicked like you? These things made the Divine have to send me to prophesy terrible things about this people. ⁸⁸ Don't you know that I'm telling the truth? ⁸⁹ You know that I am and should be trembling before God! ⁹⁰ You will have to face the consequences of saying you teach the law of Moses when you actually don't! ⁹¹ What do you even know about the law of Moses? ⁹² Here's a test for you: do you gain freedom by keeping the law of Moses?" ⁹³ They said that you *do* gain freedom by keeping the law of Moses.

Abinadi's Lesson on the 10 Commandments (Exodus 20: 2-17) and his Third and Final Warning

⁹⁴ Abinadi said to them "I know if you take the Divine's advice you will be freed. ⁹⁵ If you take the advice that They gave Moses on mount Sinai, saying 'I am your God, who led you out of Egypt and freed you from Egyptian enslavement. ⁹⁶ You shouldn't worship any other god. ⁹⁷ You shouldn't worship a statue or anything that simply resembles something in the Heavens above or Earth beneath.'

⁹⁸ Have you done all of this? I'm here to tell you that you have not! ⁹⁹ Have you taught the Nephite colonists that they should do all of this? I'm here to tell you that you have not!"

¹⁰⁰ After King Noah heard Abinadi say this he said to his priests "Get this man out of my sight and kill him. He's crazy; what use is he to us?" ¹⁰¹ The priests went to grab him when he said, "Do not touch me! God will kill you if you touch me until after I have said the things I was sent to say to you! ¹⁰² I also haven't explained Isaiah 52:7-10 yet as you asked me to. God will not allow me to be killed right now. ¹⁰³ I need to do everything that God has asked me to do. You are

angry with me because I have told the truth. ¹⁰⁴ You think I am crazy because I have spoken the word of God.”

¹⁰⁵ After Abinadi said this, King Noah’s people didn’t dare touch him, ¹⁰⁶ because the Spirit of God was upon him. Abindai’s face shined brightly, just like Moses’ did on Mount Sinai while he talked with the Divine. ¹⁰⁷ He spoke with power and authority from God, and continued to speak and said: “Since you see that you don’t have the power to kill me I will finish my message. ¹⁰⁸ I see that me pointing out your wicked behaviors cuts to your heart. I also see that what I am telling you fills you with wonder and amazement, but it also fills you with anger. ¹⁰⁹ Regardless of how you feel I will say everything that I need to. Afterwards it doesn’t matter what you do with me because I know that the Divine will treat me well. ¹¹⁰ However, I will tell you this: whatever you do with me will foreshadow your own fates.

¹¹¹ I will now read to you the remainder of the Divine’s advice, because I sense that you aren’t as familiar with it as you should be. ¹¹² Instead of being familiar with the Divine’s advice, I sense that you have studied and taught wickedness most of your lives. ¹¹³ As I was saying, ‘You shouldn’t worship a statue or anything that simply resembles something in the Heavens above or Earth beneath. ¹¹⁴ Don’t worship or serve these false gods; I want your love! If you reject and hate me the consequences will ripple out for three or four generations. However, I will show compassion to those that love me and take my advice for thousands of generations! ¹¹⁵ Do not use my name to justify your own wicked actions; I will hold everyone who does this accountable.

¹¹⁶ Remember the Sabbath day and keep it holy. ¹¹⁷ You have six days to do all of your work; on the Sabbath just relax and let your kids, employees, livestock, and strangers do the same. ¹¹⁸ God worked for six days when creating Heaven and Earth and everything in them. God likewise rested on the Sabbath and made this act of resting a holy one.

¹¹⁹ Honor your parents so that you live a long life in the land that God has given to you. ¹²⁰ Don’t kill people. ¹²¹ Don’t cheat on your spouse. ¹²² Don’t steal. ¹²³ Don’t tell lies about others. ¹²⁴ Don’t long to take away someone’s house, spouse, employee, livestock or anything else that is theirs.”

Chapter 8

The History of the Nephite Colony: The Reign of King Noah

Abinadi Continues his Lesson and Third and Final Warning

Atonement Saves, not the Law

¹ After Abinadi had recited Exodus 20:2-17, he said to them “Have you taught the Nephite colony to follow all of this advice? ² No! If you had the Divine wouldn't have sent me to teach it to them and make prophecies about an unfavorable future if you don't follow the advice.

³ You claimed that you gain freedom by keeping the law of Moses. ⁴ At this time it is still a good idea to keep the law of Moses, but the time will come that we will no longer need to. ⁵ Freedom doesn't just come through keeping the law. If it weren't for God joining humanity and sacrificing His life to make up for our mistakes even those who follow the law of Moses would die.

⁶ Israel's descendants needed to have a very strict law because they were stubborn! They were eager to be wicked and reluctant to remember their God. ⁷ The law is full of actions and rituals that needed to be performed every day in an effort to get them to remember the Divine and take Their advice. ⁸ However, all of these actions and rituals just pointed to what would be given in the future.

⁹ Now, did Israel's descendants understand that this was the purpose of the law? ¹⁰ No! Many didn't understand the law because they had hard hearts. They didn't understand that it is God's coming sacrifice that frees us. ¹¹ Didn't Moses prophesy to them about the coming of the Messiah and how They would free Their people? Isn't this the same thing that every prophet has prophesied since the world began? ¹² Haven't they all basically taught the same things? ¹³ Didn't they prophesy that God would join humanity and live a powerful human life on Earth? ¹⁴ Didn't all of these prophets say that the Divine would resurrect the dead? Didn't the prophets say that in Their mortal life God would be oppressed and experience hardships?

¹⁵ Doesn't Isaiah say:

Isaiah 53

¹⁶ ‘Who believes what we have said? Who is the power of God revealed to? ¹⁷ Christ will grow up in front of us like a little plant in dry ground. He won't have any earthly title, majesty, or physical attractiveness that would be noteworthy to us. ¹⁸ He will be hated and rejected by humanity! He will be a man of sorrow who is well acquainted with grief. People turn their back on him and think he's worthless.

¹⁹ He will know all of the grief and sorrow that comes with being a human, yet we will think he was punished by God. ²⁰ He will be wounded and bruised because of our mistakes and wickedness. He will endure this to bring us peace and healing. ²¹ All of us have gone our own ways and are like stray sheep. He will come and make up for all of our mistakes.

²² He will be oppressed and beaten, but like a lamb before being sheared he won't fight it with his words. He will be brought like a lamb to the slaughter, but again won't fight it with his words.

²³ He will be taken away after an unjust trial, but who will care? He will be removed from the land of the living because of the wickedness of my people. ²⁴ They will want to bury him with criminals, but he will end up in a rich man's tomb. He will be given this honor because he was never evil with his actions or words.

²⁵ The Divine will want to crush Him and cause Him to suffer. Once He makes His sacrifice, and you accept what He offers, He will see how He has affected others and still lives on through them. This is what the Divine is truly after. ²⁶ After he suffers he will see the positive impact that He had and be satisfied with how things turned out. 'He will acquit many because he faced the consequences for their mistakes. ²⁷ Because He did this I will give Him a place among the many other great people and He will hand out rewards to the strong! He will be able to do this because He willingly endured death and made up for the many mistakes that humanity made, despite His people thinking He was a criminal.'

Abinadi Explains Isaiah 53

Nature of God

²⁸ I want you to understand that God will come and join humanity and free us. ²⁹ Since God will be a man when They join humanity He will be called 'The Son of God' ³⁰ and take the Creator's advice like everyone else. He will be both the Creator and the Son; He will be the Creator because He will be conceived by the power of God and He will be the Son because He will be human. This is how He is both the Creator and Son. ³¹ They are both the same God who is the same eternal Creator of Heaven and Earth. ³² The flesh obeys the Spirit, or in other words the Son obeys the Creator, and They are one God. The Son will endure temptations like everyone else, but He won't give into them. He will be mocked, beaten, exiled, and disowned by His people.

Atonement

³³ After all of this, and after he performs many amazing miracles among humanity, he will be 'brought like a lamb to the shearer' and won't fight with his words. ³⁴ He will be brought, crucified, and killed. God will endure death. The instinct to survive will be superseded by the Creator's goals. ³⁵ This is how God will break the chains of death and gain victory over it! God will give the Son the power to be an intermediary between the Creator and Humanity. ³⁶ The Son will ascend to Heaven and be full of mercy and compassion for humanity. ³⁷ Since He will take responsibility for humanity's mistakes He will be able to break the chains of death for others while still meeting the demands for justice.

Who the Atonement Influences

³⁸ Who can tell me who are His children? ³⁹ Remember, when He has made His sacrifice He will see who he has positively affected and lives on through. ⁴⁰ Who do you think it is? Who did He affect and whom will He live on through? ⁴¹ It is whoever heard what the prophets have said about Him joining humanity. ⁴² It is those who have taken to heart what these prophets taught and trusted that the Divine would free Their people and look forward to that day. ⁴³ These are the people who are affected by him and whom he lives on through! These are the people who will inherit the realm of God! ⁴⁴ These are the people whose mistakes he made up for. These are the people whom he will die for to free them from their mistakes. ⁴⁵ Aren't these the people who have been affected by Him and whom He lives on through?

Definition of a Prophet

⁴⁶ Isn't a prophet just a righteous person who has opened their mouth to prophesy, with the intention of not breaking the 3rd Commandment? Isn't this who the prophets have been since the world began? ⁴⁷ They are the people who have been affected by the Son and whom he lives on through. They are the people that Isaiah 52:7-10 talk about and are the people who bring good news, teach peace and freedom, and say 'your God reigns!' ⁴⁸ They were beautiful upon the mountains! ⁴⁹ Those who are still teaching peace are also beautiful upon the mountains! ⁵⁰ Those who will teach peace in the future will be beautiful upon the mountains and always will be!

Resurrection

⁵¹ It isn't just the prophets, though. The One who brings good news and is the founder of peace is also beautiful upon the mountains. ⁵² This is the Divine, who has given freedom to Their people. ⁵³ If it weren't for His sacrifice and freedom He gave us, which was planned for since the creation of the world, then humanity would die. ⁵⁴ However, the chains of death have been broken and the Son will rule and have power over death and resurrect the dead! ⁵⁵ Those who believed in Christ before He is resurrected will be part of the first resurrection.

⁵⁶ The resurrection of all the prophets and everyone who trusted what they said and followed the Divine's advice will be the first people to be resurrected. ⁵⁷ They will rise to dwell with God, who has freed them. They have eternal life because of Christ, who has broken the chains of death.

⁵⁸ Those who never got the opportunity to learn about the gospel before they died will also be among the people who are resurrected first. ⁵⁹ The Divine will free these people and they will be among the first resurrected and have eternal life! ⁶⁰ Little children will also have eternal life.

⁶¹ You should be shaking with fear! Those who rebel against the Divine and go to their grave while living wicked lives should shake with fear because the Divine won't be able to free them! ⁶² Everyone who has willfully and knowingly rebelled against the Divine will not be among those who are the first to be resurrected. ⁶³ Doesn't this just make you shake with fear? ⁶⁴ Freedom doesn't come to people like this and the Divine can't free them. ⁶⁵ The Divine can't go back on Their word; these people have to face the consequences of their actions.

⁶⁶ One day Divine freedom will be taught to every nation, family, language, and people.

Isaiah 52:8–10

⁶⁷ 'Your guards will shout for joy together when they see the Divine return to Zion with their own eyes. ⁶⁸ Shout for joy together, you ruins of Jerusalem, because God comforts Their people and protects Jerusalem. ⁶⁹ The Divine shows Their power to all the nations; the entire earth sees that our God delivers!'"

Explanation of Isaiah 52:8-10: Fate of the Wicked and Righteous

⁷⁰ After Abinadi said this, he stretched out his hand and said, "The time will come when everyone will see the Divine's freedom! ⁷¹ Every nation, family, language, and people will see for themselves and will say that God's review and assessments are justified. ⁷² When this happens the wicked will be thrown out and this will make them howl, weep, cry, and gnash their teeth. ⁷³ This will happen only because they would not take the Divine's advice. The Divine can't free those who don't want to be freed. These people are selfish and devilish - the devil has power over them. ⁷⁴ This is that same old serpent who charmed our first parents and caused them to fall. ⁷⁵ Their precedent paved the way for all of humanity knowing evil from good, namely by opening the door for selfishness and evil and becoming subjects of the devil. ⁷⁶ Since all of humanity has engaged in some sort of selfishness and evil, all of humanity would have been kept from the presence of God forever if God wasn't willing to make Their sacrifice. ⁷⁷ Those who insist on indulging their own selfish nature, live wicked lives, and rebel against God are still under the power of the Devil. ⁷⁸ Since these people consider God to be their enemy, for them it will be as if God hadn't made the sacrifice at all.

⁷⁹ If Christ doesn't join humanity there would be no sacrifice. ⁸⁰ If Christ does not break the chains of death, defeat the permanency of death, and rise from the dead then there will be no resurrection. ⁸¹ However, there *will* be a resurrection and the grave will have no victory! Christ takes away the permanency of death. ⁸² He is the Divine light and life of the world! His light and life can never be darkened! His Divine life overpowers death. ⁸³ He enables us mortals to become immortal. He enables us corrupt people to achieve incorruption. Everyone will stand before God and will be assessed based on the type of life they lived, whether it be good or bad. ⁸⁴ If they lived good lives they will be resurrected with Divine life and happiness. However, if they lived evil lives, they will be resurrected and endure Divine punishment. ⁸⁵ These people will be turned over to the Devil to become his slaves. ⁸⁶ They lived selfish lives and never thought to ask for the Divine mercy which was extended to them. ⁸⁷ The arms of mercy were stretched out toward them but they would not reach out to them. They were warned about their wickedness but they would not abandon it. ⁸⁸ They were told to change their wicked ways and seek reconciliation, but they refused to do so.

⁸⁹ Don't you think you should shake with fear and give up your wicked ways and seek reconciliation? Don't you think that you can only be saved in and through Christ? ⁹⁰ If you teach the law of Moses then you should also teach that it just points to what is coming. ⁹¹ You should

be teaching that freedom comes through Christ the Divine, who is the very Eternal Creator.
Amen.”

Chapter 9

The History of the Nephite Colony: The Reign of King Noah

Alma Is Converted

¹ After Abinadi said all of this King Noah told the priests to take him and execute him. ² There was one among the priests named Alma, who was a descendant of Nephi. ³ While Alma was just a young man, Abinadi's words still profoundly moved him. He knew the wickedness which Abinadi testified against. ⁴ Alma begged King Noah to not execute Abinadi and to peacefully exile him instead. ⁵ Alma's suggestion made King Noah even angrier! The King threw Alma out of the chambers and sent his guards to find and kill him. ⁶ Alma ran and hid from the guards, and they weren't able to find him. ⁷ Alma hid for many days, and while he was hiding he wrote down everything Abinadi had said.

King Noah Executes Abinadi

⁸ King Noah ordered his guards to surround and restrain Abinadi. They arrested him and threw him into prison. ⁹ After three days of talking with his priests, King Noah had Abinadi brought to him again. ¹⁰ He said to him: "Abinadi, we have found you guilty of your crimes and worthy of death. ¹¹ You said that God would come down and join humanity. ¹² That is the reason why you are being put to death. However, your life may be spared if you recant all the evil things you said about me and my people."

¹³ Abinadi replied to King Noah "I will not recant what I have said to you about this people, because it is all true. ¹⁴ To prove to you how serious I am I have allowed my life to fall into your hands. ¹⁵ There is nothing that you could do to make me recant what I have said; I will even endure death if I have to. My words stand as a testament against you! ¹⁶ If you kill me you will be killing an innocent person, and this will also be a testament against you at the last day."

¹⁷ King Noah was about to release Abinadi because he was scared that Abinadi was right; he was worried that God's review and assessment of his life would be negative. ¹⁸ However, the priests began to shout at Abinadi "He has spoken poorly of the king!" ¹⁹ This made the king very angry at Abinadi and sentenced him to death.

²⁰ The guards seized Abinadi, restrained him, and burned him to death with embering sticks. ²¹ When the flames began to burn him he yelled to them "Your descendants will also burn alive many other people who accept the Divine's freedom! ²² This wickedness will lead to many diseases among you! ²³ You will be killed everywhere you go and will be scattered by your enemies like a flock driven by wild and ferocious beasts! ²⁴ You will be hunted and arrested by your enemies and then they will kill you as you have killed me! You will be burned alive! ²⁵ God punishes those who destroy Their people! ²⁶ Oh, God, receive my soul!"

²⁷ After Abinadi said these things he died from his burns in the fire. He was executed for not recanting what the Divine told him to do. His death sealed the truth of his words.

Alma's People in the Land of Mormon

Alma Secretly Reestablishes A Church

²⁸ After Alma fled from King Noah's guards he repented of his wickedness and sought reconciliation. He then went among the Nephite colony and began to teach others what Abinadi had said. ²⁹ He told others about what would happen in the future, including the freedom and the resurrection of the dead through the power and sacrifice of Christ, who Himself would be resurrected and ascend into Heaven. ³⁰ He taught everyone who would listen to him. ³¹ Alma taught people in private because he didn't want King Noah to find out he was teaching others these things. Many people came to trust what Alma was teaching them.

³² Many went to a border land called "Mormon". It was named Mormon by the king of the land, and it was named this because there were many wild animals in it depending on the season. ³³ There was a pure river in a thick forest in the land of Mormon where Alma lived and hid from King Noah's scouts. ³⁴ Those that trusted what Alma taught also went to this river. ³⁵ After many days a good number of people gathered here to hear Alma teach. ³⁶ Everyone who trusted what he taught was gathered here to hear him. ³⁷ Alma taught them and preached giving up wickedness, reconciliation, healing, and trusting the Divine.

The Purpose of Baptism

³⁸ Alma said to them "This is Lake Mormon. ³⁹ If you want to be one of God's people; if you are willing to bear one another's burdens in order to make them lighter; ⁴⁰ if you are willing to mourn with those that mourn; if you are willing to comfort those who need comfort; if you are willing to always stand as Divine examples with everything you do wherever you go your whole lives; if you are willing to do all of this in order to be freed by God and be among those in the first resurrection and have eternal life; ⁴¹ if all of these things are the desires of your hearts, why not be baptized in the name of the Divine to show Them that you have promised to help Them and take Their advice so They pour out even more of Their Spirit upon you?"

⁴² When the people heard Alma say this they clapped their hands for joy and shouted "This is the desire of our hearts!" ⁴³ One of the first people that Alma baptized was named Helam. Alma went into the water with Helam and prayed by saying "Oh, God, pour out your Spirit upon your helper so he may do this work with a holy heart." ⁴⁴ After Alma said this the Spirit of God was upon him, and he said, "Helam, I baptize you, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that you have made a promise to serve Them until your mortal body passes away. May the Spirit of the Divine be poured out upon you and grant you eternal life through Christ's freedom, which was prepared for from the beginning of the world."

⁴⁵ After Alma said this both Alma and Helam were buried in the water. When they arose and came out of the water they were happy because they were filled with the Spirit. ⁴⁶ Alma took

another person and baptized them in the same way, except Alma didn't bury himself in the water again. ⁴⁷ This is how he baptized 204 people in the land of Mormon. ⁴⁸ They were baptized in Lake Mormon and filled with the grace of God. ⁴⁹ They were called "The Church of God" or "The Church of Christ" from that time forward. ⁵⁰ Everyone who was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to Their church.

Alma Trains the Priests

⁵¹ Alma had authority from God and so he ordained priests. There was one priest for every 50 members of the church. These priests were to preach and teach about the things pertaining to the Divine's realm. ⁵² Alma told these priests not to teach anything other than the things which he and the other prophets had taught. ⁵³ He told them not to teach anything other than giving up wickedness, seeking reconciliation, and trusting the Divine who would free Their people. ⁵⁴ Alma told them that there should be no bickering among them, and they should instead look forward together as one people; they should knit their hearts together in unity and love. ⁵⁵ This is how Alma taught the priests to teach, and how they became the children of God.

⁵⁶ Alma also told them to observe the Sabbath day and keep it holy. He told them to thank God every day. ⁵⁷ He told them that the priests needed to financially support themselves. ⁵⁸ The priests were to set apart one day every week to gather people together and teach them and worship God. They were to gather together like this as often as they were able to. ⁵⁹ The priests were not to be financially supported by the people. The priests would be rewarded by the Divine for their ecclesiastical work by receiving Divine grace! They would be made strong in the Spirit and gain Divine knowledge and be able to teach it to others with Divine power and authority.

Alma Speaks to the Church

⁶⁰ Alma told the people of the church to donate what they were able. ⁶¹ Those that had more would be giving more, while those who had less would be giving less. Those that had nothing would be helped by others. ⁶² They should donate of their own free will and desire to do right by God, the priests, the needy, and the naked. ⁶³ Alma told his people that God had asked him to tell them this. ⁶⁴ Everyone did the right thing and donated to each other, both temporally and spiritually, based on what they needed and wanted.

The Church is Discovered by King Noah

⁶⁵ This was all done in the forest in the land of Mormon near Lake Mormon. ⁶⁶ This place was beautiful to the people who came to know the Divine. ⁶⁷ These people are blessed and will sing about their thankfulness forever.

⁶⁸ All this was done on the outskirts of the land so King Noah wouldn't be altered. ⁶⁹ However the King discovered what was being taught and sent spies among the people. ⁷⁰ On the day that they gathered together to hear the teachings of the Divine the spies discovered where this church was.

⁷¹ King Noah accused Alma of rallying the people to rebel against him, and so he sent an army to destroy them. ⁷² However, Alma and the Divine's people were alerted about the king's army and gathered their tents and families and fled into the wilderness. ⁷³ There were about 450 people among them. ⁷⁴ The king's army returned after they couldn't find the Divine's people.

Rebellion Against King Noah

⁷⁵ The king's armies were small because the number of soldiers was reduced. There began to be a division among those that stayed in the Nephite colony. ⁷⁶ The smaller faction began to threaten the king, which caused a great contention among them. ⁷⁷ There was a strong man in the colony named Gideon who was a part of this smaller faction. While in the throes of wrath Gideon drew his sword and swore that he would kill the king. ⁷⁸ Gideon fought the king, and when King Noah saw that he was about to lose the battle he fled and ran into his tower near the temple. ⁷⁹ Gideon pursued him and was about to take the tower and kill the king when King Noah looked toward the land of Shemlon and saw that the Lamanite army had launched an invasion and were already in their land.

⁸⁰ King Noah cried out in anguish ["Gideon, spare me! The Lamanites are upon us and will kill us! They will kill my people!"](#) ⁸¹ However, the king was not as concerned about his people as he was about his own life. Regardless, Gideon spared him.

The Lamanite Invasion

⁸² The king told his people to flee from the Lamanites, and he himself fled before the rest of his people were able to. They all fled into the wilderness with their spouses and children. ⁸³ The Lamanites followed, caught, and began to massacre them. ⁸⁴ King Noah told the men among the Nephite colony to abandon their wives and children and save themselves from the Lamanites. ⁸⁵ There were many that refused to leave their families and preferred to die with them. ⁸⁶ The rest abandoned their wives and children and fled.

⁸⁷ Those who stayed with their families had their attractive daughters beg the Lamanites not to kill them. ⁸⁸ The Lamanites were charmed by their beauty and chose not to massacre them. ⁸⁹ The Lamanites spared their lives, enslaved them, carried them back to the land of Nephi, and gave them their lands back under the condition that they turned over King Noah and submit to a tax. ⁹⁰ This tax was 50% of everything that they owned, including their gold, silver, and other precious things. They were to pay this tax to the king of the Lamanites every year.

⁹¹ One of the sons of King Noah, Limhi, was among those who were enslaved. ⁹² Limhi was a just man who wanted his father's life to be spared, but he was also not ignorant of his father's wickedness.

King Noah Dies As Abinadi Did

⁹³ Gideon secretly sent a team into the wilderness to search for King Noah and those who were loyal to him. ⁹⁴ The team discovered them in the wilderness, but the king and priests were not

with them. ⁹⁵ Those who had fled with the king swore in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi and seek revenge if their spouses, children, and friends who stayed with their families were killed. They were willing to die to be with them again. ⁹⁶ However, King Noah ordered them not to return. This filled them with so much anger that they burned him alive. ⁹⁷ The colonists were about to give the priests the same fate, but they fled before the colonists were able to.

⁹⁸ These colonists were about to return home to the land of Nephi when they met the team that Gideon had sent. ⁹⁹ Gideon's team told them all what had happened to their spouses and children and how they were given their land back under the condition of paying a 50% tax to the Lamanites. ¹⁰⁰ These colonists also informed Gideon's team that they had executed King Noah and that his priests had fled from them and gone farther into the wilderness. ¹⁰¹ After the smaller and larger factions of the Nephite colony had a peace ceremony they returned to the land of Nephi and celebrated that their spouses and children had not been killed. They also told Gideon what they had done to King Noah.

The History of the Nephite Colony: Enslaved by the Lamanites

Unfavorable Peace Treaty

¹⁰² The king of the Lamanites, King Laman II, promised the Nephite colonists that the Lamanites would not kill them. ¹⁰³ Since Limhi was the son of King Noah he had the kingdom given to him by the people. King Limhi likewise promised King Laman II that the colonists would pay the 50% tax to him. ¹⁰⁴ King Limhi began to rebuild the kingdom and establish peace among his people. ¹⁰⁵ King Laman II set sentries around the land of Nephi to keep King Limhi's people in the land and prevent them from fleeing into the wilderness. ¹⁰⁶ King Laman II used the taxes from the Nephite colonists to support these sentries. ¹⁰⁷ King Limhi oversaw continual peace in his kingdom for 2 years, and the Lamanites did not attack them during this time.

Lamanite Women Are Kidnapped By King Noah's Priests, More Conflict With Lamanites

¹⁰⁸ There was a place in the land of Shemlon where the young Lamanite women liked to gather together to sing, dance, and party. ¹⁰⁹ One day a small group of them gathered there to sing and dance.

¹¹⁰ The priests of King Noah were too ashamed to return to the land of Nephi and were afraid that the Nephite colonists would kill them. They also didn't dare return to their spouses and children. ¹¹¹ They wandered in the wilderness and came upon the young Lamanite women. The wicked priests secretly laid and watched them. When there were only a couple who were gathered to dance, the priests came out of their hiding places and abducted the young Lamanite

women and carried them into the wilderness. ¹¹² In total the priests abducted 24 of the young Lamanite women and carried them into the wilderness.

¹¹³ When the Lamanites discovered that their daughters were missing they thought that King Limhi's people had abducted them and the Lamanites were angry with them. ¹¹⁴ The Lamanites sent their armies and were even led by King Laman II. They went to the land of Nephi to destroy King Limhi's people.

¹¹⁵ King Limhi discovered the Lamanite invasion from the tower and saw how prepared for war they were. He gathered his people together and had them hide from and wait for the Lamanites in the fields and forests. ¹¹⁶ When the Lamanites had arrived in the land, King Limhi's people launched their attack from where they had been hiding and began to kill the Lamanites. ¹¹⁷ They were like lions fighting for their prey; it was a very bloody battle. ¹¹⁸ Despite being less than half the size of the Lamanite army, King Limhi's people began to drive the Lamanites out. ¹¹⁹ King Limhi's people were able to do this because they weren't just fighting for their own lives, but also the lives of their spouses and children. They exerted themselves and fought like dragons!

King Laman II Found and Returned

¹²⁰ They found King Laman II among the dead, but he had not died yet; he was left wounded upon the battleground as his soldiers quickly retreated. ¹²¹ The Nephite colonists took him and bandaged his wounds and then brought him to King Limhi and said to King Limhi ["Here is King Laman II, king of the Lamanites. He was wounded and fell among their dead and they left him there. We have brought him to you, now let us kill him!"](#) ¹²² However, King Limhi said ["You will not kill him! Bring him to me so I can see him"](#), and King Limhi's soldiers did as he asked.

¹²³ King Limhi asked King Laman II ["Why did you go to war against my people?"](#) ¹²⁴ [We have not broken the treaty that I made to you. What caused you to break the treaty that you made with my people?"](#) ¹²⁵ King Laman II said ["I broke the treaty because your people abducted our young women. I was angry and declared and went to war against your people because of this."](#) ¹²⁶ King Limhi had heard nothing about these abductions, and so said to King Laman II ["I will search among my people and whoever has abducted your young women will be executed."](#) ¹²⁷ King Limhi ordered a search among his people.

¹²⁸ Gideon was King Limhi's captain, and when he heard these things he said ["Please don't search the Nephite colony; we know that no one in it abducted these women. Don't you remember your father's priests? The ones that we tried to kill?"](#) ¹³⁰ [Aren't they still in the wilderness? Aren't they the ones who abducted these Lamanite women?"](#) ¹³¹ [We already know that more Lamanites are preparing to come battle us again, and our numbers are far fewer. Tell King Laman II about these priests so the Lamanites will be pacified toward us. Their large army will kill us unless the king calls them off!](#) ¹³³ [Our people refused to take the Divine's advice and give up our wickedness, and now aren't Abinadi's prophecies about us being fulfilled?"](#) ¹³⁴ [Let's pacify the king and keep our end of the treaty. After all, it is better for us to be enslaved than dead. Let's put a stop to all of this bloodshed."](#)

¹³⁵ King Limhi told King Laman II about how his father and the priests fled into the wilderness and how it was likely these priests who had kidnapped their daughters. ¹³⁶ King Laman II trusted that King Limhi was telling the truth and said “Let’s go meet my people without any weapons, and I promise you that they will not kill your people.” ¹³⁷ They followed the king and went and met the Lamanites without any weapons. ¹³⁸ When the Nephite colonists and the Lamanites met, King Laman II spoke in support of the Nephite colonists. ¹³⁹ When the Lamanites saw that the colonists were unarmed they felt compassion for them and were pacified. They returned to their land with their king in peace. ¹⁴⁰ King Limhi and his people likewise returned to their city, the city of Nephi, and began to live in peace again.

Enslavement Intensifies

¹⁴¹ However, after many days the Lamanites began to angrily rally against the Nephites again and cross the borders of the land. ¹⁴² The Lamanites didn’t dare kill any of the Nephite colonists because of the treaty that King Laman II had made with King Limhi. That being said, they did everything they could to assert their power over the Nephites, including working them to the bone. All of this fulfilled Abinadi’s prophecies. ¹⁴³ The hardships that the Nephite colonists endured were so great that there was no way that they could free themselves from the Lamanites; the Lamanites had the Nephite colonists surrounded.

¹⁴⁴ The colonists complained to King Limhi about the hardships they were enduring. There were talks about going to war against the Lamanites. ¹⁴⁵ They wore King Limhi down with their complaints and he gave his approval for them to go to war as they wanted. ¹⁴⁶ They gathered together and put on their armor and went to battle against the Lamanites to force them out of their land. ¹⁴⁷ However, the Lamanites were victorious in repelling their attacks and many colonists died as a result. ¹⁴⁸ The Nephite colonists were filled with sadness and mourned their losses. Surviving spouses mourned the loss of their partners. Children mourned the loss of their parents. Siblings mourned the loss of their siblings. ¹⁴⁹ There were many surviving spouses in the land, and you could hear their cries of fear about whether the Lamanites would come and kill them.

The Nephite Colony’s Failed Revolution and Continued Enslavement

¹⁵⁰ These cries angrily rallied the surviving Nephite colonists to go to war again. ¹⁵¹ They went to battle again, but they were, again, not victorious. They suffered many casualties. ¹⁵² They went to battle a third time and again had the same results. Those that survived returned to the city of Nephi. ¹⁵³ They had lost hope and resigned themselves to the burden of enslavement and abuse at the hands of their enemies. ¹⁵⁴ They were humbled to the depths of humility. They asked God day and night to rescue them from their hardships.

¹⁵⁵ The Divine waited to answer them because of how wickedly they had behaved. ¹⁵⁶ Regardless, the Divine heard their cries and softened the hearts of the Lamanites so they didn’t treat the Nephite colonists as poorly. However, the Divine did not yet free them from enslavement. ¹⁵⁷ The Nephite colonists began to slowly prosper in their land. They were able to grow more crops and raise more livestock so they didn’t starve. ¹⁵⁸ There were many more

women in the land than there were men, because their husbands had died in the wars. King Limhi told the surviving men to help support the widowed women and their children so they wouldn't starve to death.

¹⁵⁹ The Nephite colonists stayed together as much as possible while still being able to grow and protect their crops and livestock. ¹⁶⁰ King Limhi never went outside of the city walls without his guards, because he feared he may fall into the hands of the Lamanites. ¹⁶¹ He put sentries around the land to find the priests that had fled into the wilderness and abducted the young Lamanite women and caused all of this hardship to come upon the Nephite colony. ¹⁶² The colonists wanted to arrest and punish these priests, because they had been sneaking into the land of Nephi at night to steal crops and precious things. The sentries were posted to catch them.

Ammon's Expedition Arrives

¹⁶³ There were no more disturbances between the Lamanites and the Nephite colonists until Ammon and his team came into the Nephite colony. ¹⁶⁴ King Limhi was outside of the city's walls with his guards when he was discovered by Ammon and his team. King Limhi assumed that they were Noah's priests so he arrested them and threw them into prison. ¹⁶⁵ Had they actually been Noah's priests, King Limhi would have executed them. However, when King Limhi found that they weren't the priests but were actually fellow Nephites from the land of Zarahemla he was filled with an overwhelmingly great joy!

¹⁶⁶ Before Ammon had arrived in the Nephite colony, King Limhi had sent out a small expedition party to find the land of Zarahemla, but they were unable to find it and got lost in the wilderness. ¹⁶⁷ While they were lost they found a land which had once been populated, but these people had been destroyed and the land was now covered with dry bones. ¹⁶⁸ This expedition team assumed that this was the land of Zarahemla and returned to the land of Nephi just days before Ammon arrived. ¹⁶⁹ The expedition team had brought a record of the people whose bones they had found back with them. These records were engraved on metal plates. ¹⁷⁰ King Limhi was filled with joy again when Ammon told him that King Mosiah II had a gift from God which gave him the ability to translate records like these. Ammon was likewise filled with joy.

¹⁷¹ However, Ammon and his team were also filled with sorrow because of how many of their fellow Nephites had been killed and how King Noah and his priests convinced them to be so wicked and ignore Abinadi's warnings. ¹⁷² They mourned the death of Abinadi and the fleeing of Alma and those that went with him. These were the people who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God because they trusted what Abinadi taught. ¹⁷³ The Nephite colonists mourned their departure, because they didn't know where they fled to. ¹⁷⁴ At this point the entire colony would have gladly joined them, because they themselves had made a promise to help the Divine and take Their advice.

The Nephite Colony Makes a Promise With the Divine

¹⁷⁵ When Ammon came into the colony, King Limhi and many of the colonists made a promise with God to help Them and take Their advice. ¹⁷⁶ King Limhi and many of the colonists wanted to be baptized, but there was no one that had the Divine's permission to perform the baptism. ¹⁷⁷ Ammon declined to perform the baptisms, because he didn't think it was his place to do so. The colony didn't form a church at this time, and instead decided to wait and trust the Spirit of the Divine. ¹⁷⁸ They wanted to be like Alma and the others who had fled into the wilderness. ¹⁷⁹ They wanted to be baptized to show that they were willing to put their heart and soul into helping God. ¹⁸⁰ They waited, and I will soon tell you the story of their baptism.

¹⁸¹ Ammon, King Limhi, the Nephite expedition team, and the Nephite colony's chief concern was to free themselves from Lamanite enslavement.

Chapter 10

The History of the Nephite Colony: Escaping Lamanite Enslavement

¹ Ammon and King Limhi began to talk with the other colonists about how they could free themselves from enslavement. ² They even had everyone gather together so they could hear the ideas and opinions of everyone. ³ They couldn't come up with a viable plan to free themselves other than taking their families, livestock, and tents and fleeing into the wilderness. ⁴ There were so many Lamanites that it would be impossible for the Nephite colonists to fight their way to freedom.

⁵ Gideon went and spoke to King Limhi and said "My king, you have listened to what I had to say many times when we were fighting our family, the Lamanites. ⁶ If what I said before was of benefit, I urge you to listen to me again. I want to help you free our people from enslavement!"

⁷ King Limhi allowed Gideon to speak. ⁸ Gideon said to him, "Remember that gate in the wall on the back of the city? ⁹ The Lamanite guards who are posted there like to get drunk at night. Let's send a proclamation among our people telling them to gather their livestock so they can flee with them into the wilderness at night. ¹⁰ I will pay our tax on wine as I normally do, and the Lamanites will get drunk off of it. This will enable us to pass through the secret gate in the wall which is to the left of their camp where they will be drunk and passed out. ¹¹ We will be able to flee into the wilderness with our families and livestock. After we leave the city we will travel around the land of Shilom."

¹² King Limhi listened to what Gideon said ¹³ and had his people gather their livestock together, sent the Lamanites the tax of wine, and also gave the Lamanites an additional gift of wine. The Lamanites drank a lot of wine because they didn't have to worry about running out. ¹⁴ The Nephite colonists left during the night and fled into the wilderness with their livestock and went around the land of Shilom. They then bent their route toward the land of Zarahemla and were led by Ammon and his crew. ¹⁵ They took all of the provisions, gold, silver, and precious things that they could carry when they fled into the wilderness to start on their journey. ¹⁶ After many days of traveling in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla and joined the rest of the Nephites! ¹⁷ King Mosiah II welcomed them with joy! He also welcomed their history as well as the records which were found by Limhi's expedition team.

¹⁸ When the Lamanites discovered that the Nephite colonists had fled during the night they sent armies into the wilderness to chase them. ¹⁹ However, after the Lamanites chased the colonists for two days they could no longer follow their tracks. The Lamanite army ended up getting lost in the wilderness.

Chapter 11

The History of the People of Alma After they Fled the Nephite Colony

Land of Helam is Colonized

¹ Alma was warned by the Divine that King Noah's army was coming to attack them. Alma then warned his people and they gathered their livestock and crops and fled into the wilderness before the army arrived. ² The Divine gave them strength so the armies would not be able to catch up to them and massacre them. ³ Alma and his people fled into the wilderness for eight days ⁴ when they came to a very beautiful and pleasant land which had pure water. ⁵ They set up camp and began to farm and build buildings there - they were quite industrious and hard workers.

Alma Speaks to His People

⁶ The people loved Alma and wanted him to be their king. ⁷ However, Alma said to them, "I don't think its a good idea to have a king. The Divine said 'You shouldn't think someone is more important than another. Likewise, you shouldn't think that you are better than others'. That's why I don't think its a good idea to have a monarch. ⁸ If it were possible to always have a justice-filled monarch, then having a monarch would be fine. ⁹ However, we should remember the wickedness of King Noah and his priests. I myself was caught in a snare and did many terrible things which made it difficult for me so reconcile. ¹⁰ After a lot of work the Divine heard and answered my prayers. They made me instrumental in bringing many of you the knowledge of the truth. ¹¹ Regardless, I don't do what I do for glory. My actions aren't something to boast about.

¹² You were oppressed and enslaved by King Noah and his priests, and they convinced you to be wicked like them. You were chained by this wickedness! ¹³ Through the power of God you were freed out of these chains. ¹⁴ You were able to escape the hands of King Noah and his people and the chains of wickedness. I want you to keep your liberty that you have since gained, and not trust anyone to be your king! ¹⁵ Additionally, don't trust anyone who claims to be your teacher or minister unless they have a good relationship with the Divine and take Their advice." ¹⁶ This is how Alma taught his people: everyone was to love their neighbor as they love themselves, and there should be no contention among them.

¹⁷ Alma was their high priest and founder of their church, ¹⁸ and no one was allowed to preach or teach without the Divine's permission. ¹⁹ Alma ordained all of their priests and teachers. No one was ordained unless they were filled with justice. ²⁰ They watched over their people and nourished them with righteous teachings.

The Lamanites Attack

²¹ They began to greatly prosper in the land which they called Helam. ²² They prospered and had large families in this land and city which they named Helam. ²³ Regardless, the Divine thought it was best to chastise them and put their patience and trust to the test. ²⁴ Whoever trusts the Divine will be lifted up at the last day. ²⁵ This was the situation that Alma's people were in. ²⁶ However, I will show you how they became enslaved and how no one could free them other than the Divine. ²⁷ God freed them and showed Their mighty power to Alma's people, and there was a lot of joy when this was done.

²⁸ While Alma's people were farming in the land and city of Helam, a Lamanite army came within the borders of their land. ²⁹ Alma's family and friends were very scared by the Lamanites' appearance and fled from their fields and gathered together in the city of Helam. ³⁰ Alma went among his people and calmed them down and told them not to worry. He encouraged them to remember that the Divine would ensure their safety. ³¹ They were appeased and prayed to God to soften the hearts of the Lamanites so their lives as well as the lives of their spouses and children would be spared. ³² The Divine did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. ³³ Alma and his people surrendered themselves to the Lamanites, who then took possession of the land of Helam.

The Lamanite Army Discovers King Noah's Priests Before seizing the land of Helam

³⁴ The armies which had been following King Limhi and the rest of the Nephite colony had been lost in the wilderness for many days. ³⁵ While they wandered they found the priests of King Noah in a place they called "Amulon". These priests had colonized the land of Amulon and began to farm it. ³⁶ The leader of those priests was named Amulon. ³⁷ He begged the Lamanites not to kill him. He even sent their wives, the Lamanite women whom they abducted, to beg for the lives of their husbands. ³⁸ The pleas of the Lamanite women caused this Lamanite army to have compassion for Amulon and the priests and they did not kill them. ³⁹ Instead, Amulon and the other priests joined the Lamanites. The Lamanite army was wandering in the wilderness and trying to find the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his people.

Land of Helam is Occupied by Lamanites

⁴⁰ The Lamanites promised Alma and his people that if they would show them the way to the land of Nephi they would grant them their lives and liberty. ⁴¹ However, after Alma showed them the way to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise! The Lamanites posted sentries around the land of Helam to watch Alma and his people. ⁴² The rest of the Lamanite army went to the land of Nephi, and a couple of them returned to the land of Helam. Those that returned to Helam also brought the spouses and children of the sentries who kept watch there. ⁴³ King Laman II appointed Amulon to be the king and ruler of the people of Helam. Amulon would be king, but couldn't do anything that opposed King Laman II.

⁴⁴ In time King Amulon gained King Laman II's favor and allowed him to appoint teachers over the Lamanites. ⁴⁵ King Amulon ordained teachers in the lands of Shemlon, Shilom, and Amulon. ⁴⁶ These were all a part of the Lamanites' territory, and king Laman II had appointed lesser kings over all of these lands.

⁴⁷ King Laman II was named after his father, King Laman. ⁴⁸ He was king over many people and he appointed King Amulon's teachers in every land which his people possessed. ⁴⁹ This is how the Nephite language was taught to all of the Lamanites. ⁵⁰ The Lamanites were friendly to each other, but they didn't know anything about God. Amulon and his teachers didn't teach them anything about the Divine or the law of Moses. ⁵¹ They also didn't teach them the words of Abinadi. These teachers did, however, teach the lamanites to keep their history and write to each other. ⁵² The Lamanites began to be very wealthy and trade with each other. They became a very wise and cunning people regarding temporal things. ⁵³ They also loved all kinds of wickedness like plundering non-Lamanites.

King Amulon Persecutes Alma and His People

⁵⁴ King Amulon began to exercise authority over and persecute Alma and his people; he had all of his children bully their children. ⁵⁵ King Amulon knew Alma, because they had both been priests of King Noah. He also knew that Alma had trusted what Abinadi had said and was run out of town by King Noah. Now King Amulon was angry with Alma because he was subject to King Laman II. ⁵⁶ However, Alma and his people were subject to King Amulon, so he gave them many difficult tasks to do and posted taskmasters over them.

⁵⁷ They were afflicted so much that they cried to God. ⁵⁸ King Amulon commanded that they should stop their cries. He posted guards above them and ordered them to execute anyone who prayed to God.

The Divine Frees Alma and His People

⁵⁹ Alma and his people did not vocalize their prayers, but poured out their souls to God in their hearts. ⁶⁰ The voice of the Divine came to them during this hard time and said **"Cheer up and be comforted! I know the promise that you made to me. I promise you that I will free you from enslavement. ⁶¹ While you are still enslaved I will ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders so that you cannot even feel them. ⁶² I will do this so that you can tell others that I am with my people during their hardships."**

⁶³ Sure enough the burdens that Alma and his people endured were light. ⁶⁴ The Divine gave them strength so they could endure the hardships with ease. They accepted the Divine's will and cheerfully and patiently waited. ⁶⁵ Their trust in the Divine was so great and they were so patient that the Divine's voice came to them again, saying **"Be comforted, because tomorrow I will free you from enslavement!"** ⁶⁶ The Divine then said to Alma, **"Go tell your people that I will go with you as I free you from enslavement."**

⁶⁷ That whole night Alma and his people gathered their livestock and crops. ⁶⁸ In the morning the Divine had a deep and profound sleep over all of the Lamanites and taskmasters. ⁶⁹ Alma and his people fled into the wilderness, and after they traveled all day they set up camp in a valley. They named it the Valley of Alma because he had led their way in the wilderness. ⁷⁰ In the Valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God, because They had been merciful to them, eased their burdens, and freed them from enslavement. ⁷¹ There was no one who could have freed them from this enslavement except God. ⁷² Everyone that could speak thanked God.

⁷³ The Divine said to Alma, “Hurry and get out of the land! The Lamanites have awoken and are chasing after you! ⁷⁴ Get out of the land and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley and they will no longer be able to chase you.” ⁷⁵ They fled out of the valley and traveled into the wilderness. ⁷⁶ After they had been in the wilderness for twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla and King Mosiah II gladly received them.

King Mosiah II Announces The Nephite Colony Has Returned

⁷⁷ King Mosiah II had all of his people gather together. ⁷⁸ There weren't as many descendants of the people of Nephi as there were descendants of the people of Zarahemla (who was a descendant of Mulek). ⁷⁹ The descendants of Nephi and Zarahemla were collectively called “Nephites”, and there were over twice as many Lamanites as there were Nephites. ⁸⁰ All the descendants of Nephi and Zarahemla were gathered together into two groups. ⁸¹ King Mosiah II and others read the history of the Nephite colony to his people. Their history began when they left the land of Zarahemla and lasted until they returned to Zarahemla. ⁸² He also read the history of Alma and his people. He told the Nephites of the hardships they endured from the time they left Zarahemla till they returned to Zarahemla.

⁸³ After King Mosiah II finished reading the records of the Nephite colony the Nephites in Zarahemla were struck with wonder and amazement. They didn't know what to think. ⁸⁴ When they saw the people who had been freed from enslavement they were filled with a great joy. ⁸⁵ When they thought of their family and friends who had been killed by the Lamanites and were filled with sorrow and shed many tears. ⁸⁶ When they thought of the immediate goodness of God and the power They had to free Alma and his people from Lamanite enslavement, they raised their voices and thanked God. ⁸⁷ When the Nephites thought of their family, the Lamanites, and the wicked and polluted lives they were living, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.

The Children of King Amulon Identify as Nephites

⁸⁸ The children of King Amulon and his priests, who were the children of the women that these wicked priests had abducted, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers. ⁸⁹ They no longer wanted to share a name with their fathers, and instead called themselves Nephites.

⁹⁰ All the people in Zarahemla were considered Nephites, because the kingdom had only been given to those who were the descendants of Nephi.

Congregations Are Established Throughout The Land

⁹¹ After King Mosiah II finished speaking and reading to his people he wanted Alma to speak to them. ⁹² Alma spoke to them while they were still gathered together in large groups, and went from one group to another preaching about giving up wickedness, seeking reconciliation, and trusting the Divine. ⁹³ He urged King Limhi and his people, and everyone else who was a part of the Nephite colony which was freed from enslavement, to remember that it was the Divine that freed them.

⁹⁴ After Alma taught many things to the Nephites, King Limhi and all of his people wanted to be baptized. ⁹⁵ Alma went into the water and baptized them in the same way that he had baptized others in Lake Mormon. ⁹⁶ Everyone that trusted what Alma taught and was baptized by him belonged to the church of God.

⁹⁷ King Mosiah II allowed Alma to establish congregations throughout the whole land of Zarahemla and to ordain priests and teachers over them. ⁹⁸ This was done because there were so many Nephites that they couldn't all go to one teacher or gather together in one place to hear the word of God. It was necessary to gather together in different congregations. ⁹⁹ Every congregation had its own priests and teachers which taught what Alma had taught. ¹⁰⁰ Despite there being many congregations, they were all one church: the church of God. ¹⁰¹ They preached nothing except giving up wickedness, seeking reconciliation, and trusting the Divine. ¹⁰² There were seven congregations in the land of Zarahemla. ¹⁰³ Those who wanted to take upon God or Christ's name joined one of these congregations. They were called the people of God. ¹⁰⁴ The Divine poured out their Spirit upon them and they were blessed and prospered in the land.

The Rising Generation

¹⁰⁵ There were many in the rising generation that were too young to understand the things that King Benjamin had spoken to the Nephites, and they didn't believe the traditions of their parents. ¹⁰⁶ They did not believe what had been said about the resurrection of the dead or the coming of Christ. ¹⁰⁷ Because of their lack of trust in the Divine they did not understand what God had said, and their hearts were hardened. ¹⁰⁸ They refused to be baptized or join the church. ¹⁰⁹ They believed something entirely different and swore they always would. They were in a carnal and wicked state and refused to commune with God.

¹¹⁰ During King Mosiah II's reign these people weren't even half as numerous as the members of the church of God. However, after many disagreements among the church there were more and more of them. ¹¹¹ They tricked many in the church with their flattering words and encouraged them to become wicked. ¹¹² That is why it was a good idea to admonish those who were in the

church and tricked by the dissenters. ¹¹³ The teachers brought them before the priests, and the priests brought them before Alma, who was a high priest. ¹¹⁴ (King Mosiah II had given Alma the authority over the church). ¹¹⁵ Alma didn't know what they were doing, but there were many people who spoke out and testified about their wickedness.

¹¹⁶ Nothing like this had happened in the church before, and Alma was troubled by the situation and had them brought before the king. ¹¹⁷ Alma said to King Mosiah II, "All of these people were accused by their family and friends of all sorts of wickedness. ¹¹⁸ They refuse to give up their wickedness and seek reconciliation, and so I have brought you to them so you can judge them according to their crimes." ¹¹⁹ King Mosiah II responded to Alma by saying "Its not my job to judge them; it is your job to judge them."

Principles of Judgement for the Church

¹²⁰ Alma was troubled again. Alma was afraid of doing the wrong thing so he went and asked the Divine what he should do about this matter. ¹²¹ After he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Divine came to him and said, "You are blessed, Alma. Those who were baptized in Lake Mormon are also blessed. ¹²² You are blessed because of how much you trusted what Abinadi said. ¹²³ Those who were baptized are likewise blessed because of how much they trusted what you said. ¹²⁴ You are blessed because you have established a church among the Nephites, and they will be my people. ¹²⁵ Those who are willing to bear my name are blessed, because they will be called by my name and they are mine.

¹²⁶ You are blessed because you have asked me what to do about the transgressor. ¹²⁷ You are my helper, and I promise you that you will have eternal life. You will help me and speak for me as you gather my sheep. ¹²⁸ Those that will listen to my voice will be my sheep. Receive those people into the church and I will also receive them.

¹²⁹ Whoever is baptized and seeks reconciliation is a part of my church. ¹³⁰ I freely forgive those who trust me. ¹³¹ I am the one who answers for all of humanity's mistakes, because I am the one who created humanity. I am the one who will give those who trust me a place with me at the end. ¹³² They are called by my name, and if they know me and step forward they will have a place with me for eternity. ¹³³ Those that never knew me will step forward to stand in front of me when the second trumpet sounds off. ¹³⁴ It is then that they will know that I am their God, and that I am their Emancipator, but they will not be emancipated. ¹³⁵ I will confess that I never knew them and they will depart into the fire which was prepared for the devil and his angels. ¹³⁶ Don't let those who refuse to take my advice into my church; they are the same people I will not receive on the last day.

¹³⁷ Go and review and assess whoever breaks my law based on the mistakes they have made. ¹³⁸ If they admit their mistakes before both you and I, and sincerely seek reconciliation, then both you and I will forgive them. ¹³⁹ I will reconcile with my people every time that they sincerely turn away from their wickedness. ¹⁴⁰ You should likewise forgive everyone. Those that don't

forgive their neighbor after they have turned away from their wickedness and sought reconciliation bring themselves under condemnation.

¹⁴¹ Go and take care of things. Those who will not sincerely turn away from their wickedness and seek reconciliation will not be numbered among my people. This is how things should be done from now on.”

¹⁴² When Alma heard these words he wrote them down so he could remember them and use them to review and assess the people of the church as God said. ¹⁴³ Alma went and reviewed and assessed those that had been wicked. ¹⁴⁴ Whoever admitted and stopped making their mistakes and sought reconciliation were numbered among the people of the church. ¹⁴⁵ Those that would not admit and turn away from their wickedness and seek reconciliation had their names removed from the church.

¹⁴⁶ This is how Alma regulated all the affairs of the church. ¹⁴⁷ They began to have peace in the church again and prospered. The church walked mindfully before God and received and baptized many.

Persecution of Church Members

¹⁴⁸ The leaders of the church diligently taught God’s word in everything they did. They were persecuted by those who were not a part of the church and endured many hardships. ¹⁴⁹ With the word of God they warned their family and friends about the mistakes they were making and encouraged them to stop making them. They were told by the Divine to never stop praying and being thankful for what they had.

¹⁵⁰ The persecution that church members endured at the hands of non-church members became so great that the church began to complain to their leaders, including Alma. ¹⁵¹ Alma laid the case out before King Mosiah II, and he in turn consulted with his priests. ¹⁵² King Mosiah II sent out a proclamation throughout the land that non-church members should not persecute anyone who belonged to the church of God.

¹⁵³ All of the congregations were told that there should also be no persecution among them, and that there should instead be an equality among everyone. They were told not to let feelings of pride or superiority disturb their peace. ¹⁵⁴ They should respect everyone like how they want to be respected. Everyone is just working towards living a good life. ¹⁵⁵ The priests and teachers should also work to support themselves, unless they are too sick to do so; they could also accept charity during financial hardship. They were able to enjoy God’s grace because they did all of these things

¹⁵⁶ There was peace in the land again. The people began to have large families and began to settle in far away places in the land. ¹⁵⁷ They settled in the north, south, east, and west. They built large cities and villages in every quarter of the land. ¹⁵⁸ The Divine visited them and they prospered and became a large and wealthy people.

Conversion Of Alma The Younger And The Sons Of King Mosiah II

Alma the Younger is Very Wicked

¹⁵⁹ The sons of King Mosiah II were among those who had been removed from the church. Additionally Alma's son, Alma the Younger, had also been removed from the church. Alma the Younger was a very wicked and idolatrous man. ¹⁶⁰ He was a man of many words and very charismatic to the Nephites. He convinced many people to be wicked like him. ¹⁶¹ He became a great hindrance to the prosperity of the church of God. He stole peoples' hearts and caused dissension among them, which gave the Devil the chance to exercise power over them.

The Angel Speaks

¹⁶² He and the sons of King Mosiah II were going around trying to destroy the church of God and get people to abandon it. They did this despite what the Divine and the king had said. ¹⁶³ As they were going about rebelling against God an angel descended like a cloud and appeared to them. The angel spoke with a voice that was like thunder and caused the earth to shake where they stood! ¹⁶⁴ They were so astonished that they fell to the earth. They did not understand what the angel was saying to them. ¹⁶⁵ The angel spoke again and said, "Alma, stand up and face me! Why do you persecute the church of God? ¹⁶⁶ The Divine has said 'This is my church, and I will establish it. Nothing but the wickedness of my people will be able to overthrow it.'

¹⁶⁷ The Divine has heard the prayers of Their people and Their helper Alma, your father. ¹⁶⁸ Your father trusted God and prayed that you would come to know the truth. ¹⁶⁹ It is because of their prayers and trust in God that I have come to convince you of the power and authority of God. ¹⁷⁰ Can you argue about the power of God now? ¹⁷¹ Doesn't my voice shake the earth? ¹⁷² Can't you see me before you? ¹⁷³ I was sent here by God. ¹⁷⁴ Go! Remember the captivity of your parents in the lands of Helam and Nephi. Remember the great things that the Divine did when freeing them from enslavement! ¹⁷⁵ Alma, go. Even if you want to destroy yourself, answer their prayers and don't try to destroy the church anymore." ¹⁷⁶ After Alma the Younger was told this, the angel left.

Alma the Younger's Coma

¹⁷⁷ Alma and those that were with him fell to the earth again and were greatly astonished that they had seen an angel with their own eyes and heard it's voice of thunder which shook the earth. ¹⁷⁸ They knew that there was nothing but the power of God that could shake the earth as if it would rip apart like that. ¹⁷⁹ Alma the Younger was so astonished that he could not speak and became so weak that he couldn't even move his hands. ¹⁸⁰ He was helplessly carried by those who were with him and was brought to his father.

¹⁸¹ They told Alma the Elder everything that had happened to them, and he was filled with joy because he knew it was the power of God. ¹⁸² Alma the Elder had a crowd gather together so

they could see what the Divine had done for his son and those who were with him. ¹⁸³ He assembled the priests together and they fasted and prayed to God to ask that They would allow Alma the Younger to speak ¹⁸⁴ and be able to move his limbs again. They wanted this so that the nephites would be able to see and know the goodness and glory of God.

Alma the Younger Awakens Reborn

¹⁸⁵ After the priests had fasted and prayed for two days and nights Alma the Younger had enough strength to stand and speak. He told everyone not to worry. ¹⁸⁶ Alma the Younger said “I have given up my wickedness and sought reconciliation, and have been freed by God. I am born of the Spirit. ¹⁸⁷ The Divine said to me ‘Don’t be surprised that all of humanity - every nation, family, language, and people - must be born again. ¹⁸⁸ They must be born of God! They must give up their carnal and fallen lifestyle. They must live righteous lives and be freed by God. They must become the children of God and become new creatures! Unless they do this they can’t enter the Divine’s realm.’ ¹⁸⁹ Unless this be the case they must be thrown out. I know this because I was almost thrown out!

¹⁹⁰ I waded through suffering and pain during my coma, and sought reconciliation while I was at the brink of death. It was then that the Divine mercifully saw fit to snatch me out of hell! I am now reborn and have committed my life to God. ¹⁹¹ My soul has been freed from the poison of bitterness and chains of wickedness. ¹⁹² I was in the darkest abyss, but now I see the marvelous light of God. ¹⁹³ My soul was racked with Divine torment, but I was snatched and my soul is no longer in pain. ¹⁹⁴ I once rejected my Emancipator and denied what our ancestors taught us. ¹⁹⁵ Now I know that they foresaw that the Divine will join humanity and remember every creature They created. ¹⁹⁶ They will show Themselves to everyone and everyone will honor Them and will acknowledge Them. ¹⁹⁷ At the last day, when all of humanity will have their lives reviewed and assessed by Them, everyone will acknowledge that They are God. ¹⁹⁸ Those that lived without God in mortality will acknowledge that a Divine punishment is justified for them. ¹⁹⁹ They will shake, tremble, and be sheepish under the gaze of the Divine’s all-searching eye.”

The Beginning of the Ministry of Alma the Younger and the Sons of King Mosiah II

²⁰⁰ From that time forward Alma the Younger and those who were with him when the angel appeared taught people. ²⁰¹ They traveled around the land and preached to everyone about the things they had heard and seen. They did this with a lot of pushback and were greatly persecuted by those who didn’t believe them. Many people who didn’t believe them even resorted to violence. ²⁰² Despite their suffering they patiently worked hard to help those in the church to trust God and to take the Divine’s advice. ²⁰³ Four of them were the sons of King Mosiah II. Their names were Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Himni.

²⁰⁴ They traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla and among all the Nephites under the reign of King Mosiah II. They zealously attempted to repair all the damage that they had done to the church. ²⁰⁵ They admitted their mistakes and preached all about the things they had seen.

They also explained the prophecies and scriptures to everyone who wanted to listen to them. ²⁰⁶
This is how they were instruments in the hand of God! They helped many learn about the truth
and the Emancipator. ²⁰⁷ How blessed are they! They published peace and good news! They
declared to the Nephites that the Divine is in control.

Chapter 12

Sons of King Mosiah II Preach to the Lamanites

¹ After the sons of King Mosiah II had done all of these things, they took a couple of people with them and returned to their father, the king, and asked him if he would allow them to go to the land of Nephi ² to preach about the things that they had heard and give the word of God to their family, the Lamanites, so they would also know about the Divine and convince them about the wickedness of their ancestors. ³ They also wanted to cure them of their hatred toward the Nephites, so they could also be full of Divine joy ⁴ and the Nephites and the Lamanites could be friendly towards each other, and there would be no more contention in the land that the Divine had given to them.

⁵ They wanted Divine freedom to be taught to everyone, because they couldn't stand the idea of any human soul perishing. ⁶ Even the thought that any soul enduring a Divine punishment caused them to shake and tremble. ⁷ This is how the Spirit of the Divine worked upon those who had once been the most vile. ⁸ The Divine saw fit in Their infinite mercy to spare them. However, they feared that they would be thrown out forever and their souls suffered a lot of anguish because of their wickedness.

⁹ They begged their father for many days to let them go to the land of Nephi. ¹⁰ King Mosiah II asked the Divine if he should allow his sons to go preach among the Lamanites. ¹¹ The Divine said to King Mosiah II, "Let them go. Many Lamanites will trust what they will say and gain eternal life. I will protect your sons." ¹² King Mosiah II allowed his sons to go as they had asked. ¹³ They traveled into the wilderness to preach among the Lamanites. I will give the history of their ministry soon.

King Mosiah II Translates the Jaredite Plates

¹⁴ King Mosiah II had no one to give the kingdom to, because none of his sons would accept it. ¹⁵ He gathered the plates of brass, the plates of Nephi, and every other record which he had kept and protected as God asked. ¹⁶ He did this after he translated the records which were on the plates of gold that Limhi's people had discovered. ¹⁷ He translated these records because the Nephites desperately wanted to know what had happened to those people who had been destroyed.

¹⁸ He translated them with two stones, which were known as interpreters, which were fastened into frames in the shape of a figure-eight. ¹⁹ These had been prepared at the beginning of the world and were handed down generation-to-generation for the purpose of interpreting languages. ²⁰ They had been protected by the Divine so that everyone that would possess this land could be shown the wickedness of Their people. ²¹ Whoever possesses these is called a seer, just like in the ancient days.

²² After King Mosiah II finished translating these records he discovered that they gave the history of the people who were destroyed. Their history covered from the time that they were destroyed all the way to the time of the building of the tower of Babylon, which is when humanity's languages were confused. ²³ Their history also included as far back as the creation of Adam and Eve. ²⁴ This history caused the Nephites to mourn and be filled with sorrow. ²⁵ However, they were happy that this mystery was solved. ²⁶ The account of this destroyed people will be written in this book later, because it is important for everyone to know about their history.

Chapter 13

Records Handed Down To Alma the Younger

¹ After King Mosiah II had translated and gathered the records he gave them all to Alma the Younger. ² All of the records and interpreters were given to him with their associated instructions of protecting them, adding to them, and to hand them down from generation-to-generation as had been done since Lehi left Jerusalem.

King Mosiah II Restructures Government

³ After he gave the records to Alma the Younger, King Mosiah II asked all of his people in all of the land who they wanted to be their next king. ⁴ The Nephites responded by saying “[We want Aaron, your son, to be our next king and ruler.](#)” ⁵ At this time Aaron had already left for the land of Nephi and King Mosiah II could not give him the kingdom. Regardless, Aaron wouldn’t take the kingdom if it was given to him. ⁶ None of King Mosiah II’s sons were willing to take the kingdom.

King Mosiah II Announces the end of the Reign of Kings

King Mosiah II had a letter sent among his people. ⁷ This is what the letter said: “[My people - or better yet - my family and friends, because I think of you as such; I want you to think about what I am going to ask you. You say that you want to have a king.](#)” ⁸ However, I must tell you that those who the kingdom rightly belongs to have declined to take it. ⁹ I fear that if I were to appoint someone else to take the kingdom that there would be contention among you. ¹⁰ Who knows if my son, to whom the kingdom rightly belongs to, would angrily return and split the kingdom, which would start wars and cause contention among you. This would lead to bloodshed and pervert the ways of the Divine and destroy the souls of many people.

¹¹ We should be wise and consider these things. We have no right to force my son or anyone else we appoint into this position. ¹² If my son becomes full of pride and preoccupied with vain things again, gives up the preaching he has done, and claims his right to the kingdom this would cause him and the Nephites to make many mistakes.

¹³ We should be wise and think about what could happen. We should do what will make peace among the Nephites. ¹⁴ That is why I will be your king the rest of my life. ¹⁵ However, we should appoint wise judges to judge the Nephites according to our law and according to the Divine’s advice. We will restructure the government of the Nephites!

Beware of Monarchs

¹⁶ It is better to be reviewed and assessed by God than by humanity, because the Divine’s assessments are always filled with justice and humanity’s sometimes aren’t. ¹⁷ If it were *always*

possible for you to have justice-filled monarchs who would establish Divinely-inspired laws and rule based on the Divine's advice, as my father King Benjamin did, then it would always be a good idea to have a monarch rule over you.

¹⁸ I have worked as hard as I could to teach you the Divine's advice and to establish peace throughout the land. ¹⁹ I didn't want any wars, contentions, stealing, plundering, murdering, or any other wickedness. ²⁰ Whoever committed one of these acts was punished accordingly based on the law which was given to us by our ancestors.

²¹ Since not everyone is filled with justice, it is not a good idea to have a monarch as a ruler. ²² A single wicked monarch can be the cause of a lot of wickedness and destruction! ²³ Remember King Noah and his wickedness and the wickedness of his people. ²⁴ A great destruction came upon them because of their wickedness, and they were enslaved. ²⁵ If they hadn't given up their wickedness, sought reconciliation, and the all-wise Creator hadn't intervened, then they would still be enslaved. ²⁶ However, the Divine freed them because they humbled themselves and asked to be freed from enslavement. ²⁷ This is how the Divine always works Their power among humanity! They extend Their arm of mercy towards those that trust Them.

²⁸ Its impossible to dethrone a wicked monarch without a lot of contention and bloodshed. ²⁹ They have wicked friends and guards which protect them. They rip up the laws of their predecessors and they trample on the Divine's advice. ³⁰ They enact their own wicked laws and enforce them among the people, and whoever doesn't obey them are killed. ³¹ They send armies to destroy those who rebel against them. ³² This is how an unrighteous monarch perverts the ways of all righteousness. ³³ It is not a good idea to put yourself in such a terrible situation.

Democracy is Preferred

³⁴ Instead, elect judges who will enforce the good laws of our ancestors which were given to them by the Divine. ³⁵ Usually the will of the people is good; typically there is only a small number who want the wrong thing. ³⁶ That is why you should listen to and conduct your governments through the will of the people.

³⁷ If the time comes that the will of the people is to choose wickedness, then the Divine will deal with you. ³⁸ The Divine will visit you with destruction as They have done in the past. ³⁹ If you have judges and they do not judge you based on the law, then you should have them judged by a higher judge. ⁴⁰ If the higher judges don't judge righteously, then a committee of lower judges should gather and judge the higher judges, as the people have voted.

King Mosiah II's Admonitions

⁴¹ I tell you: do these things in the name of the Divine! ⁴² I tell you: do not have a monarch! If you ignore this advice you will have to face the consequences of your own decisions.

⁴³ Many people are led to wickedness by their monarchs, and the monarchs will be held responsible for this wickedness. ⁴⁴ I don't want this wickedness to exist in this land anymore,

especially among my people! ⁴⁵ I want this to be a land of liberty. I want everyone to equally enjoy their rights and privileges as long as the Divine permits us to have this land. ⁴⁶ May we enjoy these rights and privileges as long as our descendants live here!”

⁴⁷ King Mosiah II wrote many more things to his people and told them about the troubles and hardships that a righteous monarch experiences. ⁴⁸ He described the soul-wrenching efforts that they put forth for their people, only to have the people complain about them. ⁴⁹ He explained that one person shouldn't bear all of that responsibility, and that it should be shared among all of the people; everyone should do their part.

⁵⁰ He told his people about all of the disadvantages they would endure if they were ruled by an unrighteous monarch. ⁵¹ You couldn't count all the examples of their wickedness, wars, contention, bloodshed, stealing, plundering, and harmful sexuality. ⁵² He said that these things shouldn't happen because they are expressly repugnant to God.

The Beginning Of The Reign Of Judges

⁵³ After King Mosiah II sent this letter among the Nephites they were convinced that it was the truth. ⁵⁴ They gave up their desire for a monarch and were anxious for everyone throughout the land to have an equal opportunity. ⁵⁵ Everyone expressed a willingness to face the consequences of their own actions. ⁵⁶ They gathered together in groups throughout the land to cast their vote about who should be their judges who would judge them based on the law which had been given to them. ⁵⁷ They were filled with joy because of the liberty which had been given to them.

⁵⁸ The Nephites loved King Mosiah II and respected him more than anyone else. ⁵⁹ They didn't think of him as a tyrant who ruled for power or wealth, which ultimately corrupts the soul. ⁶⁰ He didn't over tax the Nephites or enjoy shedding blood, but instead established peace in the land and freed his people from all sorts of enslavement. ⁶¹ They respected him beyond measure.

⁶² The Nephites elected judges throughout the land to rule over them based on the law. ⁶³ Alma the Younger was elected the chief judge. His father, Alma the Elder, also made him the high priest and gave him the responsibility of overseeing the affairs of the church. ⁶⁴ Alma the Younger was a righteous man who followed the Divine's advice and judged righteously. There was continual peace throughout the land. ⁶⁵ This began the reign of the judges throughout all of the land of Zarahemla among the Nephites. Alma the Younger was their first and chief judge. ⁶⁶ Alma the Elder passed away when he was 82 years old and lived his life to take the Divine's advice. ⁶⁷ King Mosiah II also passed away in the 33rd year of his reign at the age of 63. In total, it had been 509 years since Lehi left Jerusalem. ⁶⁸ This concluded the reign of the kings over the Nephites, as well as the days of Alma the Elder who was the founder of their church.

The Book of Alma

Chapter 1

The account of Alma the Younger, who was the son of Alma the Elder. Alma the Younger was the first and chief judge over the Nephites while concurrently the high priest of the church. This is an account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people.

The Fall of Nehor

Nehor Establishes a Church Founded Upon Priestcraft

¹ The 1st year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites started when King Mosiah II passed away. He lived a moral life fighting for his people, and had no heir that would take the throne. ² He established laws which the people accepted and then were obligated to adhere to.

³ In the 1st year, while Alma the Younger was the chief judge, a man named Nehor was brought to him for judgment. Nehor was known for being big and strong. ⁴ He had been preaching what he called the word of God and had been bad mouthing the church in the process. ⁵ Additionally, he taught that priests and teachers should be like celebrities and should be financially supported by the people of the church so they don't have to support themselves. ⁶ He also taught that all of humanity would be freed in the end, and that there was no need to fear facing the consequences of their negative actions. Instead they should be happy and celebrate! ⁷ The Divine had created everyone and would free everyone. In the end, everyone would have eternal life. ⁸ Many people believed the things that he was teaching, and many started donating their money to financially support him. ⁹ This filled Nehor's heart with pride, and he began to wear very expensive clothing. Nehor formally established a church based on his teachings.

Nehor Kills Gideon and is Punished

¹⁰ As Nehor was going to preach to his church he met a teacher from the church of God. ¹¹ Nehor got in a fight with him in order to convert more people to his own church. However, the teacher was able to rebuke him with the word of God. ¹² The name of the man was Gideon, the one who was instrumental in helping free the people of Limhi from Lamanite enslavement. ¹³ Nehor was so enraged when Gideon was able to theologically defend himself that he drew his sword and attacked him! ¹⁴ Gideon had grown old and was not able to defend himself, and he was killed by Nehor. ¹⁵ Nehor was arrested by the people of the church of God and was brought before Alma the Younger to be judged according to the crime he had committed.

¹⁶ Nehor stood before Alma the Younger and boldly defended himself. ¹⁷ Alma the Younger said to him, "This is the first time that priestcraft has been taught to this people. ¹⁸ Not only are you guilty of priestcraft, but you tried to enforce your religious beliefs through violence. If priestcraft were to be enforced among this people it would lead to their total destruction. ¹⁹ You have murdered a righteous man, who had done a lot for this people. If we were to spare you we would be culpable in his murder. ²⁰ Based on our laws, which were established by King Mosiah

II, you are worthy of the penalty of death. ²¹ These laws were accepted by this people and we must abide by the law.”

²² They took Nehor and carried him to the top of Hill Manti. ²³ It is here, while he was half dead, that he confessed that what he had taught was contrary to the word of God. It was then that he suffered a disgraceful death.

Nehor's Church Survives

²⁴ However, Nehor's death didn't mean the death of his priestcrafting church. There were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went and preached false doctrines so they could gain wealth and fame. ²⁵ They pretended to believe the things that they were preaching, but they didn't dare make it known that they didn't truly believe these things, because liars were punished according to the law. ²⁶ They pretended to believe what they were preaching because you could not lawfully punish someone for holding a certain religious belief. ²⁷ Likewise, these preachers didn't dare steal, rob, or murder, because these were all punishable according to the law.

The Church of God

Bickering Leads to Apostasy

²⁸ Everyone who didn't belong to the church of God began to persecute those who did. ²⁹ They were persecuted, and had awful things said to and about them because they were a humble people. ³⁰ They didn't over-inflate their importance and taught the word of God to each other free of charge. ³¹ There was a strict rule in the church against religious persecution; you were not allowed to harass those who didn't belong to the church or each other. ³² However, there were many whose pride got the best of them. There were some who would have heated debates with those who believed differently than them, and it would sometimes devolve into fist fighting.

³³ This was during the 2nd year of the reign of Alma, and this contention was a big hardship for the church and was very divisive for the members. ³⁴ Many people's hearts became hardened and they were excommunicated from the church. ³⁵ Many others willingly removed their names from the church's records. ³⁶ This was an incredibly difficult time for those that trusted the Divine, but they kept taking Their advice and patiently tolerated the persecution that was heaped upon them.

Lack of Priestcraft Leads to Prosperity

³⁷ The days where the priests didn't work so they could teach the word of God, those who listened to them also didn't work. ³⁸ After the lessons were over everyone returned to work. ³⁹ The priests, preachers, and teachers didn't think they were better than those they were teaching. Everyone was put to work based on their personal strengths, but everyone was equal.

⁴⁰ They gave as much as they were able to the poor, needy, sick, and those going through hardships. ⁴¹ They didn't wear expensive clothes, but instead wore nice and average clothes. ⁴² This is how they conducted the affairs of the church and there began to be peace again, despite all the persecutions they endured.

⁴³ Because of the diligence of the church they began to become rather wealthy and had more than they needed. ⁴⁴ They had an abundance of flocks, herds, grain, gold, silver, silk, good clothing, and other precious things. ⁴⁵ They used their prosperity to clothe the naked, feed the hungry, give water to the thirsty, and heal the sick. ⁴⁶ They didn't set out for wealth, and they gave their wealth away liberally to both young and old, enslaved and free, male and female, and in the church and out of the church. Anyone who needed help was given it. ⁴⁷ They prospered and became far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

⁴⁸ Those who did not belong to their church indulged in sorcery, idolatry, laziness, gossiping, envying, and fighting. ⁴⁹ They also wore expensive clothes, thought they were better than other people, persecuted others, lied, stole, robbed, harmfully used their sexuality, murdered, and all sorts of other wicked things. ⁵⁰ The laws were put in place to mitigate instances of these things as much as possible. ⁵¹ Everyone was punished based on the crimes they committed. After these laws were enforced for a few people, fear of these legal consequences was often enough to prevent many from committing these crimes. ⁵² The law was able to keep the peace among the Nephites until the 5th year of the reign of the judges.

Rise of the Amlicites

Amlici, the Nehorite Priest, Wants to be King

⁵³ At the beginning of the 5th year of the judges' reign, a man named Amlici and his people started a contention. He was a very cunning and wise man, and was a member of Nehor's church. ⁵⁴ Amlici, through his charisma, gained many followers and they began to be very powerful. They started a movement to make Amlici the king of the Nephites.

⁵⁵ This was alarming to members of the church of God as well as everyone else who hadn't been seduced by Amlici. ⁵⁶ They knew that such a drastic decision would need to be decided through a vote. ⁵⁷ If the people voted for Amlici to be their king he would deprive the church of their rights and privileges, because he was a wicked man who sought to destroy the church of God.

⁵⁸ After a lot of debating, the people throughout the land gathered to vote on whether Amlici should be made their king. ⁵⁹ Everyone cast their vote concerning the matter and the ballots were given to the judges. ⁶⁰ The voice of the people was that Amlici would not be made king of the Nephites.

⁶¹ This caused much joy in the hearts of those who were against him! However, Amlici rallied his followers and got them angry against those who voted against him.

Amlici and his People Secede from and Wage War on the Nephites

⁶² Amlici's people gathered themselves together and consecrated him to be their king. ⁶³ Amlici ordered them to take up arms against their family and friends in order to seize power. ⁶⁴ Those who were loyal to Amlici were called Amlicites, and everyone else were called Nephites or the people of God.

⁶⁵ The Nephites knew what the Amlicites were intending to do, and prepared for the impending battle. ⁶⁶ They armed themselves with swords, cimeters, bows and arrows, stones and slings, and all kinds of other weapons of war. ⁶⁷ They were prepared to meet the Amlicites in battle when the time came. ⁶⁸ They appointed captains, higher captains, and chief captains based on their numbers.

⁶⁹ Amlici also armed his soldiers and appointed leaders over his armies to wage war against their family and friends, the Nephites. ⁷⁰ The Amlicites came to the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and they engaged the Nephites in war. ⁷¹ Since Alma the Younger was the chief judge over the Nephites he went to war against the Amlicites with his leaders and soldiers. They began to slay the Amlicites upon that hill east of Sidon.

⁷² The Amlicites battled with great strength and were able to kill many Nephite soldiers. ⁷³ However, the Divine strengthened the Nephites and they were able to push back against the Amlicites until they eventually retreated. ⁷⁴ The Nephites pursued the retreating Amlicites the rest of the day and ultimately killed 12,532 of their soldiers. ⁷⁵ 6,562 Nephite soldiers died in this battle.

⁷⁶ When Alma the Younger was no longer able to chase the Amlicites he had his army set up camp for the night in the valley of Gideon. This valley received its name after Gideon who was killed by Nehor. ⁷⁷ Alma the Younger sent spies to follow a couple of Amlicites so he could discover what they were plotting and how he could defend against them to keep his people from being destroyed. ⁷⁸ The spies' names were Zeram, Amnor, Manti, and Limher.

The Amlicites Ally with the Lamanites and Wage War Against the Nephites

⁷⁹ The next morning the spies quickly returned to the Nephite camp and were filled with fear, and said: ⁸⁰ ["We followed the Amlicites into the land of Minon \(the land above Zarahemla\) and were shocked to see a huge Lamanite army. ⁸¹ The Amlicites have joined them and they are laying siege to our family and friends in that land. Those who are able are fleeing the land with their flocks, spouses, and children toward our city. ⁸² Unless we hurry they will take our city, and our parents, spouses, and children will all be killed!"](#)

⁸³ The Nephite army broke down camp and left the valley of Gideon toward the city of Zarahemla. ⁸⁴ As they were crossing the river Sidon the Lamanites and the Amlicites, who were nearly as numerous as the sands of the sea, overtook and attacked them. ⁸⁵ However, after they had prayed for their safety, the Nephites were again strengthened by the Divine. ⁸⁶ The Divine heard their prayers and gave them strength, and the Lamanites and Amlicites fell before them.

⁸⁷ Alma the Younger fought Amlici face-to-face with swords. ⁸⁸ Alma the Younger was a man of God and exercised his faith and cried out “Oh God, have mercy and spare my life so that I may be an instrument in your hands to save and protect the people in Zarahemla!”

⁸⁹ When Alma the Younger said this he continued to fight Amlici, and did so with so much strength that he killed Amlici with his sword. ⁹⁰ He also fought the king of the Lamanites face-to-face, but their king fled from Alma the Younger and ordered other soldiers to battle him.

⁹¹ Alma the Younger and his armies fought the Lamanite armies until he killed enough of them to force them to retreat.

⁹² Alma the Younger cleared the western banks of the river Sidon by throwing the bodies of the dead Lamanites into the river so his armies would be able to cross and continue fighting the Lamanites and Amlicites on the western side of the river. ⁹³ When the Nephite army had crossed the river Sidon, the Lamanites and Amlicites retreated, despite being an incredibly large army. ⁹⁴ They fled toward the wilderness beyond the borders of the land to the north-west. ⁹⁵ The Nephites pursued them so they could kill them, and they were largely successful until the Lamanites and Amlicites reached the wilderness of Hermounts. ⁹⁶ This wilderness was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

After the Amlicite War

Burying the Dead

⁹⁷ Many people died from their wounds in the wilderness and were eaten by those beasts and by vultures. Their bones have since been found and piled into heaps.

⁹⁸ The Nephites who weren't killed in the war buried those who were. Those who were killed were too numerous to count. The survivors later returned to their lands, spouses, and children.

⁹⁹ However, many civilians, flocks, and herds had also been killed. ¹⁰⁰ Others had their crops destroyed by the armies.

¹⁰¹ The many Lamanite and Amlicite soldiers whose bodies were pushed into the river Sidon had their bodies swept out to the depths of the sea.

Moroni Reiterates Generational Nephite Racism

¹⁰² The Amlicites distanced themselves from the Nephites with different styles, namely wearing red on their foreheads, like the Lamanites. However, they did not shave their heads like the Lamanites. ¹⁰³ The Lamanites' style included shaved heads, loincloths, armor, and their weapons.

¹⁰⁴ The Lamanites were cursed with a dark skin because their ancestors transgressed and rebelled against Nephi, Jacob, Joseph, and Sam, who were holy men who sought justice. ¹⁰⁵ Laman, Lemuel, and the children of Emma and Ishmael attempted to kill them, which is how they received this curse. ¹⁰⁶ This was done so the Nephites wouldn't have children with them

and start believing false histories and religions. These things would lead to the Nephites' destruction. ¹⁰⁷ If someone were to have children with a Lamanite, their children would likewise be cursed. ¹⁰⁸ Whoever allowed themselves to be deceived and become a Lamanite also received this curse.

¹⁰⁹ Those who didn't believe the false history and religion of the Lamanites, and instead trusted the correct history, religion, the records of those who were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and knew and took the Divine's advice, were called Nephites. ¹¹⁰ It is them who knew the correct history and religion of their ancestors and the Lamanites.

¹¹¹ By adopting similar styles as the Lamanites, the Amlicites brought this curse upon themselves. ¹¹² The words which were said were fulfilled, ¹¹³ "I have cursed the Lamanites by making their skin dark. I did this to separate them from the Nephites until they give up their wickedness and come to trust me. If they do this I will have mercy on them. ¹¹⁴ I will curse anyone who has children with a Lamanite with dark skin. ¹¹⁵ I will curse anyone who fights the Nephites with dark skin. ¹¹⁶ Anyone who leaves the Nephites will no longer be called a Nephite. I will bless the Nephites forever and ever." Nephi told his descendants that God said this.

¹¹⁷ The Amlicites didn't know that they were fulfilling these words when they began to adopt Lamanite styles. ¹¹⁸ When they openly rebelled against God the curse of dark skin fell upon them. ¹¹⁹ They brought this curse upon themselves. ¹²⁰ Everyone who is cursed with a dark skin has brought it upon themselves.

Lamanites Attack the Nephites

¹²¹ Not long after the last battle in the land of Zarahemla another Lamanite army attacked the Nephites on the same battleground. ¹²² A Nephite army was sent to repel the invasion of their land. ¹²³ Alma the Younger had been wounded in the last battle, and didn't participate in this battle. However, he did send a large army to battle the Lamanites. ¹²⁴ They killed many Lamanites and successfully forced them out of their land. ¹²⁵ The Nephite army returned to their homes again and reestablished peace in their land, and weren't troubled by their enemies for a time.

¹²⁶ All of these wars and contentions began and ended in the 5th year of the reign of the judges.

¹²⁷ In this year alone tens of thousands of people were killed.

Consequences in the Afterlife

¹²⁸ Those that perished will face the consequences of the lives they had lived, whether they were good or bad. These consequences will bring about Divine happiness or Divine misery, depending on if they followed the good spirit or the bad one. ¹²⁹ Everyone gets paid based on who they worked for. The Spirit of prophecy has taught that this is the truth.

¹³⁰ This concluded the 5th year of the reign of judges.

Chapter 2

The Pride Cycle

The Humbling

¹ In the 6th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites there were no contentions or wars in the land of Zarahemla. ² However, the people were dealing with the heavy losses of their family, friends, flocks, herds, and crops which were destroyed by the Lamanites. ³ This was a great hardship, and every soul mourned. They believed that they were enduring these things as a Divine punishment because of their wickedness. This reinvigorated them to keep the promises that they had made with the Divine. ⁴ They began to take their church responsibilities more seriously, and many people were baptized in the River Sidon and joined the church of God. ⁵ These people were baptized by Alma the Younger, who was ordained as high priest over the church by his father, Alma the Elder. ⁶ In the 7th year of the reign of the judges about 3,500 people joined the church of God and were baptized. ⁷ This concluded the 7th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites, and there was continual peace throughout this time.

Pride Arises

⁸ In the 8th year of the reign of the judges the members of the church began to think very highly of themselves because of their great riches, fine silks, nice fabrics, ⁹ flocks, herds, gold, silver, and many other precious things that they had obtained through their industries. ¹⁰ They thought they were better than other people because they wore more expensive clothing.

¹¹ This was a great hardship for Alma the Younger and those that he had ordained as teachers, priests, and elders over the church. ¹² Many of them were sorely grieved because of the wickedness which they saw taking hold of their people. ¹³ The Nephites had begun to inflate their self-importance and focused on getting rich and other worldly things. ¹⁴ They thought others were beneath them and persecuted those who believed differently than them.

¹⁵ This pride was a great contention among those in the church. ¹⁶ The people of the church were filled with more envy, strife, malice, persecution, and pride than those who weren't members of the church. ¹⁷ The wickedness of the church was a great hardship to those who were not members of it, and the church began to fail in its progress. This great hardship concluded the 8th year of the reign of the judges.

The Rich Ignore and Hate the Poor

¹⁸ At the beginning of the 9th year, Alma the Younger saw the wickedness in the church and how it was a poor example to those who weren't members of it; people who converted were just trading one wickedness for another. He believed that the church would help bring about the demise of the Nephites.

¹⁹ There was a great inequality among the people. Some believed they were better than others and hated those that weren't as wealthy as them. These people turned their backs on those that needed help, clothing, food, water, and medicine. ²⁰ This was cause for sorrow among the Nephites because the people who needed these things were being dehumanized. However, there were other people who helped those who needed help, including giving money to the poor and food to the hungry. These are the people who endured many hardships because they trusted in Christ, whom they believed would come as the prophecies foretold. They looked forward to the day they would be free from the mistakes they had made in life. ²¹ They were filled with great joy because the dead would one day be freed from the chains of death by Jesus Christ.

The Call for Equality

²² After Alma the Younger saw all the inequality among the Nephites and the hardships and persecutions that the humble followers of God were enduring at the hands of the other Nephites, he began to be very sorrowful. However, the Spirit of God did not fail him!

²³ Alma the Younger nominated a wise man, who was also an elder in the church, to be the next chief judge. He was in turn elected by the Nephites to enact and enforce laws. ²⁴ This man's name was Nephiah, and after his inauguration he governed the Nephites.

²⁵ While Nephiah became the chief judge, Alma the Younger remained the high priest of the church. ²⁶ He did this so he could preach the word of God full time among the Nephites and help them remember the promises that they had made. ²⁷ He wanted to overthrow the Nephite pride, conning, and contention with the word of God! He saw no other way that he could help them see the error of their ways other than speaking boldly to them.

²⁸ At the beginning of the 9th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites, Alma the Younger vacated the office of chief judge and Nephiah took it. Alma the Younger's work was exclusively that of the priesthood, which is to teach the word of God with the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

Chapter 3

Alma the Younger's Zarahemla Sermon

¹ Alma the Younger began to speak the word of God to the Nephites in the land of Zarahemla and then spread out to other lands. ² This is what he said to the people in the congregation in Zarahemla:

The Call to Remembrance

³ "I, Alma the Younger, was ordained by my father, Alma the Elder, to be a high priest over the church of God. He was given the power and authority to do this by God. He founded our church while he was still in the Lamanites' territory. ⁴ The land he established it in was called 'Mormon', and he baptized his family and friends in Lake Mormon. ⁵ He and his people were freed from King Noah's people through the mercy and power of God. ⁶ After that they were enslaved by the Lamanites in the wilderness, but the Divine once again freed them from enslavement with the power of Their word. ⁷ Our people were brought into this land and we began to establish the church throughout the land here.

⁸ To my family and friends who belong to the church: don't you remember your parents' enslavement? ⁹ Don't you remember the mercy and patience that the Divine showed them? ¹⁰ Don't you remember that They freed their souls from hell? ¹¹ The Divine changed their hearts and awoke them out of a deep sleep. When they awoke they found God. ¹² They were in the midst of darkness, but their souls were illuminated by the light of the Everlasting Word. ¹³ They were shackled with the chains of death and hell and a torment awaited them!

¹⁴ However, were they destroyed? ¹⁵ They were not! ¹⁶ Were they freed from the chains of death and hell? ¹⁷ Yes! And their souls grew and they sang of freeing love. ¹⁸ They were freed!

¹⁹ How were they freed? What justified their hope for freedom? ²⁰ Why were they freed from the chains of death and hell? ²¹ I can tell you! Wasn't Abinadi a holy prophet? ²² Didn't he speak the word of God, and my father trusted what he said? ²³ This trust that my father had ended up being the cause of a big change of heart for him. ²⁴ Everything I have told you is true. ²⁵ My father then in turn taught your parents and which also ended up causing a big change of heart for them as well. They all humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. ²⁶ They trusted the Divine the rest of their lives, which is why they were freed.

Soul-Searching Questions

²⁷ Now, my family and friends of the church, have you been similarly reborn with God as your focus? ²⁸ Can you see the Divinity in each other? ²⁹ Have you experienced a similar change of heart? ³⁰ Do you trust the Maker's freedom? ³¹ Do you trust that one day your mortal body will be made immortal when you stand before God and have the mortal life that you lived be reviewed and assessed?

³² Can you imagine hearing the voice of the Divine saying to you on that day 'Come to me, you blessed, because you lived righteous lives on earth'? ³³ Do you think you will be able to lie to the Divine on that day by saying, 'God, we lived righteous lives on earth!' and They will believe you? ³⁴ Or do you think you will see the error of your ways as you stand before God and be filled with remorse and guilt? ³⁵ You will have a perfect memory of all of your wickedness and when you chose to ignore Divine advice. ³⁶ Will you be able to look God in the eye and say that your heart is pure and your hands are clean? ³⁷ Can you hold your head up high, because you have tried to be as Divine as possible? ³⁸ How can you think about freedom when you have given yourselves to be slaves to the devil? ³⁹ You will know on that day that no one can be freed unless their clothes have been washed clean. ⁴⁰ Your clothes must be washed until they are free of any stains. They will be washed by the One who our ancestors prophesied would free Their people.

⁴¹ Now, my family and friends, how would you feel if you stood in front of God with clothes stained by the blood of your family and friends and other wickedness? ⁴² Don't you think those things will testify against you? ⁴³ Won't they testify that you are wicked murderers? ⁴⁴ Do you think someone who is dressed in clothes like this will sit down in the Divine's realm with Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all the other holy prophets whose clothes are free of stains? ⁴⁵ Unless you think our Creator lied to us since the beginning, you should know that no one like this will be in the Divine's heavenly realm. Instead they will be thrown out, because they are the children of the devil's realm.

⁴⁶ My family and friends, if you once experienced this change of heart and sang of freeing love, do you still feel that way today? ⁴⁷ Have you lived a blameless life? ⁴⁸ If you were to die right now, could you say that you have been humble enough? ⁴⁹ Could you say that your clothes are free of stains because of Christ?

⁵⁰ Have you been stripped of pride? If you are not, then you are not prepared to meet God. ⁵¹ You must prepare quickly, because the Divine's realm is nearly here, and if you aren't prepared you will not have eternal life.

⁵² Have you been stripped of envy? ⁵³ If you have not, then you should also quickly prepare, because you will not be found guiltless. No one is sure when the Divine's realm will be here, but the hour is nearly here!

⁵⁴ Do you mock or persecute others? ⁵⁵ Woe to you if you do, because you are not prepared! You must quickly change your ways or you cannot be freed!

Two Shepherds

⁵⁶ Woe to the wicked! The Divine tells you to change your ways! ⁵⁷ All of humanity is invited into Their arms of mercy, all that is asked is for you to give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation. ⁵⁸ The Divine says, 'Come to me and eat the fruit from the tree of life! Eat and drink as much of the bread and waters of life as you'd like! ⁵⁹ Come to me and live righteous lives and you will not be cut down and thrown into the fire. ⁶⁰ The time is nearly here that those who have not lived good lives will have a reason to cry and mourn.'

⁶¹ Oh you wicked who think you are better because of the material things that you own, you have said that you know the ways of righteousness, but you are like lost sheep with no shepherd! Despite your shepherd calling after you, and still calling for you, you ignore Them. ⁶² Christ, the Good Shepherd, calls for you. ⁶³ If you will not listen to the Good Shepherd, then you must not be Their sheep. ⁶⁴ If you are not the sheep of the Good Shepherd, then what flock are you a part of? ⁶⁵ I'm here to tell you that the devil is your shepherd and you are a part of his flock. How can you deny this? ⁶⁶ Whoever denies this is a liar and a child of the devil.

⁶⁷ Everything that is good comes from God, and everything that is evil comes from the devil. ⁶⁸ If someone lives a good life, then that means they listen more to the voice of the Good Shepherd and trusts Them. ⁶⁹ If someone lives an evil life, then they listen more to the voice of the Devil and become his children. ⁷⁰ If you work for the devil then the wages that you receive are a spiritual death towards righteousness and good deeds.

Alma the Younger Speaks God's Word

⁷¹ My family and friends, I want you to take me seriously! I have spoken with all the energy of my soul! ⁷² I have spoken to you plainly so that you can't misunderstand me. I have said the things that God has asked me to say to you. ⁷³ I am called to speak to you like this because I am a part of the Divine's priesthood. ⁷⁴ I was asked to stand and testify to the Nephites about our ancestors' prophecies.

⁷⁵ This isn't everything, though. Don't you think that I already knew all these things? ⁷⁶ I can tell you that I already knew that these things are true. ⁷⁷ You may wonder how I am so confident that they're true. ⁷⁸ These things were shown to me by the Holy Spirit of God. ⁷⁹ I fasted and prayed for many days to discover these things for myself. ⁸⁰ Now I know for myself that these things are true, because the Divine showed them to me through Their Holy Spirit. This is the spirit of revelation which is in me!

⁸¹ Additionally, it has been revealed to me that the words of our ancestors are also true. ⁸² It is also because of this Spirit of prophecy that I know that anything I prophesy to you will come true.

Alma the Younger Prophecies of Christ

⁸³ I know that Jesus Christ will join humanity. He will be the Son of the Creator who is full of grace, mercy, and truth. ⁸⁴ It will be Him who free the world from all the mistakes that we make, especially for those who trust Him.

⁸⁵ It is His priesthood that I am called to, and I am now also called to preach to by beloved family and friends and all the Nephites in the land. ⁸⁶ I am to preach to the enslaved and free! I am to preach to the old, the middle-aged, and the young! I must tell them to give up their wicked ways and have a change of heart! ⁸⁷ The Spirit says: 'Everyone on the earth must give up their wickedness and seek reconciliation, because the Divine's realm is nearly here! The Son of God

will come in all His glory, might, majesty, power, and authority! ⁸⁸ Look and see the glory of the Creator of earth and heaven, which will soon shine among all of humanity!

Call to Repentance

⁸⁹ The Spirit also says to me with a loud voice, 'Go and tell the Nephites that unless they give up their wickedness and seek reconciliation, then they cannot enter the Divine's realm. ⁹⁰ The ax is ready to be used. If the tree doesn't grow good fruit it will be cut down and thrown into the fire which can't be extinguished.' ⁹¹ Remember that the Holy One has spoken this.

⁹² My beloved family and friends, can you ignore what I have said and trample the Holy One under your feet? ⁹³ Can you afford to think you're better than others, keep wearing expensive clothing, and focus on getting rich? ⁹⁴ Are you going to keep thinking that you are better than other people? ⁹⁵ Are you going to keep persecuting humble people who are a part of the priesthood? After all, it was this priesthood which facilitates baptism and confirmation into the church, which are needed for giving up wickedness and gaining reconciliation. ⁹⁶ Will you keep turning your backs on the poor and needy and declining to help them? ⁹⁷ Everyone who persists in their wickedness will be cut down and thrown into the fire unless they quickly seek reconciliation!

Invitation to Follow Christ

⁹⁸ To those who want to follow the Good Shepherd: give up your wickedness and separate yourselves from it! Don't even touch it! ⁹⁹ The wicked will be excommunicated from the church, which will fulfill what God said, 'The names of the wicked will not be mixed with the names of my people. ¹⁰⁰ The names of the righteous will be written in the book of life, and they will live with me.'

¹⁰¹ My family and friends, how can you fight against this? ¹⁰² It doesn't matter even if you do, because the word of God will be fulfilled. ¹⁰³ What shepherd among you doesn't watch over them so wolves don't come and eat their flock? ¹⁰⁴ If a wolf were to enter their flock, wouldn't they force them out? If that shepherd is able to, wouldn't they kill the wolf? ¹⁰⁵ The Good Shepherd calls after you, and if you will listen then you are a part of Their flock. ¹⁰⁶ They tell you that no ravenous wolves, which will destroy you, are to be among you.

¹⁰⁷ Now I, Alma the Younger, tell you to take the advice that I have given you! ¹⁰⁸ The Divine told me to say this to those who are members of this church. To those who are not a part of our which, I extend an invitation to be baptized, to seek reconciliation, and eat from the tree of life."

Chapter 4

After Alma the Younger's Sermon in Zarahemla

¹ After Alma the Younger spoke to the congregation in Zarahemla he laid his hands on and ordained priests and elders to preside and watch over the church. ² Those who gave up their wickedness, sought reconciliation, and weren't members of the church yet were baptized and welcomed into it. ³ There were some who were members of the church, but didn't give up their wickedness, seek reconciliation, or humble themselves. ⁴ These are the people who thought that they were better than other people. They were excommunicated from the church and were no longer considered members. This is how the church conducted affairs in the city of Zarahemla.

Mormon's Clarifications

⁵ I want you to understand that the word of God was given liberally to everyone. No one was deprived of the privilege of gathering together to hear the word of God. ⁶ The children of God were told to gather together often to fast and pray together for the welfare of those who did not know God.

Alma the Younger's Mission Continues

⁷ Alma the Younger left the city of Zarahemla after he had set the church straight there. ⁸ He traveled to the east side of the River Sidon and into the valley of Gideon, where a city called Gideon had been built. This valley and city was named after Gideon who was killed by Nehor. ⁹ Alma the Younger preached the word of God to the congregation which was established there. He taught about the truth which was revealed by his ancestors. ¹⁰ He taught with the spirit of prophecy with the authority of the priesthood! He testified that Jesus Christ, the Son of God, would come and free humanity from their mistakes.

Chapter 5

Alma the Younger's Sermon in Gideon

¹ My beloved family and friends, since I have come to see you, I would like to speak to you. ² Since I was so preoccupied with my duties as chief judge, this is the first time I have been able to preach to you in person. ³ I still wouldn't be able to visit you if someone else hadn't taken the office of chief judge and now reigns in my stead. The Divine has shown mercy by allowing me to come to you.

Righteousness of the People

⁴ I had high hopes that you were humble people who continually ask for Divine grace and I would find no way I would need to chastise you. ⁵ I had hoped things weren't as bad as they were in Zarahemla. ⁶ Regardless, I am thankful that God has blessed me with the joyous knowledge that they are living righteous lives again. ⁷ The Spirit of God tells me that I may have the same joy because of you! ⁸ I wish this joy didn't have to come after so much hardship and sorrow, as was the case in Zarahemla. ⁹ The joy I feel because of Zarahemla came at a heavy price. ¹⁰ I trust that you are not as wicked as your family and friends were there. ¹¹ I trust that you don't think that you are better than other people. I trust that you aren't hyper-focused on getting rich. ¹² I trust that you don't worship idols, and instead worship the true and living God and look forward to when they will take accountability for your mistakes.

Prophecy of Christ

¹³ Many more things will happen in the future, but there is one thing that is more important than anything else! ¹⁴ Not too long from now the Divine will come and join humanity. ¹⁵ However, the Spirit didn't tell me where the Divine will live out His mortal life among our people. ¹⁶ I don't know much more, but this I do know: the Divine has the power to do anything They want.

¹⁷ The Spirit said to me: 'Go tell the Nephites to prepare for the arrival of the Divine by taking Their good advice to give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation!' ¹⁸ The realm of heaven is nearly here, and the Son of God is coming upon the face of the earth!

¹⁹ His mother will be named Mary, and He will be born in Jerusalem. Mary will be a virgin, but will be a precious and chosen woman who will conceive the Son of God through the power of the Holy Ghost. ²⁰ He will feel pain, know hardship, and temptations, just like everyone else. ²¹ This way the prophecy found in Isaiah 53: 3-5 will be fulfilled and he can free us from the chains of death! ²² He will know how hard it is to be human, so He can have greater compassion for humanity and how to better help us. ²³ The Spirit knows everything, but the Son of God will still endure a human life so He can free His people! This is my testimony!

The Gospel Path

²⁴ You must give up your wickedness, seek reconciliation, and be born again! The Spirit says, 'If you are not born again you cannot enter the Divine's heavenly realm.' ²⁵ Come and wash away all of your wickedness through baptism! Trust that the mighty Lamb of God will wipe away your mistakes and free you. ²⁶ Come to the Divine and don't be scared! Lay aside the mistakes which bind and destroy you. ²⁷ Go and show your God that you are willing to seek reconciliation and promise to take Their advice! Make this promise by being baptized! ²⁸ Whoever does this, and takes the Divine's advice from here on out, will keep in mind that I told them that they will have eternal life, just as the Spirit told me.

²⁹ Now, my family and friends, do you believe these things? ³⁰ I know that you do, because the Spirit told me. ³¹ I am filled with joy because of your trust in the things I have said! ³² I have said from the beginning that I had hoped you weren't like the people in Zarahemla, and I am happy that you aren't. ³³ I can see that you are on the right path, which leads to the realm of God. ³⁴ I can see that you are the path to meet the Divine, and know They don't have evil in Their heart. ³⁵ The Divine is consistent, but never abandons righteousness for wickedness. God's ways are like a never ending cycle.

³⁶ The Divine doesn't spend time in unholy temples, and wicked things can't enter Their kingdom. ³⁷ The day will come that those who insist on being wicked will remain wicked.

Duty to God

³⁸ Now, my beloved family and friends, I have said these things to you in order to help you realize your duty to God. I want you to be able to walk with your head held high with the priesthood! ³⁹ I want you to be humble, receptive to God, gentle, eager to help, patient, long-suffering, temperate, and diligently take the Divine's advice! ⁴⁰ Ask for what you need, whether it be spiritual or physical, and remember to thank God for what you receive. ⁴¹ Make sure you have trust, hope, and charity and always abound in these good works! ⁴² May God bless you! Stay out of trouble so that one day, after your lives are done, you can sit down with Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and every other holy prophet since the world began.

⁴³ My family and friends, these are the things which the Spirit prompted me to say to you. My soul is filled with an overwhelming joy because of your great diligence and heed to what I have spoken. ⁴⁴ May the peace of God rest upon you as well as your houses, lands, flocks, herds, spouses, children, and all that you have for ever and ever! Amen!"

Chapter 6

Alma the Younger Rests

¹ Alma the Younger returned from the land of Gideon after he taught them so many things that I couldn't write them all here. He ensured that the congregation there was functioning properly, just as he did in Zarahemla. ² He returned to his own home in Zarahemla and rested from all the work he had been doing. ³ This concluded the 9th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites.

Alma the Younger's Journey

Welcoming in Melek

⁴ At the beginning of the 10th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites, Alma the Younger once again set out, and this time he traveled to the land of Melek, which was on the west side of the River Sidon near the borders of the wilderness. ⁵ He began to teach the people there, which were his priesthood responsibilities. ⁶ People throughout the land of Melek came to hear him teach! ⁷ Many people were baptized, and Alma the Younger's work in that land was finished. He traveled north for 3 days till he arrived in a city called Ammonihah.

⁸ To clarify, it was customary for the Nephites to name their lands, cities, and even the tiniest village after the person who founded it. This is why the land was named "Ammonihah".

Rejection in Ammonihah

⁹ When Alma the Younger came to the city of Ammonihah he preached the word of God to them. ¹⁰ However, Satan had ahold of their hearts and they would not listen to Alma the Younger. ¹¹ Regardless, he worked with the Spirit and bore his soul in prayer to God and asked that the Divine would pour out the Spirit upon the people of Ammonihah so he could baptize them. ¹² However, the peoples' hearts were hardened, and they said to Alma the Younger, "We know you, Alma the Younger, are the high priest over the church which you have established in many places throughout the land, and it is reflective of your tradition. ¹³ However, we are not a part of your church or foolish tradition. ¹⁴ Since we are not a part of your church you have no power over us. ¹⁵ Since Nephiah is the chief judge you aren't even a governmental official."

¹⁶ After they said this to him, continued to ignore what he taught, and hated and spit on him, they ran him out of town. After this he traveled towards the city of Aaron.

Angel Outside of Ammonihah

¹⁷ While Alma the Younger traveled to Aaron he was weighed down with sorrow and waded through suffering and anguish because of the wickedness of the people in Ammonihah. ¹⁸ It was

then that an angel sent from the Divine appeared and said to him, “You are blessed, Alma the Younger! Chin up and be filled with joy, because you have a reason to do so! ¹⁹ You have diligently done what the Divine asked you to do ever since you received your first message from God. ²⁰ I am that same angel that gave you that message. I have come to you again to tell you to return to Ammonihah and preach to the people there once more. ²¹ Tell them that their wickedness will destroy them unless they give it up and seek reconciliation. ²² They are figuring out how they could destroy the Nephites’ liberty, which goes against what the Divine has said to the Nephites.”

Meeting Amulek in Ammonihah

²³ After Alma the Younger received this message from the angel he quickly returned to the land of Ammonihah. ²⁴ He entered the city from the south, which is different that the way he had entered before. ²⁵ He was hungry as he entered the city, and asked a man “Will you give a humble servant of God something to eat?” ²⁶ The man replied by saying, “I am a Nephite, and I know that you are a holy prophet of God. I had a vision where an angel told me to help a man, and you are him. ²⁷ Come with me to my house and I will feed you. I know that you will be a blessing to me and my household.”

²⁸ The man, who was named Amulek, brought Alma the Younger to his house and fed him bread and meat. ²⁹ Alma the Younger ate the bread and was full, and blessed Amulek and his household, and thanked God. ³⁰ He then said to Amulek, “I am Alma the Younger, the high priest over the church of God throughout the land. ³¹ The Spirit of revelation and prophecy told me to preach the word of God to the people of Ammonihah. ³² I came here, but no one would listen to me and I was eventually run out of town. I was about to leave Ammonihah and never return. ³³ However, I was asked to come back and prophesy to the people here and to chastise them for their wickedness. ³⁴ When I returned to the city I had not eaten in many days and was hungry, and you, Amulek, took me in and fed me!”

Amulek and Alma the Younger Preach Together

³⁵ Alma the Younger worked with Amulek for many days before he began to preach again. ³⁶ During this time the wickedness of the people in Ammonihah became even more acute. ³⁷ The Word came to Alma and said “Go with Amulek to preach to the people of Ammonihah about giving up wickedness and seeking reconciliation! Tell them that the Divine has sent you, and the Divine cannot tolerate their wickedness for much longer.”

³⁸ Alma the Younger went with Amulek to tell the people of Ammonihah what God had spoken. Alma the Younger and Amulek were filled with the Holy Ghost! ³⁹ They were given the power to neither be locked in jail or killed as they preached! ⁴⁰ However, they waited to use this power until they were already handcuffed and thrown into prison. ⁴¹ They waited to exercise this power so the Divine could show the power of God to the people of Ammonihah. ⁴² So, they went around and preached and prophesied to the people of the city with the Spirit and the Divine’s power.

Chapter 7

This chapter is narrated by Alma the Younger, not Mormon

Alma the Younger's Second Ammonihah Sermon

¹ I, Alma the Younger, was asked by God to come here with Amulek to preach to the people of Ammonihah again. As I began to preach they fought with me and yelled “Who are you? ² Why should we believe you, even if you told us the world was ending?” ³ They didn't understand what they were saying, because sure enough one day the world *will* end. ⁴ They also said to Amulek and I, “We wouldn't believe you if you told us that this great city could be destroyed in a single day.” ⁵ They had hard hearts and were stubborn people, and didn't know that God could do such marvelous things. ⁶ They also said, “Who is this ‘God’ who sends a nobody to tell us ‘truth’ and say that God can do such wild things?”

The Call to Remembrance

⁷ They wanted to grab me, but they did not. ⁸ I stood my ground and boldly declared to them and said, “You wicked and terrible generation! How have you forgotten the traditions of your ancestors! You have so quickly forgotten the Divine's advice! ⁹ Don't you remember how our ancestors Lehi and Sariah were brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? ¹⁰ Don't you remember how our ancestors were led by the Divine through the wilderness? ¹¹ Have you forgotten this quickly how many times the Divine saved and protected our ancestors from their enemies, the Lamanites? ¹² If it hadn't have been for the Divine's unmatched power, mercy, and patience for us then we would have been killed a long time ago and been sent to a place full of misery and woe. ¹³ I am telling you here and now that the Divine is telling you to give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation! If you refuse to do this, you cannot join the Divine's heavenly realm. ¹⁴ This isn't all, though. The Divine cannot tolerate your wickedness for much longer, and if you refuse to give it up the Divine will have to deliver justice by completely wiping you off the face of the earth!

¹⁵ Don't you remember what the Divine said to Lehi? ‘If you take my advice you will prosper in the land’. ¹⁶ Lehi also taught us ‘However, if you don't take my advice your relationship with me will suffer’. ¹⁷ I want you to remember that the Lamanites didn't take the Divine's advice, and sure enough their relationship with the Divine has suffered.

The Divine and the Lamanites

¹⁸ We can see how these prophecies have come true! The Lamanites have struggled with Divinity as long as we've been in this land. ¹⁹ However, they will still have a better relationship with God after their death than you will if you continue in your wicked ways. ²⁰ They will also have a more tolerable mortal life than you unless you give up your wickedness and seek

reconciliation, because the Divine has also made many promises to the Lamanites. ²¹ The Lamanites are unaware of Divine things because of how they were raised by their ancestors. The Divine will be merciful to them while they are here. ²² At some point in time they will come to know the truth instead of the misinformation they were taught growing up. ²³ The Divine will be merciful to everyone who calls on Them, and many of the Lamanites will be freed.

Consequences for Nephite Wickedness

²⁴ If you continue living wicked lives, the Lamanites will come and wage war against you. ²⁵ You won't know when, but you will witness the total destruction of your people. ²⁶ The Divine can't tolerate you being so wicked that you kill Their people. ²⁷ If we as a people became that wicked after being taught so many wonderful things, the Divine would rather have the Lamanites destroy all the Nephites.

²⁸ The Divine has loved us more than any other nation, family, language, or people! ²⁹ The Divine has taught us many things that we asked to know about the past, present, and future. ³⁰ The Spirit of God has visited us, we have talked with angels, and have been spoken to by the Voice of the Divine. ³¹ We have had many spiritual gifts, such as prophecy, revelation, speaking in tongues, preaching, the Holy Ghost, and translation. ³² The Divine protected us as we left the land of Jerusalem. ³³ The Divine has protected us from famine, sickness, and all sorts of diseases. ³⁴ We have been strengthened in battle so that we would not be killed. We have been rescued from slavery time-after-time. We have been protected this entire time. We have prospered to the point that we have become rich!

³⁵ I'm here to tell you that if after receiving all these blessings and then spit in God's face ³⁶ the Lamanites will be better off than the Nephites. ³⁷ The Divine's promises also extend to the Lamanites, and these promises may be retracted from you if you behave poorly. ³⁸ Hasn't the Divine explicitly said that if you rebel against Them that the Nephites will be completely wiped off the face of the earth?

³⁹ In order to prevent this destruction the Divine sent an angel to visit many of us. This angel told us to go among the Nephites by saying 'Give up your wickedness! Seek reconciliation! The Divine's realm is nearly here! ⁴⁰ Not too long from now the Son of God will join humanity with all of the Creator's glory. He will be full of grace, equity, truth, patience, mercy, tolerance, justice, and action! ⁴¹ He will come and free those who give up their wickedness, seek reconciliation, are baptized, and trust Him. ⁴² Get ready for the Divine to join humanity! The time is almost here that everyone will have to answer for their actions. ⁴³ If you have behaved righteously, you will gain freedom through Jesus Christ. ⁴⁴ If you have behaved wickedly, you will gain damnation through the devil.' ⁴⁵ This is what the angel is crying to the Nephites. ⁴⁶ You are my family and friends and are worthy of love, but you need to give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation. You have ignored the Divine's words and have become a lost and fallen people."

⁴⁷ When I, Alma the Younger, said that the people of Ammonihah were ignoring the word of God and are a stubborn people they became angry with me. ⁴⁸ They were also angry that I called

them a lost and fallen people. They were so angry with me that they wanted to have me arrested and thrown into prison.

⁴⁹ However, the Divine would not allow them to arrest me and throw me into prison. ⁵⁰ Amulek went and also preached to the people in Ammonihah. ⁵¹ While not all of his words are recounted, a portion of them are written in this book.

Chapter 8

Amulek's Testimony

¹ This is the testimony that Amulek gave to the people in the land of Ammonihah: "I am Amulek, the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi. ² This is the same Aminadi who translated the words which were written upon the temple by the finger of God. Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi who came out of Jerusalem. Lehi was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of the Joseph who was sold into Egyptian slavery by his brothers.

⁴ I am not a man of small reputation among those who know me. ⁵ I have a lot of family and friends, and have become rich through my hard work. ⁶ However, I have never known much about the ways of the Divine or Their mysteries and marvelous power. ⁷ Now that I say that, I am mistaken; I have seen quite a lot of Divine power through the preservation of the Nephites. ⁸ However, I hardened my heart; I was called many times, but I wouldn't listen. I saw these things, but refused to know them.

⁹ I continued rebelling against God with my wicked heart until the 4th day of the 7th month of the 10th year of the reign of the judges. ¹⁰ As I was journeying to see some close family members an angel sent by the Divine appeared to me and said 'Amulek, return to your own home, because you will feed a prophet of God, a holy man, who is chosen by God. ¹¹ He has been fasting for many days because of the wickedness of this people, and he is hungry. You will welcome him into your home and feed him, and in return he will bless you and your household. This Divine blessing will rest upon you and your household.'

¹² I obeyed the angel and started the journey back to my house. ¹³ As I was going there, I found the man that the angel spoke of. He is the same man who has been speaking to you concerning Divine things! ¹⁴ I know that he is a holy man because an angel of God told me he is! ¹⁵ I know the things which he has said are true! I also know that the Divine is so alive that They sent an angel to show me these things while Alma the Younger lived with me in my house. ¹⁶ Alma the Younger has blessed my household, including me, my wives, my children, my father, and my other family! ¹⁷ He blessed all of my people, and this Divine blessing has been upon us, just as the angel said would happen."

The Trial of Amulek

Ammonihah Lawyers Attempt to Trick Amulek

¹⁸ After Amulek said this the people were astonished that there was more than one person who rebuked them and taught about the future with the spirit of prophecy. ¹⁹ There were some who were skeptical of Alma the Younger and Amulek and questioned them in hopes that they would be able to trick them in order to denounce them and turn them over to the judges. ²⁰ The judges

would conduct a trial, and these prophets would either be executed or thrown into prison for lying about the people of Ammonihah.

²¹ The men who wanted to see them dead were lawyers who were hired or appointed to defend people during criminal trials before the judges. ²² These lawyers were well educated in all the cunning arts of the Nephites and were very skilled in their profession. ²³ They questioned Amulek in hopes that he would perjure himself or contradict the story he told previously.

Amulek's Rebuke

²⁴ They didn't think Amulek knew what their plan was. ²⁵ As the lawyers began to question him, Amulek figured out what they were doing and said to them, "Oh you wicked and perverse generation! You lawyers and hypocrites; you are laying the foundation of the devil! ²⁶ You are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God! You are laying plans to corrupt the ways of the righteous! You are bringing down the wrath of God upon your heads, and will destroy all of the people of Ammonihah in the process! ²⁷ What was it that King Mosiah II said when he wanted to pass the crown on, but no one would take it, and so gave the people the ability to govern ourselves? ²⁸ Didn't he say that if the time came that the people chose to govern wickedly that they would be ripe for destruction?"

²⁹ The Divine is a good judge of your wickedness. The Divine urges Their people through angels, and says 'Give up your wickedness! Seek reconciliation! The Heavenly realm is nearly here!' ³⁰ The Divine urges their people through angels and says, 'I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands'. ³¹ If it weren't for the prayers of the righteous people in the land of Ammonihah, the Divine would have already visited you with total destruction. ³² The Divine wouldn't destroy you with a flood, as was done in the days of Noah, but would destroy you with famine, disease, and war. ³³ It is because of the prayers of the righteous that you have been spared these things. However, if you exile the righteous from among you, then the Divine cannot ignore your wickedness any longer. ³⁴ You will be beaten down by famine, disease, and war soon unless you give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation!"

The People of Ammonihah Hate Amulek

³⁵ The people of Ammonihah were even angrier at Amulek, and cried out, "This man hates our just laws and the wise lawyers we have selected!" ³⁶ Amulek stretched out his hand and yelled out even louder, "Oh you wicked and perverse generation! Why has Satan got such a great hold on your hearts? Why do you give yourselves to him so that he has power over you and blinds you from understanding the truth? ³⁸ Have I criticized your laws? ³⁹ You clearly don't understand what I have spoken about, because I have not criticized your laws. I have actually spoken in favor of your laws, but your own laws condemn you. ⁴⁰ The foundation of the destruction of the people of Ammonihah is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and judges."

⁴¹ When Amulek said this the people of Ammonihah cried out against him and said “Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, because he has lied to us and has criticized our laws!
⁴² He lies when he says that he has not criticized our laws! ⁴³ He hates our lawyers and judges!”

⁴⁴ The lawyers had convinced the people of Ammonihah that it was important to remember the accusations against Amulek. ⁴⁵ One of these lawyers was named Zeezrom. ⁴⁶ He was the chief prosecutor, most experienced, and best lawyer in the trial. ⁴⁷ The lawyers wanted to get rich, and were paid based on how much they worked.

Explanation of the Nephite Monetary System and the Judges' Wages

⁴⁸ The law that King Mosiah II established said that all the judges received a payment based on how much they worked. ⁴⁹ If someone owed a debt to another and they didn't pay what he owed, the debtor could bring the case before the judge. ⁵⁰ The judge was able to send officers to detain the debtee and have them brought to court. ⁵¹ The judge would then listen to the evidence and then make a determination. The judge could force the debtee to pay, have their property sold to cover their debt, or be exiled from the town and be considered a thief and a robber. ⁵² The law specified that the judge's wages were a senine of gold or senum of silver for a day.

⁵³ These are the names of the different denominations of gold and silver, based on their value. ⁵⁴ This monetary system was separate from the Jewish monetary system and was distinctly Nephite. Additionally, the Nephites' system for measuring was different from the Jewish system. ⁵⁵ The Nephites had changed these systems based on the different circumstances of each generation of Nephites, and continued to do so during the reign of the judges.

⁵⁶ These are the gold denominations in the monetary system: senine, seo, shum, and limnah.

⁵⁷ These are the silver denominations in the monetary system: senum, amnor, ezrom, and onti.

⁵⁸ A senum was equal to a senine, and both were worth a measure of barley or grain. ⁵⁹ A seon was twice the value of a senine; a shum was twice the value of a seon; and a limnah was the same combined value as a shum, seon, and senine. ⁶⁰ An amnor was twice the value of a senum; an ezrom was quadruple the value of a senum, and an onti held the same combined value as a ezrom, amnor, and senum.

⁶¹ These are some of the smaller denominations: A shiblon was half the value of a senum, and therefore a shiblon is half a measure of barley; a shiblum is half the value of a shiblon; and a Leah is half the value of a shiblum. ⁶² An antion of gold has the same value as 3 shiblons.

⁶³ This is the Nephite monetary system.

⁶⁴ The single goal of the lawyers was to get rich, and they were paid based on how much they worked. ⁶⁵ The lawyers rallied the people to engage in riots, disturb the peace, and all sorts of other wickedness, so that the lawyers would have plenty of work to do. ⁶⁶ They did this so that they could get hired and paid more often. This is why they also rallied people against Alma the Younger and Amulek.

Zeezrom Interrogates Amulek; eschatology

⁶⁷ This lawyer, Zeezrom, began to interrogate Amulek, and said: “Will you answer a couple of my questions?” ⁶⁸ Zeezrom, who was an expert in evil and destroying that which is good, then continued and reiterated “Will you answer the questions I put before you?” ⁶⁹ Amulek replied, “I will if the Spirit of God wants me to, because I won't say anything that is contrary to the Spirit.”

⁷⁰ Zeezrom said to him, “Here are six talents. I will give them to you if you will deny the existence of a supreme being.” ⁷¹ Amulek retorted, “Oh you child of hell, why tempt me? ⁷² Don't you know that the righteous won't give in to these kinds of temptations? ⁷³ Do you believe that there is no God, Zeezrom? ⁷⁴ I know that you know there is a God, but I also know that you love wealth more than Them. ⁷⁵ You have lied to me in front of God. ⁷⁶ You said to me ‘I will give you six talents’, which is quite a lot of money, when you never really even intended to give them to me even if I DID deny the Divine. ⁷⁷ Your goal was to trick me into denying the true and living God so you could destroy me. ⁷⁸ You will get your reward for this great evil.”

⁷⁹ Zeezrom asked, “There is a true and living God?” ⁸⁰ Amulek responded, “Yes, there is a true and living God.” ⁸¹ Zeezrom clarified, “Is there more than one God?” ⁸² Amulek answered, “No”. ⁸³ Zeezrom asked, “How do you know these things?” ⁸⁴ Amulek declared, “An angel made these things known to me.” ⁸⁵ Zeezrom changed the subject and asked, “Who is this man who will join humanity? Is he the Son of God?” ⁸⁶ Amulek said “Yes.” ⁸⁷ Zeezrom asked, “Will He free people while they're still actively making mistakes?” ⁸⁸ Amulek answered him and said, “No, He won't, because that would go against what the Divine has previously said.”

⁸⁹ Zeezrom said to the people watching the trial, “Make sure you remember what he just said. He said there is one God and that the Son of God will join humanity, but Amulek, as if he had the authority to command God, also declared that the Son of God won't free His people.” ⁹⁰ Amulek defended his words by saying, “You just lied! You misconstrued my words to make it seem as if I had the authority to command God. ⁹¹ To reiterate, the Divine cannot free Their people while they are still actively choosing to make mistakes. The Divine has specified that this is the case in the past and They can't go back on Their word. The Divine has specified that no evil thing can enter the realm of Heaven. ⁹² How can you be free unless you enter the realm of Heaven? That is why you cannot be freed while you are still choosing to actively make mistakes.”

⁹³ Zeezrom continued his interrogation by asking, “Is the Son of God the very eternal Creator?” Amulek said, “He is the very eternal Creator of Heaven and Earth, and everything in them. ⁹⁴ He is the beginning and the end; the first and the last. ⁹⁵ He will join humanity in order to free humanity. He will take responsibility for all the mistakes of those who trust Him. Those who trust Him are the only ones who will have eternal life and freedom! ⁹⁶ For the wicked, other than being resurrected, it will be as if Christ didn't take responsibility for their mistakes. ⁹⁷ The day will come that everyone will be resurrected and stand before God to have their lives reviewed and assessed.

⁹⁹ There is a death called the temporal death. The death of Christ will lift the permanence of this death, and everyone will be resurrected. ¹⁰⁰ In this resurrection the spirit and the body will be

reunited in their perfect form! Every limb and joint will be restored to their perfect state, and we will be just as alive as we are today. ¹⁰¹ We will be brought to stand before God and have a perfect recollection of every evil deed that we did in our lives. ¹⁰² This restoration of the body will come to everyone; old and young; enslaved and free; male and female; wicked and righteous. ¹⁰³ All of our bodies will be resurrected to their perfect form. We won't even be missing a single hair from our heads! ¹⁰⁴ Whether we were good or evil, we will all be brought before the Son, the Creator, and the Holy Spirit, which is one eternal God, to have our lives reviewed and assessed.

¹⁰⁵ I have spoken to you regarding the death and resurrection of the mortal body. ¹⁰⁶ The resurrected body will be elevated to immortality and it will never die again; body and soul will be reunited and never separated again. ¹⁰⁷ Once resurrection occurs, death will never be tasted again.”

¹⁰⁸ After Amulek said this the people were astonished, and Zeezrom was cowering at these words. ¹⁰⁹ This concludes all that I will write about Amulek's words.

Chapter 9

The Trial of Amulek

Alma the Younger Warns the Lawyers

¹ Zeezrom knew that Amulek had caught him lying and attempting to destroy him, and was cowering because of his guilty conscience. Alma the Younger spoke to Zeezrom to confirm what Amulek taught and expound on a couple of things. ² This is what Alma the Younger said to Zeezrom and the large crowd which was there attending the trial: ³ “Zeezrom, your lying and tricks have been exposed and you have not only lied to us, but also to God. ⁴ The Divine knows all your thoughts, and the Spirit made it known to us what they were. ⁵ You know that we know your plan was very subtle - it was as subtle as the devil. Your plan was to lie and deceive these people so you could turn them against us, hate us, and ultimately exile us. ⁶ This was the plan of the devil, who used you to accomplish it.

⁷ I want you to remember that everything I have said to you actually applies to everyone. ⁸ This was the trap that the adversary laid to catch people. ⁹ He wants you to be chained up and under his control to the point of destruction!”

Zeezrom and Antionah Fearfully Seek Clarification about Eschatology

¹⁰ After Alma the Younger said this, Zeezrom cowered in fear even more, because he was more and more convinced of the power of God. ¹¹ He was also convinced that Alma the Younger and Amulek knew his thoughts and intentions. ¹² He believed that they had been given the Divine power of prophecy. ¹³ Zeezrom began asking them questions so he could better understand the realm of God. ¹⁴ He asked Alma the Younger, “What did Amulek mean when he spoke about how everyone, both good and evil, will be resurrected from the dead and will stand before God to receive the honor that is due to them?”

¹⁵ Alma the Younger elaborated on the topic by saying, “Many are given knowledge about the mysteries of God. ¹⁶ However, these people are told that they should only teach what they are asked to teach. God reveals more of Their teachings when humanity is able to take to heart the teachings they have already been given. ¹⁷ Those who stubbornly don’t take those teachings to heart won’t receive any more. ¹⁸ Conversely, those who take the teachings to heart will be given more teachings until they understand everything about every Divine mystery. ¹⁹ Those who stubbornly disregard the teachings will know nothing about Divine mysteries. ²⁰ These are the people who are enslaved by the devil and led down to destruction. ²¹ This ignorance and stubbornness is what was meant by the chains of hell.

Amulek spoke plainly about death, the transition from mortality to immortality, and standing before God to have your life reviewed and assessed. ²² If we are so stubborn that these teachings are nowhere to be found in our heads, then our future looks pretty bleak. ²³ The things

we said and did in this life determine our future, and none of us have been perfect. ²⁴ Even our thoughts have occasionally betrayed us. When we understand the gravity of all the evil things we have done in our lives, we will be so ashamed that we dare not look at God. ²⁵ We would rather be buried by entire mountains in order to hide from the Divine. ²⁶ However, this cannot happen, and inevitably we will stand before God and see all Their glory, power, strength, majesty, and dominion. We will acknowledge that God's decisions regarding our souls are justified, even if we are ashamed by it. ²⁷ We will acknowledge that everything God does is justified, and that They are merciful to humanity. We will see that everyone who gives up their wickedness, seeks reconciliation, and trusts the Divine will be freed.

²⁸ At this point there will be a second death, which is a spiritual death. ²⁹ Those who died while living wicked lives on earth will also die spiritually. They are dead to righteousness. ³⁰ This is when they will endure their torments, which will be like a lake of fire and brimstone whose flames ascend up forever and ever. ³¹ After Satan subjects them to his will, this is when they will be chained down to destruction and enslavement, just as they gave Satan the power to do. ³² These people cannot be freed and, for them, it will be as if no freedom was ever made available for them. God can't ignore their choices, and since they will be resurrected they cannot die to get out of the consequences of their actions." ³³ After Alma the Younger finished saying this the people of Ammonihah were even more astonished.

³⁴ The chief ruler among the people, Antionah, came and asked him, "What did you mean when you said that we will transition from mortality to immortality and that the soul can never die? ³⁵ What does Genesis 3:24 mean, which says that God placed cherubims and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden to prevent Adam and Eve from re-entering and eating the fruit of the tree of life and living forever? ³⁶ There's no possible way that they could have lived forever."

³⁷ Alma the Younger told Antionah, "I was just about to explain this. ³⁸ We see that Adam and Eve left the garden after they ate the forbidden fruit, which is the consequence that God specified. Because of this, none of humanity is permitted to return to the garden. ³⁹ If Adam and Eve had been allowed to eat the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would be no death, and the Divine's plan would have been foiled. God would have also become a liar, because They said 'If you eat of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil then you will surely die.' ⁴⁰ The temporal death, which Amulek spoke of, comes to all of humanity. However, everyone is given the chance to give up their wickedness and gain reconciliation.

⁴¹ This mortal life became a probationary state, and it is a time to prepare to meet God; it is a time to prepare for resurrection and eternity. ⁴² If it weren't for God's plan for freedom, which was prepared before the foundation of the world, then there could be no resurrection of the dead. ⁴³ Luckily God's plan was made, and eventually it will result in the resurrection of the dead!

⁴⁴ If it were possible for Adam and Eve to eat the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil they would have been miserable forever, because they would not have had the time to prepare for eternity. ⁴⁵ The Divine's plan for freedom would have been foiled and God's word would have been null and void. ⁴⁶ This isn't what happened, though. Humanity lives their lives and then dies, and after death they meet their Creator for an assessment of their lives, as we have previously talked about, and this is where eternity begins.

⁴⁷ After God made this plan for humanity, They thought it was a good idea for humanity to know about it. ⁴⁸ The Divine sent angels to talk to humanity and help them see God's glory. ⁴⁹ From this time forward humanity prayed to God, and God answered them. God made Their plan for freedom known to humanity, which They had begun before the foundation for the world. ⁵⁰ The Divine told humanity as much as they were able to handle, and they showed how much they were able to handle by giving up their wickedness, seeking reconciliation, trusting the Divine, and doing good things. ⁵¹ God gave advice to humanity after Adam and Eve ate the forbidden fruit and became like gods and knew right from wrong. When they did this, they put themselves in a position to act according to their own will and pleasure, whether that be for good or evil.

⁵² After God showed them the Divine plan for freedom, They gave advice to not do evil things, and if this advice wasn't taken the consequence would be a second death - a death to righteous things. ⁵³ The plan for freedom would have no effect on those who lived evil lives and endured a second death, because through the supreme goodness of God justice cannot be destroyed. ⁵⁴ God talked to humanity in the name of the Son as part of the plan for freedom and said 'If you will give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation, and not harden your hearts, then I will have mercy upon you through my only begotten Son. ⁵⁵ Whoever gives up their wickedness, seeks reconciliation, and doesn't harden their heart is able to lay claim to this mercy through my Son, and shall enter into my rest. ⁵⁶ However, those who *do* harden their hearts and do wicked things will not enter into my rest'.

⁵⁷ Now, my family and friends, I want to tell you that if you harden your hearts you will not enter into the rest of the Divine. ⁵⁸ Your wickedness provokes God, and They will not be able to ignore it forever. Your willing wickedness will lead you to your first death. ⁵⁹ Your continued wickedness may also bring you to the second death, the destruction of your soul. These deaths are very similar to each other. ⁶⁰ We know these things and we know that they are true, so let us give up our wickedness, seek reconciliation, and not harden our hearts! We should avoid provoking the Divine by not taking Their advice. ⁶¹ Instead, let us enter into the rest of the Divine, which is created by Their word.

Alma the Younger Preaches About the Priesthood

⁶² Again, my family and friends, I ask you to remember the time when the Divine gave our people this advice. ⁶³ I ask you to remember that the Divine ordained priests to be a part of the priesthood to teach these things to the people. ⁶⁴ Those priests were ordained to the priesthood in such a way that the people would know how to look to the Son for freedom.

⁶⁵ This is how they were ordained: The Divine had foreknowledge about the trust they would have in the Divine and the good things they would do in mortality, and so the Divine helped prepare them before the beginning of the world. Next, on earth, they were left to choose good or evil. ⁶⁶ These people chose good, displayed great trust in the Divine, and were given a holy calling to help prepare people for the freedom that the Son would give them. ⁶⁷ They were called because of their trust in the Divine, while others rejected the Spirit of God because of their hard hearts and blind minds. If they had not rejected the Divine, they would have been called like the others. ⁶⁸ In other words, all are called and have been since before the beginning of the world.

However, only those who do not harden their hearts, and instead accept the Son's sacrifice, accept this call. ⁶⁹ This is how they were called and ordained to the high and holy priesthood of God to teach humanity the Divine's advice, so they can enter into Their rest.

⁷⁰ This priesthood has always existed. ⁷¹ Based on the Divine's foreknowledge, it is without beginning or end, and was prepared from eternity to all eternity. ⁷² This how they were ordained: they were called, sacramentally ordained, took upon them the eternal priesthood. ⁷³ They become high priests forever in the Divine's priesthood. Like the priesthood, the Son and the Divine are without beginnings or an end; They are full of grace, equity, and truth."

Chapter 10

The Trial of Amulek

Alma Continues Preaching on Priesthood

¹ “As I said, there were many who were ordained to this holy and high priesthood. ² They were ordained because of their willingness to give up wickedness, seek reconciliation, commitment to living righteous lives, and their great trust in the Divine. ³ They were called, released from their wrong doings, and their metaphorical clothes were washed clean. ⁴ After this they could not see wickedness without cringing at it. ⁵ There were many who were made pure and entered into the rest of their God.

⁶ My family and friends, I would like to see you humble yourselves before God, turn away from your wickedness, and seek reconciliation so that you may also enter into the Divine’s rest. ⁷ Humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek did. Melchizedek was also a high priest in this same priesthood which I have spoken about, and he also took upon him this high priesthood forever. ⁸ This is the same Melchizedek that our ancestor Abraham paid his tithing to. ⁹ These teachings were given to us so that we could look forward to the coming of the Son of God. ¹⁰ They point us to the Divine for an absolvment of our wickedness so we can enter into the rest of the God.

¹¹ This is the same Melchizedek that was king over the land of Salem. His people were very wicked and had all gone astray. ¹² However, Melchizedek had a great amount of trust in the Divine and became a part of the high and holy priesthood, and preached to his people about giving up their wickedness and seeking reconciliation. ¹³ His people heard these teachings and gave up their wickedness, sought reconciliation, and Melchizedek established peace in the land. ¹⁴ Since Melchizedek was the king of Salem, he became known as ‘The Prince of Peace’. ¹⁵ There were many that came before and after him, but there were none who were as great as him. Others have given the details about why.

¹⁶ I digress; what I have spoken about regarding that topic is good enough. ¹⁷ You have the scriptures; if you distort them it will be to your own disadvantage.”

Alma the Younger Preaches Repentance and the Coming of Christ

¹⁸ After Alma the Younger said all of this, he stretched out his hand and yelled, “Now is the time to give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation, because the day when we are made whole and are set free is almost here! ¹⁹ The voice of the Divine, through the mouth of angels, declares this to all nations so they may have a great joy. ²⁰ The Divine says this to all Their people around the world, including us. ²¹ These things are taught to us in plain terms that we understand. These things are taught to us in this way because we may understand it differently than other people do. ²² We are very loved, because this good news has been declared to all in the

vineyard! ²³ The angels are declaring this to many people in our land in order to prepare the hearts of humanity to receive God's word at the time of Their coming in glory.

²⁴ All we have left to do is wait for the joyful news of the Divine's arrival which was foretold to us by angels. We know this time is coming, but we're not sure when. ²⁵ I pray to God that it will be within my lifetime, but I will be happy whenever it does happen. ²⁶ This shall be made known to us by justice-filled people who were themselves told by angels. When this happens, the prophetic writings of our ancestors will be made a reality.

²⁷ My family and friends, from the bottom of my heart with great anxiety, and even pain, I beg you to listen to what I am saying and not procrastinate the day that you throw away your wickedness, seek reconciliation, and have a change of heart. ²⁸ I ask you to humble yourself before God, and call on Their holy name while you continually watch and pray that you are not tempted more than you can withstand. I ask that you seek to be led by the Holy spirit and strive to be humble, gentle, submissive, patient, full of love, long-suffering, and trust the Divine. ²⁹ I ask that you have hope that you will receive eternal life and always have the love of God in your hearts, so you can be lifted up at the last day and enter into the Divine's rest. ³⁰ I pray that you will be reconciled with the Divine, and that you will not bring down Divine wrath upon you and be bound by the chains of hell and suffer the second death."

³¹ Alma the Younger said many more things to the people of Ammonihah, but they aren't written here.

False Accusations Against Alma the Younger and Amulek

³² After he preached all this, many people trusted what he said and began to give up their wickedness, seek reconciliation, and study the scriptures. ³³ However, a larger number of people were so angry at the plain things that Alma the Younger and Amulek had taught that they wanted them executed. ³⁴ These people accused Amulek of lying to them and hating their laws, lawyers, and judges. ³⁵ These people were angry with Alma the Younger and Amulek because they had clearly condemned their wickedness. These people had hoped they could secretly assassinate them. ³⁶ Luckily, instead of being assassinated, Alma the Younger and Amulek were arrested and put on trial in front of the chief judge of the land. ³⁷ Those who were hostile towards them testified against them at this trial, and accused them of hating their laws, laws, judges, and all the people in the land. ³⁸ These people accused them of saying that the Son would not free humanity. This is the sort of false accusations that were made against Alma the Younger and Amulek. ³⁹ These accusations were made in front of Antionah, the chief judge in the land of Ammonihah.

⁴⁰ Zeezrom was astonished by all of these accusations, because he knew that he had misled people with his lies and caused their minds to be blinded. ⁴¹ His soul was harrowed by the knowledge of his own guilt, and began to be encircled by the pains of hell. ⁴² He began to cry to the people, "I am guilty! These men are innocent!" ⁴³ Zeezrom begged his people to change their minds, but they hated him and they said "Are you possessed by the devil?"

Genocide in Ammonihah

⁴⁴ The people of Ammonihah spit upon Zeezrom, exiled him and everyone else who trusted Alma the Younger and Amulek, and then sent people to throw stones at them. ⁴⁵ The people who believed in the word of God were rounded up and then thrown into a fire. ⁴⁶ The records of these people, including the scriptures, were also brought and thrown into the fire and were burned.

⁴⁷ The people of Ammonihah brought Alma the Younger and Amulek and brought them to the place where many other followers of God were brought to be martyred so that they could watch their fiery deaths. When Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were being burned alive he was also filled with pain. He said to Alma the Younger, “How can we just stand here and watch this? ⁴⁹ We should use the power of God to save them from the flames!”

⁵⁰ Alma the Younger said to Amulek, “The Spirit constrains me to not stretch out my hand; the Divine receives these martyrs in glory. ⁵¹ The Divine is allowing the people of Ammonihah who have hard hearts to kill these martyrs in order to be justified in taking action. ⁵² The deaths of the innocent will stand as a testimony against the people of Ammonihah when they meet their Maker.”

⁵³ Amulek then said to him, “They may burn us as well...” ⁵⁴ Alma the Younger said, “Everything will go according to God’s plan. However, our work is not finished, so they will not burn us.”

⁵⁵ When the bodies of the martyrs as well as their records and scriptures were burned away, the chief judge of Ammonihah, Antionah, came before Alma the Younger and Amulek. ⁵⁶ He slapped them both on the cheeks and said, “After having seen your people burned alive, do you still think that it is *my* people who will be thrown into a lake of fire and brimstone? ⁵⁷ You see that neither you or your God had the power to save your people who were burned alive.” ⁵⁸ The judge slapped them on the cheeks again and asked “What do you have to say for yourselves?” ⁵⁹ To clarify, chief judge Antionah was a member of Nehor’s church - the same Nehor who had killed Gideon.

Fate of Alma the Younger and Amulek

Imprisoned and Tortured

⁶⁰ Alma the Younger and Amulek said nothing, and so he slapped them again and turned them over to his guards to be thrown into prison. ⁶¹ After they had been in prison for three days, many lawyers, judges, priests, and teachers of the Nehor faith visited them. ⁶² They interrogated the prisoners, but Alma the Younger and Amulek remained silent. ⁶³ Antionah again came to them and said, “Why don’t you answer these peoples’ questions? ⁶⁴ Don’t you know that I have the power to throw you into the flames?” ⁶⁵ He then commanded them to speak, but they again remained silent.

⁶⁶ These interrogators left for the day, but then came back the next. Antionah again came and slapped them on their cheeks. ⁶⁷ Many others came and beat them and asked “Will you still condemn the people of Ammonihah and our laws? ⁶⁸ If you are allegedly so powerful, why don’t you free yourself?” ⁶⁹ These people said many other things like this while also biting and spitting on the prisoners. They mocked them and said “How will we look when we are damned?” ⁷⁰ Alma the Younger and Amulek were treated like this for many days. ⁷¹ In addition, they were tortured by not being given food or water. ⁷² To add insult to all of this injury, they were stripped naked while they were bound with ropes in prison.

⁷³ After they endured this torture for many days, the chief judge of Ammonihah, Antionah, as well as his teachers and lawyers visited the bound prisoners on the 12th day of the 10th month of the 10th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites. ⁷⁴ Antionah again slapped them, and said, “If you have the power of God, then free yourself from your restraints. If you do that then we will believe that the Divine will actually kill the people of Ammonihah as you have said.” ⁷⁵ Each one of them took turns slapping them and saying similar things.

Freed by the Power of God

⁷⁶ When the last one was finished beating them, the power of God was upon Alma the Younger and Amulek. They arose and stood on their feet, and Alma the Younger cried, “Oh God, how long will we have to endure this torture? ⁷⁷ Give us the strength that is proportionate to our trust in Christ, which is enough to free ourselves!” With this, they broke their restraints.

When the people of Ammonihah saw this, they began to run away, because they feared they would be destroyed. ⁷⁸ They were so filled with fear that they fell to the ground and couldn’t even reach the outer door of the prison. ⁷⁹ The earth shook and the walls of the prison cracked and crumbled to the ground. ⁸⁰ Chief judge Antionah as well as the lawyers, priests, and teachers who had once beaten Alma the Younger and Amulek were killed in this earthquake. ⁸¹ However, Alma the Younger and Amulek were able to walk out of the prison unharmed, because the Divine had given them power that was proportionate to their trust in Christ. ⁸³ The entire prison collapsed, and everyone who was within it was killed except Alma the Younger and Amulek, who immediately went into the city.

⁸⁴ The people of Ammonihah heard the collapse of the prison, and entire crowds came running to find out what had happened. ⁸⁵ When they saw Alma the Younger and Amulek walking out of the rubble they were struck with fear and ran away from them.

Find the Refugee Saints and Heals Zeezrom

⁸⁶ Alma the Younger and Amulek were told to leave that city, so they went to the land of Sidom. ⁸⁷ It was here that they found the people who trusted the Divine and had fled from persecution in the land of Ammonihah. ⁸⁸ Alma the Younger and Amulek told them about the fates of their martyred family and friends as well as how they escaped imprisonment.

⁸⁹ Zeezrom was in Sidom, but was sick with a burning fever which was brought on by the guilt he carried due to his wickedness. He believed that his wicked actions led to the deaths of Alma the Younger and Amulek. ⁹⁰ He was so harrowed by this, and many other wicked things he did, that he believed that he would never be forgiven to the point that it affected his physical health.

⁹¹ When Zeezrom heard that Alma the Younger and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, he was encouraged and immediately sent a message asking them to come to him. ⁹² Alma the Younger and Amulek came immediately to Zeezrom's house. ⁹³ They found him very sick in his bed with a burning fever and feeling very guilty because of his wickedness. ⁹⁴ When he saw them, he reached out to them and asked them to heal him. ⁹⁵ Alma the Younger held Zeezrom's hand and asked, "Do you believe that Christ has the ability to free you?" ⁹⁶ Zeezrom answered by saying, "Yes, I believe everything that you have taught." ⁹⁷ Alma the Younger said, "If you believe that Christ can free you, then you can be healed." ⁹⁸ Zeezrom said, "I trust that you are telling me the truth."

⁹⁹ Then Alma the Younger prayed to God and said, "Oh God, this man trusts Christ. Please have mercy on him and heal him." ¹⁰⁰ After Alma the Younger said this, Zeezrom leaped to his feet and was able to walk. ¹⁰¹ This astounded everyone there, and word of this healing spread throughout all the land of Sidom. ¹⁰² Alma the Younger baptized Zeezrom, who then preached to the people from that time on.

Epilogue

¹⁰³ Alma the Younger established a congregation in the land of Sidom and ordained priests and teachers to baptize everyone who wanted to be baptized. ¹⁰⁴ Many people wanted to be baptized, and they all flocked from regions around Sidom to engage in this sacrament. ¹⁰⁵ However, the people of Ammonihah remained a stubborn and hard-hearted people. ¹⁰⁶ They did not regret the terrible things they had done, and ascribed the power that Alma the Younger and Amulek had to the devil. These leaders of Nehor's church did not believe they had anything they needed to reconcile for.

¹⁰⁷ Amulek ended up forsaking all of his wealth which was in the land of Ammonihah for the word of God, because he was rejected by the people who were once his family and friends.

¹⁰⁸ After Alma the Younger established this congregation, he saw that the people recognized their prideful ways and were beginning to humble themselves. ¹⁰⁹ They began to gather together in their churches to worship God. They prayed that they would be freed from Satan, death, and destruction. ¹¹⁰ After Alma the Younger saw this, he took Amulek to his own house in the land of Zarahemla and cared for and taught him there during this difficult point in his life.

¹¹¹ This concluded the 10th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites.

Chapter 11

The Genocide of the Nehors

¹ There were no wars or contentions, only peace, in the land of Zarahemla until the 5th day of the 2nd month of the 11th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites. On this day there was a war cry heard throughout the land. ² The armies of the Lamanites had invaded the land on the side of the wilderness. They had seized the city of Ammonihah and had begun to slaughter the people and destroy the city. ³ Before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive the Lamanite invaders out of the land, the people of the city of Ammonihah were completely killed. Some people in the surrounding areas, such as Noah, were captured and brought into the wilderness.

⁴ The Nephites wanted to free those who were taken captive. ⁵ The man who was appointed as the chief captain of the Nephite armies was named Zoram, and he had two sons named Lehi and Aha. ⁶ The three of them knew that Alma the Younger was the high priest over the church, and heard he had the ability to prophesy. ⁷ They went to him and asked him if the Divine wanted them to go search for the Nephites who were captured by the Lamanites.

⁸ Alma the Younger sought guidance from the Divine on this matter. ⁹ Alma the Younger returned to them and said, [“The Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the southern wilderness beyond the borders of the land of Manti. ¹⁰ You should meet them on the eastern side of the river. When you do, God will free you and your family and friends from Lamanite captivity.”](#)

¹¹ Zoram and his sons did as Alma the Younger instructed. ¹² They ambushed the Lamanite armies, who were scattered and driven into the wilderness. Zoram and his sons freed their fellow Nephites without a single person in their army dying. ¹³ They helped the freed Nephites return to their homes. ¹⁴ This ended the 11th year of the judges.

¹⁵ Every living soul in Ammonihah had been killed and their city was destroyed. They had once said that not even God could do this because of how great they were. ¹⁶ However, it only took a single day to leave it completely desolate. The carcasses of the inhabitants of this land were mangled by dogs and wild beasts. ¹⁷ After many days, their dead bodies were heaped together and buried in a shallow mass grave. ¹⁸ The stench was so great that no one lived in the land of Ammonihah for many years.

¹⁹ The people of Ammonihah were members of Nehor’s church, and so this event was called “The Genocide of the Nehors”.

Alma the Younger and Amulek Preach During the Period of Peace

²⁰ The Lamanites did not wage war against the Nephites until the 14th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites. ²¹ There was peace during these 3 years. ²² Alma the Younger and Amulek preached about giving up wickedness to people in their temples, sanctuaries, and

church houses. ²³ They constantly gave the word of God to anyone who would listen, regardless of who they were.

²⁴ This is how Alma the Younger, Amulek, and many others preached throughout the land. ²⁵ The church became well established throughout the Nephite lands. ²⁶ There was no inequality among them, because the Divine poured out Their Spirit upon the whole face of the land in order to prepare the minds of humanity. Their hearts were prepared to receive the teachings that Christ would one day give them. ²⁷ This way, the Nephites' hearts would not be hardened to these teachings and be led to destruction. ²⁸ Instead, they would receive these teachings with joy and enter into the rest of their God.

²⁹ Those priests went among the people and preached against all their lies, deceptions, enyings, strifes, malice, hatred, thefts, murderings, and harmful sexuality. The priests urged them not to engage in these things. ³⁰ The priests warned that the Son of God would soon join humanity, suffer, die, and then be resurrected from the dead.

³¹ Many people asked where the Son of God would be born, and they were taught that Christ would visit them after His resurrection. This filled people with great joy! ³² The church gained victory over the devil after it established so many congregations throughout the land. The pure word of God was preached throughout the whole land, and the Divine poured out blessings among the people.

³³ This concluded the 14th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites.

Chapter 12

An account of the sons of King Mosiah II, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites. Their sufferings and deliverance according to the record of Alma.

Alma the Younger Crosses Paths with the Sons of King Mosiah II

¹ As Alma the Younger left the land of Gideon from the south toward the land of Manti, he was surprised to cross paths with the sons of King Mosiah II who were traveling to the land of Zarahemla. ² These were the same sons of King Mosiah II who were with him when an angel first visited him. Alma the Younger was very excited to see his friends! ³ The fact that they still trusted the Divine and continued to learn more about the truth added to his joy. ⁴ The sons of King Mosiah II were all well acquainted with the scriptures and the word of God. ⁵ This wasn't all, though; after a lot of prayer and fasting, they were given the gifts of prophecy and revelation. When they preached, they did so with the power and authority of God. ⁶ They had been teaching the word of God for 14 years among the Lamanites, and were quite successful in telling people about the truth. ⁷ Their powerful words were instrumental in helping people give up their wickedness and start their relationship with God.

The Journeys of the Sons of Mosiah II

⁸ They endured many difficult things during their journeys. ⁹ They endured mental and physical hardships, including hunger, thirst, fatigue, and worked hard at preaching. ¹⁰ This is the story of their journeys: After they declined the crown they were granted permission to leave the land by their father, King Mosiah II, during the 1st year of the reign of the judges. ¹¹ They departed from the land of Zarahemla with their swords, spears, bows, arrows, and slings. ¹² They brought these weapons with them so they could hunt for food. ¹³ They departed into the wilderness, with a couple other people joining them, to go to the land of Nephi to preach the word of God to the Lamanites.

¹⁴ They traveled, fasted, and prayed for many days in the wilderness and asked the Divine for just a portion of Their Spirit to be with them. ¹⁵ They wanted to be instruments in the hand of God to help the Lamanites learn the truth, if such a thing were even possible. ¹⁶ They wanted to show the Lamanites that their traditions and history of their ancestors wasn't entirely correct.

¹⁷ The Divine visited them with Their Spirit and said to them **“Be comforted”**, and they were. ¹⁸ The Divine continued, **“Go among the Lamanites, who are your family and friends, and preach my word. ¹⁹ Be patient and tolerant during the hardships you will endure, so that you can be good examples to them for me. You will be instrumental in helping free many souls.”**

²⁰ The hearts of the sons of King Mosiah II and their crew were encouraged and they continued to travel towards the Lamanites to preach the word of God to them. ²¹ When they arrived at the borders of Lamanite territory, they split up and trusted that the Divine would make sure that they

were able to meet again when their mission was fulfilled. They knew they had a great work ahead of them.

²² It certainly was great, because they decided to preach the word of God to a wild, stubborn, and war-loving people who loved robbing and killing Nephites. ²³ Their hearts were focused on riches such as gold, silver, and precious stones. ²⁴ They wanted these things quite badly, but they were unwilling to work for it themselves, so they robbed and killed others for them. ²⁵ They were a very indolent people, and many worshiped idols. The curse of God had fallen upon them because of the incorrect traditions and history of their ancestors. Regardless, the Divine's promises extended to them if they gave up their wickedness and sought reconciliation. ²⁶ This fact was the reason why the sons of King Mosiah II had undertaken this work; they wanted to help the Lamanites do this and understand the Divine's plan for freedom.

²⁷ They all went their separate ways and went among the Lamanites alone. ²⁸ Ammon was the leader who taught them all how to perform their work. Before everyone departed, he gave them a blessing. With this, their individual journeys began.

Ammon's Journey

²⁹ Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, which was named after the children of Ishmael who had become Lamanites. ³⁰ As Ammon entered the land the Lamanites immediately arrested him and brought him before the king, which was policy when any Nephite entered Lamanite territory. ³¹ It was then the king's decision to exile, imprison, enslave, or execute any captured Nephites.

³² Ammon was carried to the king, whose name was Lamoni and who was a descendant of Ishmael. ³³ King Lamoni asked Ammon if he wanted to live among the Ishmaelites or the Lamanites. ³⁴ Ammon said, "I want to live among your people for a time, perhaps until the day I die." ³⁵ King Lamoni was thrilled with this response and released Ammon from his restraints. King Lamoni then asked Ammon if he wanted to marry one of his daughters. ³⁶ Ammon declined by saying, "No, but I will be your slave". ³⁷ So Ammon, and several others, were given the job of tending to the king's flocks.

Flocks are Scattered

³⁸ After 3 days of working for the king, he and the other slaves took their flocks to the water of Sebus to drink. All the Lamanites took their flocks there to drink. ³⁹ Some of the Lamanite shepherds who were already there and decided to scatter the flocks of King Lamoni.

⁴⁰ King Lamoni's slaves exclaimed, "Now the king will kill us just like he killed our family and friends! He will kill us because his flocks have been scattered by those wicked men!" ⁴¹ They began to cry rather hard and said, "Our flocks are scattered and our fate is sealed!" ⁴² They cried because they were scared of being killed.

⁴³ When Ammon saw this, his heart was filled with joy, and he said to himself "This is my chance to show my Divine power by finding the king's flock for my fellow slaves. After I do this, I will win

their hearts and they will trust what I have to say!”⁴⁴ This is the kind of thing Ammon thought when he saw the hardships of the people he considered his family and friends.⁴⁵ He then comforted them and said, “My family and friends, don’t be worried! Let’s go search for the flocks. We can still gather them together so they can drink as we had originally planned.⁴⁶ If we do this then the king will not kill us.”⁴⁷ They followed Ammon and searched for their flocks. They were able to gather them rather quickly and bring them to the watering hole.

⁴⁸ Those men came back, ready to scatter their flocks again. However, Ammon said to his fellow slaves, “Guard the flocks so they don’t run away, and I will go and deal with these men.”⁴⁹ They did as Ammon told them, and Ammon went to deal with the other shepherds by the watering hole.

Ammon Dismembers Shepherds

⁵⁰ There were quite a few of these other shepherds, and they weren’t worried about Ammon. They thought that they could kill him if need be. However, they didn’t know that the Divine had promised King Mosiah II that Ammon would be protected, or anything about the Divine for that matter.⁵¹ They loved killing people, which is why they scattered King Lamoni’s flocks to begin with.

⁵² Ammon began to powerfully throw stones at them with his sling.⁵³ He killed a couple of them, and they were shocked at how powerful he was.⁵⁴ This enraged the others, and made them determined to kill Ammon.⁵⁵ They were unable to hit him with their slings, so they came at him with clubs.⁵⁶ Everyone who raised their club to hit Ammon had their arm chopped off by him.⁵⁷ These dismemberments shocked the shepherds and they ran away.⁵⁸ Ammon scared the many shepherds away with the amount of strength he possessed.⁵⁹ Ammon killed 6 with his sling and 1, their leader, with his sword, while also dismembered many others.

⁶⁰ After they had all ran off, Ammon returned to his fellow slaves and they watered their flocks and then returned them to the king’s pasture. They then came to King Lamoni with all the arms that Ammon had cut off.⁶¹ These other slaves did this to give proof of what Ammon had done.⁶² The king gathered together his slaves who witnessed this so he could hear the story of what happened directly from them.

King Lamoni Hears the Tale of Dismemberment, believes Ammon is God

⁶³ King Lamoni was shocked when he learned how faithfully and powerfully Ammon protected his flocks against the other shepherds. The king said, “Surely, he is more than just a man.⁶⁴ Could he be the Divine? After all, he brought justice to people who sought to murder.”

⁶⁵ The king’s slaves said “We don’t know if he is the Great Spirit or just a man, but this much we do know: he cannot be killed by your enemies.⁶⁶ They are also unable to scatter your flocks when he is with us, because of his skill and strength. We know that he is a friend to you.⁶⁷ We do not believe that an ordinary man could have such great power or evade death like he has done.”⁶⁸ The king responded by saying, “Now I know that he is the Great Spirit and he has

come down at this time to save your lives so I didn't kill all of you. ⁶⁹ This is the Great Spirit which our ancestors spoke about."

⁷⁰ Lamoni's tradition taught that there was indeed a Great Spirit. ⁷¹ Additionally, this tradition also taught that everything they did was, by default, the right thing to do. ⁷² However, King Lamoni couldn't help but still be filled with fear; he was worried that he had acted immorally by killing his slaves. ⁷³ Over the years he had killed many of them because their flocks had been scattered. ⁷⁴ This happened frequently, because Lamanites liked to stand by the waters of Sebus and scatter everyone's flocks, and perhaps steal them in the process.

⁷⁵ King Lamoni asked his slaves, "Where is this powerful man?" ⁷⁶ They responded, "He is feeding your horses." ⁷⁷ Before they had gone to water the flocks, the king instructed them to prepare his horses and chariots for a journey to the land of Nephi. ⁷⁸ There was a great feast being held there by King Lamoni's father, King Francis, who was king over all the land.

⁷⁹ King Lamoni was shocked to hear that Ammon was preparing for this trip; he could hardly believe how devoted Ammon was. The king noted, ⁸⁰ "I don't have any other slave who is as devoted as he is; he remembers everything I tell him and enacts my orders. ⁸¹ Now I certainly know that he is the Great Spirit! I want him to come to me, but I dare not ask."

King Lamoni Asks Ammon Questions

⁸² When Ammon was finished preparing the horses and chariots for this journey, he went in to the king and saw that his countenance was changed. Ammon was about to leave the presence of the king. ⁸³ One of the king's slaves addressed him by saying "Rabbanah", which means "powerful" or "great king", and is usually used in reference to a ruler. ⁸⁴ "Rabbanah, the king wants you to stay." ⁸⁵ Ammon turned to face the king and said, "What would you like me to do for you, oh king?" ⁸⁶ However, the king said nothing because he didn't know what to say. In fact, they just sat in silence for a whole hour. ⁸⁷ Ammon asked again, "What would you like me to do?", but again the king didn't answer.

⁸⁸ Ammon was filled with the Spirit of God, and he was able to read the king's mind. ⁸⁹ Ammon said to King Lamoni, "Is this because you heard that I killed seven people while I was defending your slaves and flocks, and then brought their dismembered arms back as proof? Is that what has caused this marveling? ⁹⁰ Is that really what this is about? ⁹¹ I am your slave, and I will do whatever you'd like me to do."

⁹² King Lamoni was shocked again when he heard this; he saw that Ammon could read his mind. ⁹³ King Lamoni asked, "Who are you? Are you that Great Spirit that knows everything?" ⁹⁴ Ammon said, "I am not". ⁹⁵ The king asked "How do you know the thoughts of my heart? ⁹⁶ You may speak boldly when you tell me these things. I also want to know by what power you killed and dismembered those mens' arms. ⁹⁷ If you tell me these things I will give you anything you want. ⁹⁸ I would guard you with my armies if it was needed, but I know that you are more powerful than all of my soldiers. Again, I will give you anything that you ask for."

⁹⁹ Ammon, who was wise yet harmless, said to King Lamoni, “Will you listen to what I have to say if I tell you by what power I did these things? Your attention is the thing I want from you.” ¹⁰⁰ The king answered by saying, “I will believe everything you say.” This is how Ammon got King Lamoni to listen to the word of God.

The Conversion of King Lamoni

¹⁰¹ Ammon began to speak boldly by saying, “Do you believe that there is a God?” ¹⁰² The king replied by saying, “I don’t know what that means.” ¹⁰³ Then Ammon rephrased the question and asked, “Do you believe that there is a Great Spirit?” ¹⁰⁴ King Lamoni said “Yes.” ¹⁰⁵ Ammon clarified “‘Great Spirit’ is another name for ‘God’.”

¹⁰⁶ Ammon said, “Do you believe that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?” ¹⁰⁷ King Lamoni said, “I believe that the Spirit created all things which are in the earth, but I am not sure about the heavens.” ¹⁰⁸ Ammon said to him, “Heaven is a place where God lives with all the holy angels.” ¹⁰⁹ King Lamoni asked, “Is it above the earth?” ¹¹⁰ Ammon said, “Yes, and God looks down on all of humanity and knows all the thoughts and intents of our hearts. God created all of us at the beginning.”

¹¹¹ King Lamoni said, “I trust everything that you have said. Were you sent here by God?” ¹¹² Ammon said to him, “I am just a man. In the beginning humanity was created after the image of God. I am called by the Divine’s Holy Spirit to teach these things to your people, so they can know justice and truth. ¹¹³ A portion of the Spirit dwells within me and gives me knowledge and power based on how much I trust the Divine and whether my actions align with God’s desires.”

¹¹⁴ After Ammon explained this, he told the story of the creation of the world, the creation of Adam and Eve, and all the things about the origin of humanity as we know it. ¹¹⁵ He read aloud the history of their people as well as the scriptures till the time that Lehi and Saraiah left Jerusalem. ¹¹⁶ He also told the king and his slaves about the journeys of their ancestors after Lehi and Saraiah left Jerusalem. He told them about all the hunger and thirst they endured during their travels. ¹¹⁷ He told them about the rebellions that Laman, Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael led. ¹¹⁸ He expounded on all the history and scriptures that were written from the time that Lehi and Saraiah left Jerusalem down to that time. ¹¹⁹ He also expounded upon the plan for freedom which was created at the beginning of the world. ¹²⁰ He also told them about the coming of Christ and everything the Divine has done.

King Lamoni Falls into a Divine Slumber

¹²¹ Ammon said all of these things, and King Lamoni trusted everything he said. ¹²² The king cried to the Divine, “Oh God, have mercy! I see the mercy that you have given to the Nephites; please extend that same mercy to me!” ¹²³ After he said this, he fell to the earth as if he were dead.

¹²⁴ His slaves carried him to his wife, Queen Majorie, and laid him upon a bed. He laid there as if he were dead for two days and nights. ¹²⁵ Queen Majorie and her children mourned and grieved

King Lamoni's loss in the traditional Lamanite manner. ¹²⁶ After two days and nights they were about to put his body in a sepulcher.

¹²⁷ Queen Majorie heard about Ammon, and she asked him to come to her. ¹²⁸ Ammon did as she asked, and asked her what he could do for her. ¹²⁹ She said, "My slaves have told me that you are a prophet of a holy God, and that you have the power to perform miracles in Their name. ¹³⁰ If this is true, I ask that you go in and see my husband, who has laid upon his bed for two days and nights. ¹³¹ Some people say that he is not dead, but others say that he is and they can smell him decomposing and he should be placed in a sepulcher. However, I myself do not smell anything."

¹³² Ammon had hoped that this is what she wanted, because he knew that King Lamoni was under the power of God. ¹³³ He knew that the dark veil of unbelief was thrown off of King Lamoni's mind, and the light which had illuminated his mind was the marvelous light, goodness, and glory of God. ¹³⁴ This light dispelled the cloud of darkness and had infused a profound joy into his soul! This eternal light lit up his spirit! ¹³⁵ Ammon knew that this light had drained King Lamoni's strength while he was so preoccupied with God. What the queen wanted him to do is also what he wanted to do.

¹³⁶ Ammon went in to see King Lamoni as Queen Majorie asked, and when he saw him he knew he wasn't dead. ¹³⁷ Ammon told Queen Majorie, "He is not dead, but is in a Divine sleep. Don't bury him, because he will wake up tomorrow morning." ¹³⁸ Ammon asked her, "Do you trust me?" ¹³⁹ She replied, "I have no reason to believe that this will happen other than your word and the trust of my slaves. However, I do trust you." ¹⁴⁰ Ammon said to her, "You are blessed because of your trust in me. There has never even been this level of trust among all the Nephites."

The Great Divine Slumber

¹⁴¹ Queen Majorie stayed by King Lamoni's bedside the whole night and into the morning in which Ammon said he would awaken. ¹⁴² Sure enough, King Lamoni awoken just as Ammon had prophesied. When he awoke he stretched his hand out toward his wife and said, "Blessed be the name of the Great Spiit, and blessed are you. ¹⁴³ As sure as I know that you are alive, I also know that I have seen my Emancipator. I know that a woman will give birth to Him, and then He will free everyone who trusts Him."

¹⁴⁴ When he said this, his heart was so full that he fell back asleep out of sheer joy. Queen Majorie was also so overwhelmed with the spirit that she also fell asleep. ¹⁴⁵ The Lamanites' wickedness had been the cause of a lot of heartache among the Nephites and all the people of God. However, Ammon prayed that the Spirit of God would be poured out on the Lamanites, and now he saw it happen. ¹⁴⁶ Ammon fell to his knees and poured his soul out in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what They had done for his Lamanite friends and family. ¹⁴⁷ Ammon was also overpowered with joy, and fell asleep with Queen Majorie and King Lamoni.

¹⁴⁸ When the royal slaves saw them on the ground, they also prayed to God. ¹⁴⁹ It was them that had brought Ammon to King Lamoni to begin with and had told him about Ammon's great power.

¹⁵⁰ They prayed to God with all the strength they could muster, until they also fell asleep. The only one who didn't fall asleep was a Lamanite woman named Abish, who had trusted the Divine for many years due to a remarkable vision her father had. While she trusted the Divine, she didn't make it well known.

Abish's Testimony

¹⁵¹ When Abish saw the royal slaves, the royalty, and Ammon asleep on the ground she knew it was the work and power of God. ¹⁵² She thought that this was an opportunity to show her people the Divine working among them, and seeing this scene would help them trust the Divine. ¹⁵³ She ran from house to house to tell people and get them to gather at the royalty's palace.

¹⁵⁴ A crowd gathered and they were shocked to see their king, queen, and the royal slaves upon the ground, and they thought they were dead. ¹⁵⁵ They also saw Ammon, and saw that he was a Nephite. ¹⁵⁶ Some people started rumors saying that a great evil had come upon them because the king allowed a Nephite to stay in their land. ¹⁵⁷ Others rebuked this rumor by saying, "[The king has brought evil upon himself because he killed so many of his own slaves.](#)" ¹⁵⁸ Those rebukers were themselves rebuked by those who had scattered the king's flocks. ¹⁵⁹ These people were angry that Ammon had killed so many of their family and friends at the waters of Sebus while defending the king's flocks.

¹⁶⁰ One of them, whose brother was killed by Ammon, was exceptionally angry with him, and drew his sword and went to kill Ammon. As he lifted his sword to strike him down, he himself fell dead. ¹⁶¹ From this we can see that Ammon could not be killed, because the Divine promised his father, King Mosiah II, "[I will protect him as long as you trust me.](#)" This promise of protection assured King Mosiah II enough to let his sons go into the Lamanites' territories.

¹⁶² When the crowd saw this man who was going to kill Ammon suddenly fall dead, they themselves all became scared. They didn't dare touch Ammon or anyone else who was on the ground. ¹⁶³ They began to wonder what could have caused this to happen and what it means. ¹⁶⁴ There were many among them that said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit. ¹⁶⁵ Others rebuked them all, and believed that Ammon was a monster who had been sent by the Nephites to torment them. ¹⁶⁶ There were others that said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to punish them because of their wickedness, and that They had always protected the Nephites from the Lamanites. ¹⁶⁷ They blamed the Great Spirit for the deaths of their family and friends. There was quite the debate among them as to what happened and why.

¹⁶⁸ When Abish saw that, instead of trusting the Divine, the Lamanites were fighting amongst themselves, she was filled with such sorrow that she began to cry. ¹⁶⁹ She went and held Queen Majorie's hand, hoping she could help her up. As soon as Abish touched Queen Majorie's hand, she stood to her feet and shouted, ¹⁷⁰ "[Oh blessed Jesus, who has freed me from an awful hell! Oh blessed Great Spirit, have mercy upon these people!](#)" ¹⁷¹ After Queen Majorie said this she clapped her hands and said many more things. However, she was filled with such joy that it wasn't understood.

Many Other of King Lamoni and Queen Majorie's people are Converted

¹⁷² Queen Majorie then took King Lamoni's hand, and he also stood to his feet. ¹⁷³ When he saw his people fighting amongst themselves he went and rebuked them all and taught them the things that Ammon had taught him. Everyone who heard King Lamoni teach began to trust the Divine. ¹⁷⁴ However, there were many people who refused to listen to King Lamoni, and they went their own way.

¹⁷⁵ When Ammon stood he blessed them as well as all of the slaves of Lamoni. ¹⁷⁶ They all told the people the same thing: their hearts had been changed and they had no more desire to do evil. ¹⁷⁷ Many people said that they had seen and talked with angels who told them about God and of God's righteousness.

¹⁷⁸ There were many that trusted all of these things, and they were baptized. They became a righteous people and established a congregation among them. ¹⁷⁹ This is how the Divine's work began among the Lamanites! This is how the Divine poured out Their Spirit among them! ¹⁸⁰ We see that Their arm is reaching out to everyone who is willing to give up their wickedness, seek reconciliation, and trust Them.

Ammon is called to the Land of Middoni

¹⁸¹ After they had established a congregation in that land, King Lamoni wanted Ammon to go with him to the land of Nephi, so that he could introduce him to his father, King Francis. ¹⁸² However, the Divine spoke to Ammon, saying, "Do not go to the Land of Nephi. The king there will want to kill you. I want you to go to the land of Middoni, where your brother Aaron and his friends Muloki and Ammah are imprisoned."

¹⁸³ After Ammon heard this, he said to King Lamoni, "My brother and friends are imprisoned in Middoni, and I need to go free them." ¹⁸⁴ King Lamoni said to Ammon, "I know that with the strength of God you can do anything. However, I will go with you to the land of Middoni, because their king, Antiomno, is a friend of mine. ¹⁸⁵ I will sweet talk him, and he will release your friends from prison. ¹⁸⁶ I have to ask, who told you that your friends are imprisoned?" ¹⁸⁷ Ammon said, "God told me that they were imprisoned and that I need to free them." ¹⁸⁸ When King Lamoni heard this, he had his slaves prepare horses and chariots for a quick trip to the land of Middoni. ¹⁸⁹ He then said to Ammon, "Let's go together to the land of Middoni, and I will ask the king to release your friends from prison."

Kings Lamoni and Francis with Ammon the Prophet

¹⁹⁰ As Ammon and King Lamoni were traveling toward the land of Middoni, they ran into King Lamoni's father, King Francis, who was king of all the Lamanite territories. ¹⁹¹ King Francis asked King Lamoni, "Why aren't you coming to the feast to celebrate all my sons and my people? ¹⁹² Where are you going with this Nephite, who is a descendant of a liar?" ¹⁹³ King Lamoni explained where they were going, because he was scared of offending his father. ¹⁹⁴

King Lamoni also told King Francis everything that happened in his kingdom and why he was not going to his father's feast.

¹⁹⁵ After King Lamoni explained all of this he was shocked that his father was angry with him, and he said, "Lamoni, are you going to imprison these Nephites, who are the descendants of a liar? ¹⁹⁶ Their ancestor robbed ours! Now they have come among us so they can lie to and trick us in order to rob us again!" ¹⁹⁷ King Francis ordered King Lamoni to kill Ammon with his sword. ¹⁹⁸ He also ordered him not to go to Middoni, and told him to return with him to the land of Ishmael. ¹⁹⁹ However, King Lamoni told his father, "I will not kill Ammon, and I will not return to the land of Ishmael with you. I am going to the land of Middoni to free Ammon's friends, because I know they are good men and holy prophets of the Great Spirit."

²⁰⁰ When King Francis heard this response he was angry with King Lamoni, to the point that he drew his sword to kill him. ²⁰¹ However, Ammon came and said to him, "You will not kill your son! Regardless, it would be better if he died than you. ²⁰² He has given up his wickedness and sought reconciliation. If you were to die while you lived this angry of a life, your soul could not be freed. ²⁰³ It would be wise of you to stop this, because if you kill your innocent son, his blood would be proof to his God that They would be justified in dealing out consequences for you. You might even lose your soul."

²⁰⁴ After King Francis heard this, he responded by saying, "I know that if I kill my son I would be killing an innocent man. You are the one who is responsible and has tried to kill my son!" King Francis turned to kill Ammon. ²⁰⁵ Ammon was able to defend himself, and he was able to injure the king's arm so that he couldn't use it anymore. ²⁰⁶ When King Francis saw that Ammon could kill him, he begged Ammon to spare his life. ²⁰⁷ However, Ammon raised his sword and said to him, "I will kill you unless you promise me that my friends will be released from prison." ²⁰⁸ King Francis was scared of losing his life, and so answered by saying, "If you spare my life, I will give you whatever you want, even if it was half of my kingdom!"

²⁰⁹ When Ammon saw that he had convinced the king to do what he wanted, he said to him "I also want King Lamoni to remain the king of his land. Instead of being upset at him, I want him to be able to do anything he wants. These are my terms, and if they aren't agreed to I will kill you."

²¹⁰ After Ammon said this the king was relieved that he could keep his life. ²¹¹ When he saw that Ammon didn't want to kill him, and when he remembered how much he loved his son, he was astonished and said: ²¹² "Since this is all you want, I agree to your terms. Your friends will be released from prison and I will no longer govern my son. ²¹³ After your friends are released from prison, I would like you all to visit me in my kingdom." ²¹⁴ King Francis asked for this visit because he was amazed by the things which Ammon and King Lamoni had said, and wanted to learn more.

Aaron, Muloki, and Ammah are Freed

²¹⁵ After this Ammon and King Lamoni continued on their journey toward the land of Middoni. ²¹⁶ King Lamoni was able to sweet talk the king of the land, and Ammon's brother and friends were

freed from prison. ²¹⁷ When Ammon first saw them he was filled with sorrow, because they were naked and their skin was sore from their restraints. ²¹⁸ They had endured hunger, thirst, and many other hardships, but did so patiently. ²¹⁹ It was just bad luck that they had fallen into the hands of a hardened and stubborn people. ²²⁰ The people they encountered would not listen to them, and instead exiled and beat them. They were chased from place-to-place all the way to the land of Middoni. ²²¹ Eventually they were arrested and thrown into prison where they stayed for many days until they were freed by King Lamoni and Ammon.

Chapter 13

Aaron, Muloki, and Ammah's Journey

¹ After the Sons of King Mosiah II went their separate ways at the borders of the Lamanite territory, Aaron traveled toward the land of Jerusalem, which was near the borders of the land of Mormon. This Lamanite territory was named after the land that their ancestors came from. ² The Lamanites, Amlicites, and Amulonites were the founders of its capital, which was also called Jerusalem. ³ The Lamanites had hard hearts, but the Amlicites and Amulonites's hearts were even harder. They convinced the Lamanites to be even more wicked.

Aaron and the Amlicites

⁴ Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem and began to preach to the Amlicites. ⁵ He preached in the church houses that the members of Nehor's church had built to worship in. ⁶ Aaron entered one of their church houses, and while he was preaching an Amlicite rose to challenge the things he was saying. ⁷ "What are you talking about? Have you seen an angel? Why don't angels appear to us? Are we as good as your people? You have said 'Unless you give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation, then you will die'. ⁸ How exactly do you know our thoughts and intentions? How do you know that we need to repent and seek reconciliation? How do you know we are not a righteous people? ⁹ We have built church houses so we can gather together and worship God. We believe that God will free everyone."

¹⁰ Aaron asked him, "Do you believe that the Son of God will come and free humanity from their mistakes?" ¹¹ The Amlicite said, "We do not believe that you could possibly know that will happen. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. ¹² We do not believe that you, nor our common ancestors, can prophesy the future."

¹³ Aaron opened his scriptures to the parts which spoke about the coming of Christ, the resurrection of the dead, and how humanity couldn't be freed without Christ's sacrifice. ¹⁴ As he began to expound on these things to them, they wouldn't listen and instead became angry and began to mock him.

Aaron, Muloki, and Ammah are Reunited, Imprisoned, and Freed

¹⁵ When Aaron saw that the Amlicites wouldn't listen to him, he left their church house and went to a village called Ani-anti, where he found Muloki, Ammah, and several others preaching. They were also being challenged by many people. ¹⁶ They saw that the people who hardened their hearts migrated to the land of Middoni. ¹⁷ They preached to many people in Ani-anti, but few were receptive to their teachings.

¹⁸ Nevertheless, Aaron, Muloki, and Ammah, and several of their friends were arrested and thrown into prison. Those who weren't arrested fled out of the land of Middoni and sought refuge in the neighboring lands. ¹⁹ Those who were thrown in prison endured many hardships, but King

Lamoni and Ammon freed them, and they were then given food and clothing. ²⁰ After they were freed from their suffering, they went and preached again. ²¹ They were led by the Spirit of the Divine to preach in the church houses of the Amlicites and every gathering of the Lamanites where they were allowed to be. ²² The Divine blessed them so much that many people listened to their preaching and learned the truth. They were able to show many the error of their ways and how they understood history wasn't accurate.

Ammon and King Lamoni Return to the Land of Ishmael

²³ Ammon and King Lamoni returned to the land of Ishmael from their trip to the land of Middoni. ²⁴ When they returned, King Lamoni would not let Ammon be his slave anymore. The king also had many church houses be built in the land of Ishmael, and encouraged his people to gather there. ²⁵ His people made him very happy, and he taught them many things. ²⁶ He also told his people that they were free from the oppression of his father, King Francis, and explained that he had been given complete control over the land of Ishmael. ²⁷ King Lamoni then told his people that they had the freedom to worship the Great Spirit however and wherever they would like in the land of Ishmael.

²⁸ Ammon also preached to the people in the land of Ishmael, and taught them all about righteousness. ²⁹ He diligently encouraged them every day. They listened to Ammon and zealously took the Divine's advice.

Aaron, Muloki, and Ammah's Journey Continues

King Francis is Taught and is Overwhelmed by the Spirit

³⁰ This is how Ammon taught King Lamoni's people. Let's return to Aaron and his friends.

³¹ After Aaron left the land of Middoni, he was led by the Spirit to go to the land of Nephi to the house of King Francis, who was king of the Lamanites and father to King Lamoni. ³² He went into the king's palace with his friends and bowed to the king and said, "Your majesty, we are the friends of Ammon whom you freed from prison. If you spare our lives, we will be your slaves." ³³ King Francis said to them, "You may rise. I will spare your lives, but I will not allow you to be my slaves. Instead, I would like you to teach me. ³⁴ My mind has been preoccupied with the generosity and great things that Ammon did and said. Why has he not come with you from Middoni?" ³⁵ Aaron said to King Francis, "The Spirit of the Divine had him go another way. He is in the land of Ishmael teaching the people of King Lamoni."

³⁶ King Francis asked them, "What Spirit of the Divine are you talking about? This is what my mind is preoccupied with. ³⁷ Additionally, what did Ammon mean when he said, 'If you give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation, then you will be freed. However, if you will not give up your wickedness and seek reconciliation, then you will be thrown away at the last day?'" ³⁸ Aaron asked him, "Do you believe that there is a Great Spirit?" ³⁹ The king responded by saying, "I know that the Amlicites say that there is a Great Spirit, and I have given them permission to

build church houses so they can gather to worship this God. If you say that there is indeed a Great Spirit, I will trust you.”

⁴⁰ Aaron was happy to hear this, and said, “As sure as you live, my king, there is indeed a Gog.”

⁴¹ King Francis then asked, “Is God that Great Spirit that brought our ancestors out of the land of Jerusalem?” ⁴² Aaron confirmed by saying, “Yes, God is that Great Spirit. God created everything, both in heaven and the earth. Do you trust me when I say this?” ⁴³ The king answered by saying, “I do believe that the Great Spirit created everything, and I would like you to tell me more about all of these things. I will trust everything you teach me.”

⁴⁴ When Aaron saw that King Francis would trust everything he said, he read the scriptures to him, beginning with the creation of Adam and Eve. Aaron explained how God created humanity to look like God and how God gave humanity advice once we changed. ⁴⁵ Aaron expounded on the scriptures, and explained how Adam and Eve were responsible for humanity changing, and also explained how the plan for freedom was prepared before the world was even created for those who trusted the Divine. ⁴⁶ Since humanity had changed they wouldn't be able to join the Divine, but Christ's sacrifice made that possible again if we give up our wickedness, seek reconciliation, and trust the Divine. ⁴⁷ Christ breaks the bands of death, and the grave will have no victory! The sting of death will be swallowed up in the hopes of glory. These are the things that Aaron taught to King Francis.

⁴⁸ After Aaron had taught these things, the king asked, “What do I need to do to have this eternal life which you have spoken about? ⁴⁹ What do I need to do to be born of the Great Spirit, and have the wicked spirit ripped from my heart and be replaced by the Divine Spirit and be filled with joy so I am not thrown off at the last day? ⁵⁰ I will give up everything I own, including my kingdom, to receive this great joy.” ⁵¹ Aaron then assured him by saying, “If you want this great joy then pray to the Great Spirit, give up your wickedness, seek reconciliation, and trust that you will be given this joy, then you will.”

⁵² After Aaron said these things, King Francis bowed down on his knees and prayed to the Divine, saying, “Oh Great Spirit, Aaron has told me that you exist. ⁵³ If you do, and you are who he says you are, will you make yourself known to me? I am willing to forsake all of my wickedness to know you, so I can be resurrected and freed at the last day.” ⁵⁴ After the king said this, he was struck as if he were dead.

Queen Mangel Orders Death, but is Converted

⁵⁵ His slaves ran and told his wife, Queen Mangel, about what had happened to the king. ⁵⁶ She came to King Francis, and when she saw him she thought he was dead, and saw Aaron and his friends standing there and assumed that they had killed her husband. She was furious and commanded her slaves to kill them. ⁵⁷ However, the slaves saw why the king fell, and didn't dare harm Aaron or his friends.

⁵⁸ They begged the queen by saying, “Why do you order us to kill them, when just one of them is stronger than all of us? They would defeat all of us!” ⁵⁹ When Queen Mangel saw how scared her slaves were, she also became very scared. She worried that some evil would come upon

her.⁶⁰ She commanded her slaves to go and call her people to kill Aaron and his friends.⁶¹ When Aaron saw how determined the queen was to kill them, and keeping in mind how hard the hearts of the people were, he worried that a mob would gather and there would be a large battle.⁶² Aaron stretched out his hand, and raised King Francis from the ground, and said “Stand”, and he had strength and stood.⁶³ The queen and all of the slaves saw this happen. They were amazed, and again were filled with fear.⁶⁴ King Francis stood and tended to them, and everyone in the household trusted the Divine from then on.

⁶⁵ A crowd had gathered because of Queen Mangel’s orders. Many people started to complain about Aaron and his friends.⁶⁶ However, the king came and spoke to them, and they were pacified.⁶⁷ When the king saw that they were pacified, he asked Aaron and his friends to preach to the crowd.

Territorial Explanations

⁶⁸ The king issued a proclamation throughout all the Lamanite territories, called the Land of Nephi. These territories stretched from the sea on the east to the sea on the west, and was divided from the Nephite territories, called the land of Zarahemla, by a narrow strip of wilderness.⁶⁹ This wilderness ran from sea to sea, and along some of the shoreline. The land of Zarahemla was to the north of this wilderness. This wilderness ran through the borders of the land of Manti by the head of the river Sidon, which ran from east to west. This is how the Lamanite and Nephite territories were divided.

⁷⁰ Some Lamanites lived in tents in the wilderness in the western shoreline of the land of Nephi.⁷¹ Some also lived within the land of Zarahemla on the beach.⁷² There were also many Lamanites who lived on the shore on the eastern side of the land of Nephi. The Nephites were nearly surrounded by Lamanites.

⁷³ Nevertheless, the Nephites had taken possession of all the land north of the wilderness at the head of the River Sidon all the way to the land which they called bountiful.⁷⁴ The land of bountiful bordered the land called “Desolation”, which was very far to the north. This land had once been inhabited by a people who was now totally destroyed, and their bones were scattered throughout the land. This land was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, and was where they first landed within the promised land, after which they then traveled south.⁷⁵ In short, the land to the far north was called Desolation, the land south of that was called Bountiful. Bountiful was named this because it was filled with a variety of wildlife.

⁷⁶ The border between Bountiful and Desolation was only a day and a half journey for a Nephite.⁷⁷ The lands of Nephi and Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, with only a small neck of land between them.⁷⁸ The Nephites also inhabited the land of Bountiful.

⁷⁹ The Nephites were wise and guarded their southern borders so that the Lamanites would not be able to invade their land.⁸⁰ The Lamanites were confined to the land of Nephi and the wildernesses that surrounded it.⁸¹ This was very wise of the Nephites, because they were the

sworn enemies of the Lamanites. They didn't want to be surrounded by them and ensure the hardships and possibly refuge seeking that would come along with that.

⁸² With that said, let's return to Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, and their friends.

Chapter 14

The Lead up to the Anti-Nephi-Lehi Massacre

Aaron and His Friends Preach after King Francis's Proclamation

¹ As I was saying, King Francis issued a proclamation among all the Lamanites ordering them not to harm Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, or any of their friends who travel and preach with them. This proclamation was enforced in all the land of Nephi. ² This decree specified that they were not to be arrested, thrown in prison, spit upon, beaten, thrown out of church houses, or whipped. ³ Additionally, they were not to be stoned, but should be invited into houses, temples, and church houses. ⁴ King Francis's conversion enabled them to preach however they would like. ⁵ This proclamation went throughout the land of Nephi so the word of God would have no obstruction as they traveled through the land. King Francis made this proclamation so that his people would come to understand their inaccurate history. ⁶ King Francis saw that all of humanity is family, and that they shouldn't be murdering, stealing, using their sexuality harmfully, or doing any other type of wickedness.

⁷ After the king sent out this proclamation, Aaron and his friends went from city-to-city and church house-to-church house. ⁸ They established congregations and ordained priests and teachers throughout the land of Nephi to preach and teach the word of God among the Lamanites. They were very successful. ⁹ Thousands of people came to know the Divine, their accurate history, and learned about the scriptures and prophecies that had been handed down to them all the way to that time.

¹⁰ Just as surely as God lives, so did people come to trust the Divine because of Aaron and his friends's preaching of revelations and prophecies with the power of God, ¹¹ Those people never returned to their wicked ways, and they became a righteous people. ¹² They laid down their weapons of rebellion, and no longer fought against God or their family and friends in humanity.

¹³ The people who came to trust the Divine were the lamanites in the lands of Ishmael, Middoni, Shilom, Shemlon, as well as the people in the cities of Nephi, Lemuel, and Shimnilom. ¹⁴ These people, all of whom were Lamanites, laid down all their weapons of war. ¹⁵ However, barring only one, none of the Amlicites or Amulonites had this change of heart. The Lamanites who lived among them also hardened their hearts. ¹⁶ These are all the people who came to know the truth, gave up their wickedness, sought reconciliation, and trusted the Divine.

The Period of Transition

¹⁷ King Francis and everyone who came to trust the Divine wanted a new name to distinguish themselves from the Lamanites as well as the Nephites. ¹⁸ The king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests concerning the name they should give themselves. ¹⁹ They decided upon the name "Anti-Nephi-Lehies". They took upon this name and no longer called themselves

Lamanites. ²⁰ They began to be quite an industrious people, and were friendly with the Nephites and established diplomatic relations with them. The Divine's curse no longer followed them.

²¹ The Amlicites, Amulonites, and Lamanites who were in the lands of Amulon, Helam, and Jerusalem had their anger stoked towards the Anti-Nephi-Lehies by the Amlicites and Amulonites. ²² Their anger became so extreme that they rebelled against and deposed their king in order to go to war against the Anti-Nephi-Lehies.

²³ At that same time, King Francis gave the crown to his son, who had come to call himself Anti-Nephi-Lehi. ²⁴ King Francis died that same year, and the Lamanites began to go to war against the Anti-Nephi-Lehies.

The Pacifist's Promise

²⁵ Now when Ammon and his friends saw that the Lamanites were preparing for war against the Anti-Nephi-Lehies, they went to the land of Midian, where Ammon met his brothers. ²⁶ Together they then traveled to the land of Ishmael in order to hold a meeting with King Lamoni, who was the brother of King Anti-Nephi-Lehi, on what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

²⁷ There was not a single person among those who came to trust the Divine who were willing to take up arms against the Lamanites. ²⁸ They weren't even willing to prepare for war, and King Lamoni told them not to. ²⁹ This is what the king said concerning the matter, "My beloved people, I thank the Great Spirit that our family, the Nephites, were sent to teach us and show us the error of our ways. ³⁰ I thank the Great Spirit that we have been given a portion of the Spirit to soften our hearts. I thank the Great Spirit that we have been able to establish diplomatic relations with the Nephites. ³¹ I thank the Great Spirit that we have shown our mistakes, including the many murders that we have committed. ³² I thank the Great Spirit that we have been able to reconcile and that, because of Christ's merits, we no longer need to bear the guilt in our hearts.

³³ My family and friends, we were once the most wicked people that humanity had to offer. It took all of our strength and ability to give up our wickedness and to be given this forgiveness. ³⁴ Since the Great Spirit has given all of us this forgiveness, let us all commit to never stain our swords with the blood of our family again! ³⁵ Let us all commit to never stain our swords with the blood of our family again! ³⁶ If we returned to our violent ways, Christ might not be able to wash the blood off.

³⁷ The Great Spirit has had mercy on us and taught us all of these things so that we don't die. ³⁸ We were taught these things because the Divine loves the souls of all of Their children. This mercy prompted angels to visit us, so that the plan for freedom might be known to us as well as future generations. Oh, how merciful is the Great Spirit!

³⁹ As I mentioned, it took all of our strength and ability to get forgiveness and to wash our swords clean. ⁴⁰ That is why I think we should hide our swords so they remain clean. Their cleanliness will stand as a testimony to the Great Spirit when we meet Them that we did not kill

after we were given Their word and forgiveness. ⁴¹ My family and friends, if the Lamanites come to kill us, let us bury our swords deep in the earth so that they remain clean and stand as a testimony that we never used them again. If our family, the Lamanites, kill us, then we will go to the Great Spirit and be free.”

⁴² After the king said all of this, the people who were gathered and heard him speak took all of their swords and weapons which were used for killing people and buried them deep in the earth.

⁴³ They did this to show God and all of humanity that they would never use weapons to kill people again.

⁴⁴ They also promised God that they would rather die than kill other people. ⁴⁵ Instead of taking lives, they were willing to give theirs. Instead of living lazy lives, they wanted to work hard. ⁴⁶ This is how these former Lamanites came to know the truth, and became so resolute in doing the right thing that they would rather die than fall back into wickedness. ⁴⁷ They buried their weapons of war for peace.

The Massacre of the Anti-Nephi-Lehies and Conversion of the Lamanites

⁴⁸ The Lamanites prepared for war and came to the land of Nephi to kill King Anti-Nephi-Lehi and install their own king in his place. They wanted to commit genocide against the Anti-Nephi-Lehies. ⁴⁹ When the Anti-Nephi-Lehies saw the Lamanite armies approaching, they went out and greeted them with open arms and prayed to God. ⁵⁰ This is how the Anti-Nephi-Lehies behaved as the Lamanites descended upon them and killed them. The Anti-Nephi-Lehies did not resist at all, and 1,005 of them were killed. These martyrs are blessed, because they now dwell with their God.

⁵¹ When the Lamanites saw that the Anti-Nephi-Lehies were unwilling to flee from their attacks and would rather lie down and die, while praising God as they died, they were forbidden from killing them. ⁵² There were many Lamanite soldiers whose hearts were filled with remorse for the dead, and they gave up their wicked ways and sought reconciliation. ⁵³ They threw down their weapons of war and refused to take them again. Their souls stung because of the murders that they had committed. They, like the Anti-Nephi-Lehies, relied on the mercy of the people whose arms were lifted to kill them. ⁵⁴ More people joined God’s people that day than people who were killed. The people who died were righteous people, and there is no reason to doubt that they are free. ⁵⁵ More than 1,000 people came to know the truth, and there was no longer a single wicked person among them. This is how the Divine works for the freedom of Their people.

Fallout from the Anti-Nephi-Lehi Massacre

Hardened Hearts

⁵⁶ The Lamanites who killed the most people were Amlicites and Amulonites, who were members of Nehor’s church. ⁵⁷ Among those who defected to the Anti-Nephi-Lehis there was

not a single Amlicite, Amulonite, or anyone from Nehor's church. All the defectors were literal descendants of Laman and Lemuel.⁵⁸ We can plainly see that these former Nephites were enlightened by the Spirit of God and knew quite a lot regarding righteousness. However, we can also see that they fell into wickedness and their hearts became even harder than the Lamanites'. Their future would be less bleak than if they didn't know these things to begin with.

⁵⁹ The Lamanites were furious that they had killed their own family and friends, but they blamed the Nephites for their deaths and swore vengeance upon them. ⁶⁰ Their assault on the Anti-Nephi-Lehies ended, and instead they marched towards the Nephite territories and attacked the people in the land of Ammonihah and killed them. ⁶¹ After this, the Lamanites had many battles with the Nephites, but the Nephites prevailed and pushed them back. ⁶² The Lamanites who died in these battles were almost exclusively Amulonites.

Remembrances and Persecutions

⁶³ The survivors of these battles fled into the eastern wilderness, where the Amulonites staged a coup against the other Lamanites and committed genocide against them because of their beliefs. They committed this atrocity by burning them. ⁶⁴ After many of these Lamanites endured a lot of loss and hardship, they began to remember what Aaron and his friends had taught them. ⁶⁵ They began to question the history that they had always been taught, and began to trust the Divine who empowered the Nephites. This is how many Lamanites came to trust God in the wilderness.

⁶⁶ The Amulonite leaders had those people who came to trust the Divine put to death. ⁶⁷ This martyrdom caused many of the other Lamanites to be furious, and there was a civil war among the Lamanites in the wilderness. The Lamanites hunted the Amulonites as they fled further into the eastern wilderness. ⁶⁸ The Lamanites are still hunting them to this day, which fulfilled Abinadi's prophecies regarding the Amulonites's fate. He prophesied that they would be burned alive. ⁶⁹ Abinadi said ["What you do to me shall also be your fate."](#) ⁷⁰ Sure enough, they burned Abinadi alive because he trusted God. Abinadi prophesied that many others would be burned alive as he was. ⁷¹ Abinadi said that to King Noah's wicked priests' children would die in this fashion, and they would be scattered and killed, like sheep who have no shepherd and are eaten by wild beasts. ⁷² Now this prophecy was fulfilled, because the Amulonites were exiled and hunted by the Lamanites until they were killed.

Anti-Nephi-Lehies Look Forward to Christ

⁷³ When the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites, many returned to their own land. However, many others went and settled in the lands of Ishmael and Nephi and became Anti-Nephi-Lehies. ⁷⁴ They made the pacifist's promise and buried their weapons of war as the other Anti-Nephi-Lehies did and they became a righteous people. They took the Divine's advice and observed the law of Moses, since it had not yet been fulfilled. ⁷⁵ Despite faithfully observing the law, they all looked forward to the day that Christ would come and reveal its true meaning without the need for those outward performances. ⁷⁶ They didn't believe that freedom came from simply adhering to the law of Moses; they saw the law of Moses was a tool to

strengthen their trust in Christ. ⁷⁷ They had the spirit of prophecy among them and remained hopeful that they would gain eternal freedom.

Ammon's Sermon to his Family and Friends

Celebration of the Conversion of the Anti-Nephi-Lehies

⁷⁸ Ammon, Aaron, Omner, Himni, and their friends were overjoyed at the success they had at teaching the Lamanites. They saw the Divine answer their prayers and fulfill every promise that was made to them. ⁷⁹ Ammon spoke to them by saying, "My family and friends, don't we have a great reason to celebrate? Who would have guessed that when we left the land of Zarahemla that God would have blessed us so abundantly? ⁸⁰ And what are these great blessings? ⁸¹ I will tell you! Our family, the Lamanites, were in a dark spiritual abyss, and we have brought many of them into the marvelous light of God! ⁸² This is the blessing that has been given to us. We were made instruments in the hands of God to do this great work! ⁸³ Now thousands of them celebrate that they have come to know God.

⁸⁴ The field was ready to harvest, and now you are blessed because of your long and difficult reaping efforts. ⁸⁵ Look at your harvest! They will be gathered into the storehouse and not wasted or beaten down by the storm at the last day. ⁸⁶ Since they are gathered in the storehouse, they will not be scared by the whirlwinds when the storm comes. They will be safe from the fierce winds which will not be able to blow them into their enemy's hands. ⁸⁷ Instead, they are in the hands of the God of the harvest, and they are Theirs. They will be raised up by God at the last day.

⁸⁸ Blessed be the name of our God! Let us sing about Them and give thanks to Their holy name for the righteous things They do forever! ⁸⁹ If we had not left the land of Zarahemla, then our dear family whom we love so much would still be racked with hatred against us and would be strangers to God."

⁹⁰ After Ammon said this, Aaron noted, "Now Ammon, I worry that your joy is getting carried away and is becoming boasting." ⁹¹ Ammon assured him, "While it is true that my heart is overflowing with joy, I do not boast about my own strength or wisdom. I celebrate my God's strength and wisdom. ⁹² I wouldn't boast about my own strength because I know that I am weak. However, I boast about my God, who lends me strength to do anything I need to. We have performed many great miracles in this land, and we will thank God forever for enabling them to happen.

⁹³ How many thousands of our family members have They saved from the pains of hell, and were instead brought to sing of a freeing love? While we were only the ones to deliver the message, why shouldn't we celebrate? ⁹⁴ Our family being freed from the chains of hell is a great reason to thank the most high God forever! ⁹⁵ Our family was once surrounded by everlasting darkness and destruction, but God has brought them into everlasting light and freedom! They are surrounded by unmatched Divine love! ⁹⁶ We have been instruments in God's hands for doing this great and marvelous work. Let us worship the Divine! We will celebrate,

because we are so full of joy! We will thank our God forever. ⁹⁷ Who can worship God too much? Who can talk too much about God's great power, mercy, and patience with humanity? I personally wouldn't be able to articulate even a small part of how much I feel.

Thankfulness for His Change of Heart

⁹⁸ Who would have guessed that our God would have been so merciful that They snatched us from our awful, wicked, and polluted state? ⁹⁹ When we were younger we were full of wrath and went around threatening to destroy Their church. Why did God not forsake us to an awful destruction? Why did God not let the sword of justice fall upon us? Why did God not doom us to despair? ¹⁰⁰ My soul practically flees at that thought! ¹⁰¹ Thankfully, God did not exercise justice upon us, but instead exercised mercy. We were brought over the gulf of death and misery and our souls were freed.

¹⁰² My family and friends, you can only understand this sort of thing if you yourself have given up your wickedness. ¹⁰³ Those that do give up their wickedness, seek reconciliation, trust the Divine, live good lives, and continually pray are permitted to know the mysteries of God. These people will come to learn things which have never been known before. ¹⁰⁴ These people are the ones who help thousands of people give up their wickedness and seek reconciliation, just as we have done.

Summary of the Journey of the Sons of King Mosiah II

¹⁰⁵ Do you remember what we told our family and friends in the land of Zarahemla? 'We are going to go to the land of Nephi to preach to our family, the Lamanites'. Do you remember how they scornfully laughed at us? ¹⁰⁶ They told us, 'Do you actually think you will be able to teach the Lamanites the truth?' ¹⁰⁷ Considering how stubborn they are, do you really think that you can convince them that their history is incorrect? These are the people who love to murder and live our their lives in wickedness, and they always have been this way! ¹⁰⁸ Don't you remember people telling us this? ¹⁰⁹ They also said, 'We should be going to war against them! If we killed them their wickedness would die with them! We are justified in doing this, because they may do it to us first!' ¹¹⁰ We didn't listen to them. We traveled into the wilderness not with the intent to wage war, but to free souls.

¹¹¹ When we were discouraged and wanted to go back home, the Divine comforted us and said 'Go among your family, the Lamanites, and be patient during your hardships. I will give you success.' ¹¹² We went among the Lamanites, patiently endured our hardships, and even suffered from a lack of the bare necessities. We traveled from house-to-house, and relied on charity. It wasn't just from the charity of the Lamanites, but also Divine charity. ¹¹³ We went and taught them in their houses, streets, hills, temples, and church houses. ¹¹⁴ We were exiled, mocked, spit upon, beaten, stoned, arrested, and thrown into prison. However, God was wise and powerful enough to free us every time. ¹¹⁵ We endured these hardships, because we wanted to be instrumental in freeing people's souls. We believed that we would be filled with joy for helping free them.

¹¹⁶ Now we are able to look back and see why we endured all those things. Didn't we free many souls? ¹¹⁷ We did! We can see that they are sincere, because they love each other as well as us. ¹¹⁸ They would rather sacrifice their own lives than take the life of their enemy. This love has compelled them to bury their weapons deep in the earth. ¹¹⁹ Has there ever been such a powerful love in the land? ¹²⁰ No! There hasn't even among the Nephites. ¹²¹ If the other Lamanites were to take up arms against them, they would allow themselves to be killed. ¹²² How many of them did lay down their lives? Luckily we know that their love brought them to their God.

Ammon's Closing

¹²³ Isn't this a reason to celebrate? There has never, in all the history of earth, been more of a reason to celebrate! ¹²⁴ It's possible that my joy has carried me away to the point of boasting about my God. After all, God is all-powerful, all-knowing, and all-compassionate. They understand everything, and They are merciful and want to free everyone who gives up wickedness, seeks reconciliation, and trusts Them. ¹²⁵ I don't care if this is boasting! God is my life, light, joy, and freedom from woe! ¹²⁶ Blessed is the name of my God! They have remembered our people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel who are in a strange land. Blessed be the name of my God who has remembered us wanderers in strange lands! ¹²⁷ My family and friends, we see that God remembers everyone, regardless of what land they are in. They remember Their people, and are full of mercy for the whole earth.

¹²⁸ This is my joy and my thanksgiving, and I will give thanks to my God forever. Amen."

Chapter 15

Anti-Nephi-Lehies Seek Refuge

¹ When the Lamanites who went to war against the Nephites returned to the land of Nephi after they found that their efforts were done in vain, ² the Amlicites were very angry because of the losses they endured. ³ When they saw that they weren't able to enact revenge against the Nephites they rallied the other Lamanites against the Anti-Nephi-Lehies. They wanted to declare war against them. ⁴ The Anti-Nephi-Lehies still refused to take up arms and would rather die if necessary.

⁵ Ammon and his friends, who were treated like angels among the Anti-Nephi-Lehies, saw their friends being killed. ⁶ They were filled with compassion, and they said to King Anti-Nephi-Lehi, "Let us gather our people and flee to the land of Zarahemla to be among our family, the Nephites, so that we are not killed." ⁷ The king said, "The Nephites will also kill us, because of the many murders and wickedness we have committed against them."

⁸ Ammon said, "I will go ask the Divine, and if we are told to go among the Nephites, will you go?" ⁹ King Anti-Nephi-Lehi said, "If the Divine tells us to do this, we will go among the Nephites. We will even be their slaves if it is necessary to repair our relationship." ¹⁰ Ammon assured him, "It is against the Nephites' law, which was established by my father, to enslave people. Let us go among them, and rely upon their mercy." ¹¹ The king said, "I still want you to ask the Divine. If we are told to go, then we will. Otherwise we will die in our homeland."

¹² Ammon went and asked the Divine, and God responded by saying, "Get these people out of the land so they do not die. Satan has a great hold on the hearts of the Amlicites, and they rally the Lamanites in order to kill the Anti-Nephi-Lehies. Get out of this land! These are a blessed people, and I will protect them."

¹³ Ammon went and told King Anti-Nephi-Lehi what the Divine said. ¹⁴ All of the Anti-Nephi-Lehies gathered together along with their flocks and herds and fled from the land toward the wilderness that divided the Nephite and Lamanite territories. ¹⁵ Ammon then said, "Let me and my friends go into the land of Zarahemla first. You wait here until we return. We will see how the Nephites feel about accepting you as refugees in their land."

Anti-Nephi-Lehies are Granted Refuge and Protection

¹⁶ As Ammon was going into the land, he and his friends met Alma the Younger, and it was a joyful reunion. ¹⁷ Ammon was so swallowed up in the joy of God that it drained his strength and he fell to the ground. ¹⁸ How overwhelming joy would that have been? No one can experience this kind of joy unless you give up your wickedness and become a humble seeker of happiness. ¹⁹ Alma the Younger, Aaron, Omner, and Himni were similarly filled with joy, but they didn't have their energy quite as drained as Ammon.

²⁰ Alma the Younger led his friends back into the land of Zarahemla to his own house. ²¹ They then went and told the chief judge everything that had happened to them and the Lamanites in the land of Nephi. ²² The chief judge issued a proclamation throughout the whole land of Zarahemla asking the people to vote on granting the Anti-Nephi-Lehies refuge. ²³ The voice of the people declared, “We will give them the land of Jershon, which is on the eastern shore and borders the land of Bountiful. This will be their new homeland. ²⁴ Additionally, we will station armies between the lands of Jershon and Nephi in order to protect them. ²⁵ We fear that the Anti-Nephi-Lehies will break their pacifist promise and take up arms again. We know how scared they are, and we want to help them not fall back into their wicked ways. ²⁶ The land of Jershon is theirs, and we will protect them. However, we do ask that they pay a tax in order to maintain these armies.”

²⁷ When Ammon heard that this was the will of the people, he and Alma the Younger returned to the Anti-Nephi-Lehies in the wilderness where they had set up camp to tell them the news. ²⁸ Alma the Younger also told them about the great joy he, Ammon, and their friends experienced upon their reunion.

Anti-Nephi-Lehies Gain a New Land and Name and are Protected by the Nephites

²⁹ They traveled to the land of Jershon and inhabited it, and the Nephites called them Ammonites. ³⁰ The Anti-Nephi-Lehies were called Ammonites from this time forward, and were considered Nephites, and their congregations joined the church in the Nephite territories. ³¹ The Ammonites were known for their zeal for God and for other people. They were perfectly honest and righteous in everything they did. They had a solid trust in Christ for the rest of their lives. ³² They abhorred violence and there was nothing that could compel them to take up arms. ³³ They did not fear death at all, because of their hope and understanding of Christ and the resurrection. They believed that they would ultimately conquer death with Christ. ³⁴ They would rather suffer a terrible and torturous death at the hands of their family and friends before picking up a sword to kill them. ³⁵ They were a people who zealously loved, and the Divine loved them very much.

³⁶ After the Ammonites settled in the land they re-established their congregations there. All the while the Nephite armies guarded them. However, the Lamanites had followed the Ammonites into the wilderness when they fled the land of Nephi. ³⁷ There was such a tremendous battle - the largest that had happened since Lehi had left Jerusalem. Tens of thousands of Lamanites were killed and left on the battlefield. ³⁸ Many Nephites died, but they were able to repel the invading Lamanites back into their own land.

³⁹ This was a time of great mourning among the Nephites. ⁴⁰ Spouses cried for their lost partners. Parents mourned their lost children. Siblings mourned their lost siblings. Children mourned their lost parents. ⁴¹ Everyone mourned for their family members who died in battle. ⁴² This was a sorrowful and solemn day, and people fasted and prayed. This ended the 15th year of the reign of the judges over the Nephites.

The Journeys of the Sons of Mosiah II Comes to a Close

⁴³ This is the story of the journey of Ammon and his family and friends in the land of Nephi where they suffered, experienced sorrow and hardships, but also incomprehensible joy and how they helped the Ammonites into the land of Jershon. ⁴⁴ May the Divine, the Emancipator of all humanity, bless their souls forever.

⁴⁵ This is the story of the wars and fights among the Nephites and between the Nephites and the Lamanites. This is how the 15th year of the reign of the judges ended. ⁴⁶ Between the 1st and 15th year many thousands of people died in awful bloodshed. ⁴⁷ The bodies of many of them were buried, but many others were heaped into piles and left to decay. ⁴⁸ Thousands of people mourned the loss of their family members, and worried about the future of their souls and wondered if they were consigned to a state of woe. ⁴⁹ However, thousands also mourned their losses but were able to find comfort in the hope that their family members were with God and in a state of never ending happiness.

⁵⁰ From this we can see the differences in people's relationship with death based on whether their hearts were tricked by the power of the devil. ⁵¹ We see how important it is to work in the Divine's vineyard. We can see the contrast between sorrow and comfort: sorrow because of the death and destruction, and comfort because of the light of Christ and eternal life.

Mormon's Epilogue and Commentary on The Journeys of the Sons of Mosiah II

⁵² I wish that I were an angel, so that I could go and preach God's word, shake the earth, and tell people to give up their wickedness and seek reconciliation. ⁵³ I would tell every soul to give up their wickedness! I would tell every soul to seek reconciliation! I would tell every soul about the plan for freedom! I would tell every soul why they should trust the Divine! I would proclaim all of this with a voice of thunder! There would be no more sorrow on all the face of the earth. ⁵⁴ However, I am just a man and it is a bit envious of me to wish this. I should be content with what the Divine has given me. ⁵⁵ I should be careful what I wish for, because I might just get it. If people want death and destruction, they are given it. If people want life and freedom, they are given it. ⁵⁶ You learn the differences between good and evil. Those who don't know the difference are blameless. However, those who do know the difference are given what they want, whether that be good or evil; life or death; joy or remorse.

⁵⁷ Since I know these things, why should I desire more work than I have been given? ⁵⁸ Why should I want to be an angel and speak to the whole earth? ⁵⁹ The Divine gives every group of people teachers from their own people and who teach them in a way they will understand. From this, we can see that the Divine teaches Their just and true wisdom. ⁶⁰ I know what God has asked of me, and I am happy because of it. I don't say this to boast about myself, I am just excited I was asked to do this. ⁶¹ I am excited to be an instrument in the hands of God to help people give up their wickedness and seek reconciliation. This brings me joy!

⁶² My soul is filled with joy when I see my family and friends giving up their wickedness and trusting the Divine. When I see this, I remember all the things that God has done for me, all of my prayers which have been heard, and the mercy that was given to me. ⁶³ I remember the enslavement of my ancestors and how we were freed by the Divine. ⁶⁴ I have always remembered when my ancestors were enslaved, and how that same God freed them from Egyptian enslavement and established Their church among them. ⁶⁵ That same God has now asked me to preach to this people, and has given me a lot of success, which brings me joy. My joy is overflowed by the fact that my family and friends also experienced such joy in the land of Nephi. ⁶⁶ They worked hard and it shows. They will be very blessed.

⁶⁷ When I think about the success of my family and friends, my soul is carried away in a sort of out of body experience because my joy is so great. ⁶⁸ I pray to God that they will sit in God's realm with everyone they taught so they can rest and be with God forever. ⁶⁹ I pray that my prayers will be answered. Amen.